



GUIDE

# CONNECT *Plus*

Parents' Guide

دليل ولي الأمر

By a group of supervisors



معك  
Ma3ak App

تطبيق  
التعلم التفاعلي



Check  
Card  
كارت المعاصر  
لاختيار المفردات  
الشعبة

4<sup>th</sup> Primary  
2023  
FIRST TERM

الصف الرابع الابتدائي  
للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لعام  
الفصل الدراسي الأول



Specifications for Fourth Year Primary Examination For Governmental,  
Distinguished and Private Language Schools

Time : One Hour and a Half    2022 / 2023    30 Marks

**A Listening (8 Marks)**

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :** (4 Marks)

An unseen listening text of about Sixty (60) words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary four followed by Four (4) MCQ questions with FOUR (4) options each is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and circle the correct answer from the four options given. (One mark each)

- 2 Listen and complete :** (4 Marks)

An unseen listening text of about Sixty (60) words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary four followed by Four (4) incomplete sentences is provided. Learners are asked to listen and complete the Four (4) sentences given with one word. (One mark each)

**B Reading (11 Marks)**

- 3 Read and complete the text / dialogue with the words from the box :** (3 Marks)

An unseen text from Sixty (60) to Seventy (70) words OR a dialogue of EIGHT (8) exchanges with THREE (3) deletions is provided. A list of FOUR (4) separate words related to vocabulary is also given. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text or the dialogue with ONE of the FOUR (4) words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

**Reading Comprehension**

(4 Marks)

- 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :**

An unseen literary or informational text of not less than 80 to 100 words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary four. Learners are asked to answer :

- A. TWO (2) MCQ questions with FOUR (4) options each dealing with TWO of the following reading comprehension skills :**
- Identify the general idea of the text.
  - Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
  - Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.
- B. TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with TWO of the following reading comprehension skills :**
- Describe the relationship between a series of historical events, scientific ideas or concepts, or steps in technical procedures in a text.

- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Compare and contrast the most important points and key details presented in a text.
- Determine the central message, lesson, or moral and explain how it is conveyed through key details in the text. *(One mark each)*

## The Reader

*(4 Marks)*

**5**

### A. Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

*(2 Marks)*

TWO (2) sentences related to the Reader are provided. Learners are asked to read the sentences and write (T) True or (F) False in front of each sentence. The sentences should test learners' knowledge of vocabulary, events, characters and setting of the Reader. *(One mark each)*

### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

*(2 Marks)*

TWO (2) sentences with FOUR (4) options each related to the Reader are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer out of the FOUR (4) options given. The sentences should test learners' knowledge of vocabulary, events, characters and setting of the Reader. *(One mark each)*

## C Writing (11 Marks)

**6**

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

*(4 Marks)*

FOUR (4) MCQs based on structure are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer out of the FOUR (4) options given. *(One mark each)*

**7**

### Order the words to make correct sentences :

*(2 Marks)*

Learners are given TWO (2) sentences with SIX (6) words each (affirmative, negative & interrogative). The words of each sentence are scrambled. Learners are asked to put the words in order to make a correct sentence.

**8**

### Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

*(5 Marks)*

Learners are asked to write a paragraph or an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file (including questions only)... etc.

(TWO marks for relevance of ideas and vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)



# GET READY!

الاستعداد لمنهجك



## 1. Words أنواع الكلمات

تنقسم الكلمات إلى عدة أنواع يتعرف التلميذ في هذا الجزء على بعض منها.

### 1 noun الإسم



goat



bag



boy



Salma

### 2 Verb الفعل



eat



read



play



run

### 3 adjective الصفة



a small ant



a big camel

### 4 preposition حرف جر



in the morning

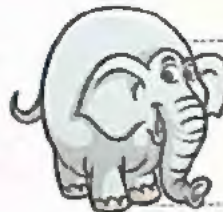


on the table

### 5 pronoun ضمير



Adam is tall. He isn't short.



The elephant is big. It isn't small.

• Help your child identify how to make a sentence.

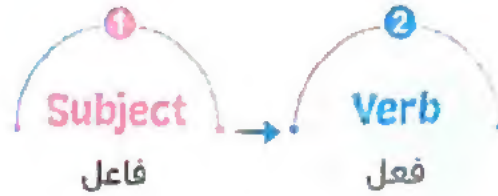
• ساعد طفلك ان يعرف كيف يكون جملة.

• معرفة التلميذ لتويع الكلمة بساعده على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة لتكوين جملة.



## 2. Sentence الجمل

### 1 Subject الفاعل



Omar الفاعل

Omar plays tennis.

He plays tennis.

الفاعل He

وهو ضمير فاعل

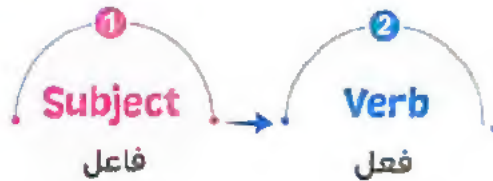
حل محل الفاعل Omar

الفاعل قد يكون (اسم) أو يكون ضمير من (ضمائر الفاعل) التالية :

### Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

I أنا	He هو	She هي	It هو/ هي (غير عاقل)	You أنت / أنتم	They هم	We نحن
----------	----------	-----------	----------------------------	-------------------	------------	-----------

### 2 Verb الفعل



drink الفعل

I drink water.

He eats fish.

قد يضاف للفعل إضافات  
مثل (s) حسب الفاعل  
الذي يسبقه في زمن  
المضارع البسيط

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child identify the parts of a sentence.
- Help your child identify the verb.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أجزاء الجملة  
بدأ الجملة البسيطة في اللغة الإنجليزية بـ (فاعل) ويأتي بعده (فعل) ثم باقي الجملة الفاعل هو من يقوم بعمل الفعل ويكون في بداية الجملة  
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الفعل

• الفعل هو الحدث الذي يقوم به الفاعل





# How to arrange sentences

١ عند وجود (full stop) نقطة (.) فى نهاية الجملة يكون نوع الجملة :

## 1. Statement :

١. جملة خبرية :

ترتيب الكلمات	البداية
باقى الجملة	تبدأ الجملة الخبرية بـ (فاعل) والفاعل يكون :
فاعل	ضمير : I / He / She / It / You / They / We
فعل	We live in Egypt.
Heba cooks well.	اسم : Noha - Wael - Children - The apple - Monkeys ...

## 2. Imperative sentence :

٢. جملة أمرية :

ترتيب الكلمات	البداية
باقى الجملة	أمر مثبت : فى هذه الحالة نبدأ بـ (مصدر الفعل inf.)
مصدر الفعل inf.	Study English with us and have fun.
باقى الجملة	أمر منفى : فى هذه الحالة نبدأ بـ (مصدر الفعل inf. + Don't)
مصدر الفعل inf.	Don't shout in the classroom.
Don't	

٢ عند وجود (question mark) علامة استفهام (?) فى نهاية الجملة يكون نوع الجملة :

## 3. Interrogative sentence :

٣. جملة استفهامية :

ترتيب الكلمات	البداية
؟ باقى السؤال	١- السؤال بأداة استفهام : How - What - Where - Who - When - Which ...
فعل أساسى	كلمة استفهام
فاعل	Where
فعل مساعد	did
you	
go	
yesterday ?	
؟ باقى السؤال	٢- السؤال بمعنى "هل ... ؟" Do - Does - Did - Is - Are - Was - Were ...
فعل أساسى	فعل مساعد أو ناقص
فاعل	Did
you	
watch	
the film ?	



# Punctuation marks

## 1 Capital letters (A , B , C .... )

- تستخدم في بداية الجملة.
- تستخدم مع أسماء الأشخاص والجنسيات وأسماء الدول.

I like muffins.

I'm from France.

## 2 Period ( . )

- تستخدم في نهاية الجملة.

I'm French.

## 3 Question Mark ( ? )

- تستخدم في نهاية السؤال.



Where are you from ?

## 4 Exclamation Mark ( ! )

- تستخدم عند التعبير عن شعور قوي.



She's very happy !

## 5 Comma ( , )

- تستخدم ( , ) عند كتابة قائمة (مجموعة) من الأشياء.

I like chocolate , ice cream , pizza and cola.

### Notes for parents

- Help your child know how to use capital letters in a sentence and punctuation marks.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم الحروف الكبيرة في الجملة وعلامات الترقيم.



# Contents

## Theme 1

### I discover myself

Unit 1 : What can I do ?	23
Unit 2 : Plants and animals	77
Unit 3 : My world	128
Review 1	175
Non-Fiction Reader Coral Reefs	179



## Theme 2

### Myself and others

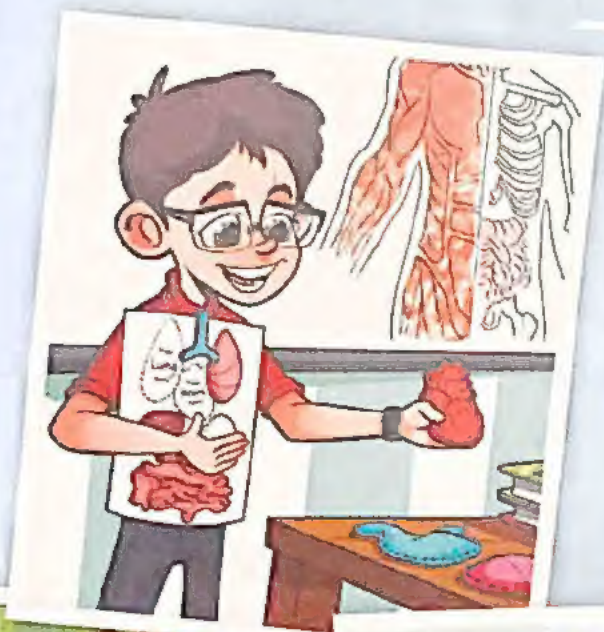
Unit 4 : City and country	188
Unit 5 : Resources in our world	232
Unit 6 : Let's work	277
Review 2	323
Fiction Reader Khayameya Summer	326





# Theme 1

I discover myself

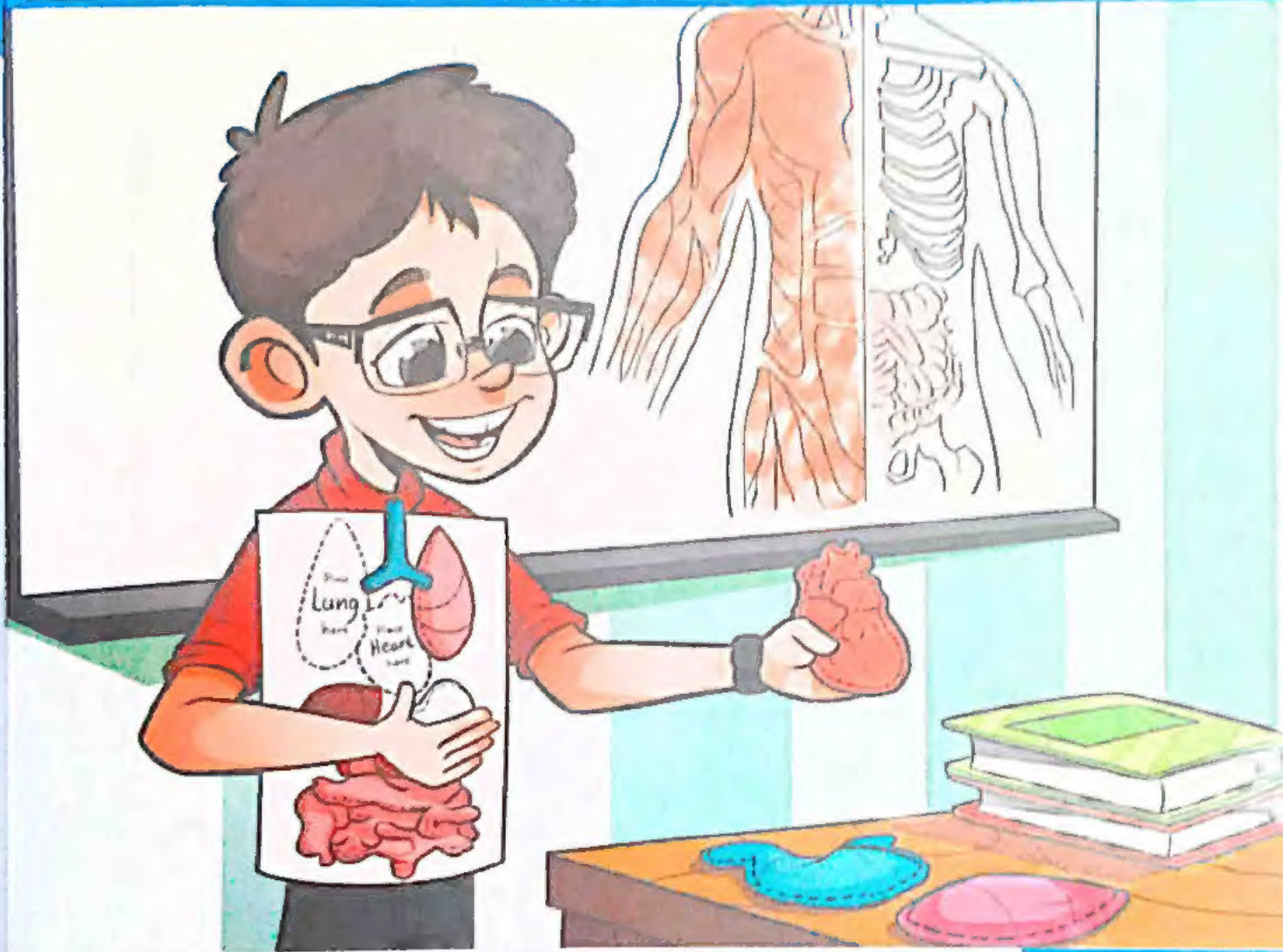


Aim  
In t  
• un  
• lea  
• fo  
ve  
• re



## What can I do ?

ماذا يمكنني ان افعل ؟



• دراسة المعاصر النفاذية.  
• التقنيات الشهيرة من الدراسة النفاذية.

• استخدام كارت المعاصر القراءة والكتابة.  
• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.  
• دراسة المعاصر للمهارات.

للتقان  
الوحدة

## Aims of Unit One :

In this unit I will .....

- understand important systems in my body  
- التعرف على الأجهزة الهامة في جسمي.
- learn about my brain.  
- تعلم عن مخي.
- form and use regular and irregular present simple verbs.  
- التكوين واستخدام الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة في زمن المضارع البسيط.
- read about our senses.  
- اقرأ عن حواسنا.

## الاهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى :

في هذه الوحدة سوف .....

- practice when to use capital letters.  
- التمرين على متى تستخدم الحروف الكبيرة.
- choose and write a title for a text.  
- اختيار وكتابة عنوان النص.
- plan activities for a summer camp.  
- التخطيط لأنشطة لمعسكر صيفي.

# Lesson

# 1

## Listening and reading

## My Body



### Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

### Key vocabulary

digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسي	heart	قلب
bones (١١)	العظام	stomach (٦)	معدة
muscles (٥)	عضلات	blood (٧)	دم
lungs (٣)	الرئتين		

### Extra vocabulary

special liquid	سائل خاص	organ	عضو (في الجسم)
energy (٣)	طاقة	nose	أنف
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	oxygen	غاز الأكسجين
mouth	فم	body	جسم

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

Present		Past
pump	يضخ	pumped
attach	يربط	attached
lift	يرفع	lifted
pass	يمر	passed
protect	يحمي	protected
chew	يمضغ	chewed
swallow	يبتلع	swallowed

#### Irregular

Present		Past
drink	يشرب	drank
eat	يأكل	ate
make	يصنع/يجعل	made
go	يذهب	went
breathe	يتنفس	breathed

### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

**Do you know?** - To be active in the day, we need a good diet, plenty of water, and enough sleep. Children aged 7 need eleven hours of sleep a night.

في يوم نشيط خلال اليوم، نحتاج إلى نظام غذائي جيد و الكثير من الماء وقسط كاف من النوم. يحتاج الأطفال من سبع سنوات حتى سن

سبعة عشر إحدى عشر ساعة من النوم كل ليلة.

There are about five liters of blood in the human body.

هناك خمسة لترات من الدم في جسم الإنسان.



## Important expressions and prepositions

## تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

change the food into  
(is) made up of  
breathe in air  
attached to

يحول الطعام إلى  
يتكون / يتألف من  
يستنشق الهواء  
مرتبط / متصل بـ

pump this blood around our body  
through the nose  
make us strong

يضخ هذا الدم حول جسمنا  
خلال الأنف  
يجعلنا أقوياء



## Help: Blood in the body

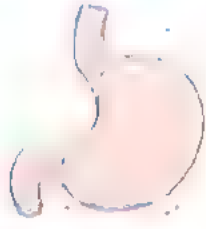
1 Look and write the missing letters. انظر واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1.



s \_ ele \_ on

2.



st \_ m \_ ch

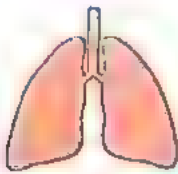
3.



b \_ ne \_ and m \_ scl \_ s

2 Look, unscramble and write. انظر، أعد ترتيب الحروف واكتب.

1.



s \_ l \_ u \_ g \_ n

2.



h \_ t \_ m \_ o \_ u

3.



r \_ t \_ a \_ e \_ h

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters in each word.

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة في كل كلمة

2 Ask your child to look at the pictures, unscramble the letters of the words then write them correctly.

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويعيد ترتيب حروف الكلمات ثم يكتبها بشكل صحيح

# 1 Digestive System الجهاز الهضمي



## The organ العضو

digestive system  
الجهاز الهضمي

We use it when we eat and drink.  
نستخدمه عندما نأكل ونشرب.

mouth فم

We chew and swallow food through it.  
نقوم بمضغ وبلع الطعام من خلاله.

stomach المعدة

The food goes to it. A special liquid in the stomach changes the food into energy and nutrients.  
يذهب الطعام إليها. يقوم سائل خاص في المعدة بتحويل الطعام إلى طاقة وعناصر غذائية.

## ★ Read and complete.

برأ وأكمل.

chew - stomach - nutrients - liquid

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special (2) \_\_\_\_\_ changes the food into energy and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ that we need in our bodies.

### Notes for parents

1. Help your child learn about the digestive system and its functions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الجهاز الهضمي ووظائفه.
- Ask your child to read and complete the text using the given words in the box اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات المعطاة في المربع أعلاه



## 2 Respiratory System الجهاز التنفسي

| nose |

| lungs |



heart

### The organ العضو

respiratory system

الجهاز التنفسي

We use it when we breathe.

نستخدمه عندما نتنفس.

nose

أنف

We breathe in air through it.

نستنشق الهواء من خلالها.

lungs

الرئتين

The air we breathe in goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood.

الهواء الذي نستنشقه يذهب إلى الرئتين. في الرئتين، يمر الأكسجين من الهواء إلى الدم.

heart

القلب

It pumps the blood around our body.

إنه يضخ الدم حول أجسامنا.

### ★ Read and complete.

اقرأ وأكمل.

blood - lungs - heart - breathe

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the (2) \_\_\_\_\_. Our (3) \_\_\_\_\_ pumps this blood around our body.

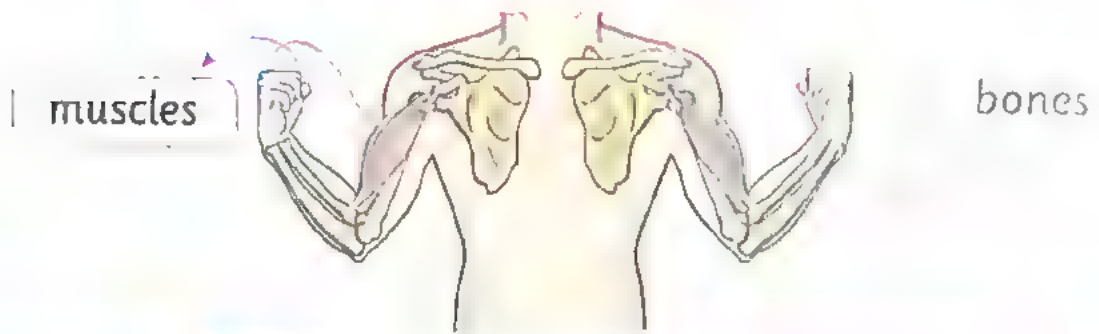
2 Help your child learn about the respiratory system and its functions.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الجهاز التنفسي ووظائفه

• Ask your child to read and complete the text using the given words in the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات المعطاة في المربع أعلاه

### 3 Bones and muscles العظام و العضلات



#### The organ العنصر

#### العضلات

skeleton  
الهيكل العظمي

It is made up of all the bones in our body.

يكون الهيكل العظمي من جميع العظام الموجودة في جسدنا.

bones العظام

They make us strong and protect our organs.

نجعلنا العظام أقوىاء وتحمي أعضاءنا.

muscles العضلات

- They are attached to our bones.  
تتصل العضلات بعظامنا.

- They lift and turn bones to make us move.  
نرفع العظام وتجعلها تستدير لتجعلنا نتحرك.

#### ★ Read and complete.

رأ وأكمل.

Muscles - strong - move - organ

Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body. These make us (1) .. and protect our organs. (2) .. are attached to our bones, and they lift and turn bones to make us (3) ..

#### Notes for parents

3. Help your child learn about bones and muscles and their functions.

• Ask your child to read and complete the text using the given words in the box  
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن العظام والعضلات و وظائفهم  
الطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدفا الكلمات في المربع



----- لإنقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

## Write

digestive system      di \_ \_ st \_ \_ e s 'st \_ m

respiratory system      re . \_i . atory s \_stem

bones                      b        es

muscles                      m \_ cl \_ s

swallow                      s \_ a \_ ow

**chew**                      c , e \_

heart                      h e a r t

stomach                      s : o \_ ach

lungs                      l n s

skeleton                      s'kel t. n

blood                      bl \_ \_ d

pump                      p' m

*[The page contains faint horizontal lines and illegible markings.]*

- Help your child read, spell , complete and write the words.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ، ينهجي ، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات

# 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

ستمع وصع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. We use our digestive system when we .  
 a. eat                      b. think                      c. breathe                      d. walk
2. We chew food, then it goes to our .  
 a. heart                      b. stomach                      c. teeth                      d. lungs
3. The food                      into energy and nutrients.  
 a. changes                      b. mixes                      c. uses                      d. moves
4. We need energy and nutrients in our .  
 respiratory                      digestive                      bodies                      home

## 2 Listen and complete.

ستمع واكمل

1. Our                      is made up of all the bones in our body.
2. ,                      are attached to our bones.
3. Muscles lift and turn                      to make us move.
4. Bones make us                      and protect our organs.

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

كلمات لتكوين حمل صحيحة.

1. breathe in – through – air – is – nose – our.
2. passed to – the blood – is –                      – the oxygen ?

Notes for parents



- 4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.  
اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الصندوق.

oxygen – nose – heart – stomach

When we eat, we chew and swallow our food. A liquid changes the food in our (1) into energy and nutrients.

We breathe in air through our (2) and it goes to our lungs. The (3) in our lungs is passed to the blood.

- 5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.  
اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to the stomach. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. When we eat and , we use our digestive system.  
a. drink      b. breathe      c. move      d. listen
2. A special liquid food into energy.  
a. eats      b. works      c. goes      d. changes

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What system do we use when we breathe in ?
4. Where does food go after we swallow it ?

- 6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات ترقيم للجملة الآتية.

we breathe in air through our nose

# Lesson

## 2

- Reading
- Our senses



### Vocabulary

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### Key vocabulary

senses	الحواس	hearing	حاسة السمع
taste	حاسة الذوق	smell	حاسة الشم
touch	حاسة اللمس	sweet	حلو المذاق
sight	حاسة الإبصار	information	معلومات
savory	مالح	combination	تركيبة / مزيج

### Extra vocabulary

world	عالم	English	لغة إنجليزية
tongue	لسان	Arabic	لغة عربية
skin	جلد / بشرة	Spanish	لغة إسبانية
What kind ... ?	ما نوع ... ؟	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
communicate	يتواصل / يتواصل	Braille	نقطة برايل
sign language	لغة الإشارة	code	رمز / حاتم
deaf	أصم (لا يسمع)	blind	أعمى / فاقد البصر
difficulty	صعوبة	dots	نقط
versions	إصدارات	punctuation marks	علامات ترقيم
complete	تام • كامل	letter	حرف
fireworks	اللعاب نارية	Egyptian dish	طبق مصري
loud	عالي الصوت	animal's fur	فراء حيوان

### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

الهدف من هذه الصفحة هو مساعدة الوالدين على مساعدة أطفالهم على التحدث بطلاقة.



## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

### Regular

#### Present

taste	يتذوق
work	يعمل
invent	يخترع
enjoy	يستمتع
use	يستخدم
touch	يلمس
call	يسمى/يدعى

#### Past

tasted
worked
invented
enjoyed
used
touched
called

### Irregular

#### Present

understand	يفهم
see	يرى
hear	يسمع
smell	يشم
feel	يشعر
mean	يعنى / يفصد
speak	يتكلم

#### Past

understood
saw
heard
smelt
felt
meant
spoke

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

think about	يفكر فى
all the time	طوال الوقت
take in a lot of information	يستوعب الكثير من المعلومات
look at	ينظر إلى
lots of	كثير من
different from	مختلف عن

have difficulty hearing	يعانى من ضعف السمع
find out	يكشف
(be) called	يسمى / يدعى
the world around us	العالم من حولنا
feel soft	لمسها ناعم



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

### • Look, unscramble and write.

انظر، أعد ترتيب الحروف واكتب.

1.



g n e h a r i

2.



n g t o u e

3.



n l b i d

• Ask your child to look at the pictures, unscramble the letters of the words then write them correctly.  
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويعيد ترتيب حروف الكلمات ثم يكتبها بشكل صحيح.

Look and identify. انظر واكتشف.

I can hear with my ears. أنا أسمع بأذني.



I can hear with my ears.



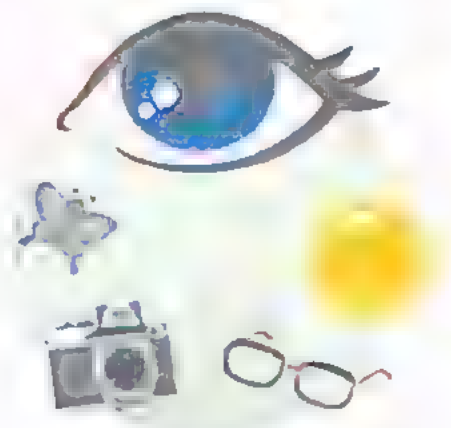
I can smell with my nose.



I can feel with my skin.



I can taste with my tongue.



I can see with my eyes.

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures and identify the five senses

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتشف الحواس الخمسة



We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

Think about where you are now. What can you see ?

What can you hear ? Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

Look at the photo. What can the child **smell**<sup>(1)</sup> ?

What do you think he can **feel**<sup>(2)</sup> ? What kind of food do you enjoy ? Some foods are **sweet**<sup>(3)</sup>, and some are **savory**<sup>(4)</sup>.

We taste lots of different **kinds**<sup>(5)</sup> of food every day. Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to **communicate**<sup>(6)</sup>.

People who are **deaf**<sup>(7)</sup> or have **difficulty hearing**<sup>(8)</sup> can learn **sign language**<sup>(9)</sup>. It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish, and there are different **versions**<sup>(10)</sup> of it around the world - sign language in Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.

**Braille**<sup>(11)</sup> is a **code**<sup>(12)</sup> which people who are **blind**<sup>(13)</sup> or have **difficulty seeing**<sup>(14)</sup> can use to read. It has different **combinations**<sup>(15)</sup> of **dots**<sup>(16)</sup>.

#### Check Vocabulary

- بشم
- يشعر
- حلو المذاق
- مالح
- أنواع
- يتواصل
- اصم
- ضعف السمع
- لغة الإشارة
- نسخ/إصدارات
- طريقة برايل
- رسم
- كفيف
- ضعف البصر
- تركيبات/ مزيج
- نقاط



• Help your child read and identify about our different senses.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على حواسنا المختلفة

- نحن نستخدم حواسنا كل يوم لمساعدتنا على فهم العالم من حولنا نحن نستخدم أعيننا ليرى وأذنيننا لنتسمع نحن نشم بأنفنا، بتذوق بلساننا ويمكننا أن نشعر عن طريق بشورتنا (جسدياً) فكر أين أنت الآن ماذا ترى ؟ ماذا تسمع ؟ تعمل حواسنا طوال الوقت ونستقبل الكثير من المعلومات
- انصت إلى الصورة ماذا يستطيع الطفل أن يسمع ؟ ماذا يعتقد به يشعر ؟ أي نوع من الطعام نستمتع به ؟ بعض الأطعمة حلو المذاق وبعضها مالح نحن نبتذق الكثير من أنواع الأطعمة المختلفة كل يوم بعض الناس لا يستطيعوا أن يروا أو يسمعوا، لذلك يكون لديهم طرق مختلفة للتواصل الصم أو من يعاني من ضعف السمع يمكنهم تعلم لغة الإشارة (إشارة) لغة كاملة مثل اللغة الإنجليزية، لغوية أو الإنسانية، ويوجد منها إصدارات مختلفة حول العالم - لغة الإشارة في مصر مختلفة عن لغة الإشارة في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
- طريقة برايل هي نظام يمكن أن يستخدمها الأشخاص المكفوفين أو من لديهم ضعف بصر للشراء فهذه اللغة لها تركيبات مختلفة من النقاط

They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Braille was by Louis Braille.

Check Vocabulary

حصر

Answer  
the following  
questions:

Learn 1. What do we use to smell?  
We use our nose to smell.

Practice 2. Who invented Braille?

## Language

### Capital letters حروف الكبيرة

تستخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع الآتي:

#### Proper nouns أسماء العَلَم

Names of people and pets أسماء الأشخاص والحيوانات الأليفة



Hany



Amira

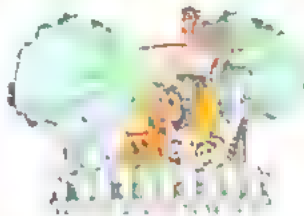


Roy



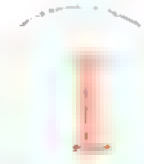
Tamra

Names of places أسماء الأماكن



Giza Zoo

The pronoun I (I) الضمير (أنا)



Holidays  
العطلات

Eid Al-Fitr

Christmas

### Notes for parents

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف متى يستخدم الحروف الكبيرة في الجملة. لاحظ الاختصار أن يكتب بحرف كبير (capital) مثل Mr • Mrs

• Help your child identify when we write the capital letters in the sentence.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف متى يستخدم الحروف الكبيرة في الجملة. لاحظ الاختصار أن يكتب بحرف كبير (capital) مثل Mr • Mrs



Days of the week  
أيام الأسبوع

Sunday

Friday

Months of the year  
شهور السنة

June

October

November

August

At the beginning of a sentence.  
في بداية الجملة

Turn on the fan. It's hot.

Countries and nationalities  
أسماء البلاد والجنسيات

Egypt / Egyptian



TOPIC: PUNCTUATION

## 1 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1. i speak english and french

2. what can the child smell

3. i live in cairo in egypt

4. my teacher is called mr hassan

## 2 Circle the sentences with the correct punctuation.

ضع دائرة حول الجمل بعلامات الترقيم الصحيحة.

1. my name is nada. i live in aswan ?

2. We have fun on weekends.

3. What can you see and hear.

4. Sign language is a complete language.

1 Ask your child to punctuate the given sentences

2 Ask your child to circle the sentences with the correct punctuation.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل المعطاة

- اطلب من طفلك أن يضع دائرة على الجمل المكتوبة بعلامات ترقيم صحيحة

# Dictation



يُعدُّ من مهارات الكتابة استخدام كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

## Read and spell

## Complete

sight

si \_ \_ t

hearing

he \_ \_ i \_ g

taste

t \_ s \_ e

smell

\_ m \_ ll

touch

t \_ \_ ch

tongue

t \_ n \_ ue

skin

s \_ i \_

savory

s \_ v \_ \_ y

sign language

s \_ \_ n la \_ \_ uage

deaf

de \_ \_

Braille

B \_ ai \_ \_ e

code

c \_ d \_

blind

b \_ i \_ d

### Notes for parents

- Help your child read, spell, complete and write

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يكتب، يكمل ويكتب

Apply

Create



**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We use our eyes to .....  
a. taste                      b. touch                      c. hear                      d. see
- We hear with our .....  
a. ears                      b. arms                      c. legs                      d. brain
- We can feel with our .....  
a. mouth                      b. skin                      c. nose                      d. stomach



**Listen and complete.**

استمع وأكمل.

- People who are ..... or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language.
- Sign language is ..... in each country.
- We use our hands, ..... and bodies to communicate.
- People use ..... instead of hearing to understand.



**Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.**

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة من الكلمات من الصندوق.

five – sense – eyes – ears

**Mustafa :** Hi, Mounir. What do you think of today's lesson ?

**Mounir :** Hi, Mustafa. It's an easy lesson. As you know we have (1) ..... senses.

**Mustafa :** Sure, but why do we need them ?

**Mounir :** Each (2) ..... has an important job.

**Mustafa :** Can you give me an example?

**Mounir :** Yes, we use our (3) ..... to see and we use our ears to hear.

**Mustafa :** That's right. It's an interesting lesson.

1 Ask your child to listen to the text and choose the correct answer

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع إلى النص ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة

2 Ask your child to listen to the text and complete the sentences

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع إلى النص ويكمل الجمل

3 Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة مستخدماً كلمات من المربع





**Read the following text and answer the questions below**  
 اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use to read. It was invented by Louis Braille. It has different combinations of dots. They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Some people who cannot hear use sign language. It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish.

**A. Choose the correct answer :**

1. People who are blind or cannot ..... well can learn to read by using Braille.  
 a. sing                      b. hear                      c. touch                      d. see
2. Braille is a ..... language.  
 a. useless                      b. bad                      c. sad                      d. complete

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. Who use Braille to communicate ?

4. What is sign language ?

- **5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.**

كتب فقرة إنشائية من حوالى (50) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية.

Our different senses

مخارج عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**Guiding words :**

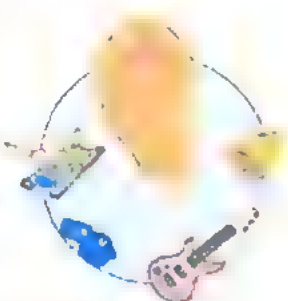
- hear      • ears      • smell      • skin

.....

.....

.....

.....



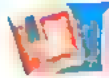
**Notes for parents**

4 Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions

5 Ask your child to write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the given guiding words

الطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويحجب عن الأسئلة

الطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من (50) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية



Vocabulary

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

lounge	مائدة - طاولة	right hemisphere	النصف الأيمن (من المخ)
disappointed	الاحباط / الحزن	left hemisphere	النصف الأيسر (من المخ)
cookery	فن الطبخ	activity	نشاط
brain	المخ		

Extra vocabulary

creative	مبدع - مبتكر	memory	ذاكرة
paper	ورق	choices	اختبارات
math	الرياضيات	main areas	مناطق رئيسية
science	العلوم	cerebrum	منطقة المخ
art	التربية الفنية	cerebellum	منطقة المخيخ
solving problems	حل لمشاكل	brain stem	حذع المخ
tired	متعب	movement	حركة
thoughts	أفكار	balance	توازن
artistic	ذو حسن فني	light bulb	مصباح كهربى

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

tidy	يرتب
smile	يتسّم
practice	يمارس/يتدرب
answer	يجيب
paint	يلون
control	يتحكم
join	يربط

Past

tidied
smiled
practiced
answered
painted
controlled
joined

Irregular

Present

say	يقول
know	يعرف
draw	يرسم
run	يجرى
choose	يختار
take	يأخذ
think	يفكر

Past

said
knew
drew
ran
chose
took
thought

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

## Unit 1: My Brain

مساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن المخ

at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الاسبوع	do drawing	يقوم بالرسم
What's the matter?	ما الأمر	do quizzes	يحل المسائل ويصغره
paint a picture	نور صورة	play tennis	يلعب التنس
control the right/left side of		on Mondays	في أيام الاثنين

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم. Pop Quiz

### Fact file

#### Ten Fun Brain Facts ! عشر حقائق ممتعة عن المخ

1. The brain is the most important **organ** of the body.
2. An adult brain **weighs** about 1400 grams.
3. About 75 % of the brain is made up of water.
4. Your brain **continues** to grow until you're about 18 years old.
5. Your brain uses about 20 % of the oxygen and blood in your body.
6. **Information** travels from your body to your brain at 240 - 420 kilometers per hour.
7. Every minute about one liter of blood flows through the brain.
8. While you are sleeping, your brain goes through all the **memories** of the day.
9. The **average** brain has 12.000 to 60.000 thoughts a day!
10. When you are awake, your brain makes enough electricity to power a small light bulb.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عضو في الجسم  
(2) وزن  
(3) يستمر  
(4) معلومات  
(5) ذكريات  
(6) متوسط المخ

Notes for parents

- Help you child to read and learn about his/her brain

• مساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن المخ



## What do Adam and Kareema like to do ?

ماذا يحب آدم وكريمة أن يفعلوا ؟

"It is Saturday, so there's no school. What are we doing today, Mom?" asks Kareema.

"We have to **tidy**<sup>(1)</sup> the **lounge**<sup>(2)</sup>. Then you can choose what you want to do", says Mom.

Kareema's brother Adam **smiles**<sup>(3)</sup>.

"I know what I want to do!" he says.

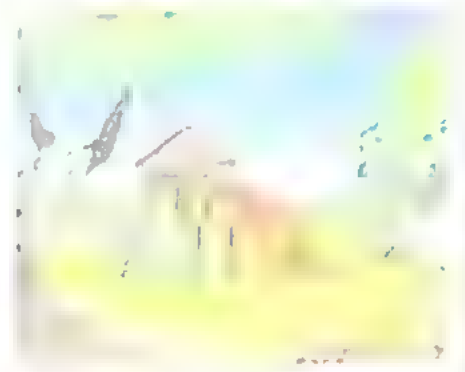
"Let's go to the park. We can run and play. I want to **practice**<sup>(4)</sup> football." Kareema looks **disappointed**<sup>(5)</sup>.

"What's the matter ?" asks Mom.

"I like the park," Kareema answers. "But I want to do something **creative**<sup>(6)</sup> this afternoon. I would like to **draw**<sup>(7)</sup> or **paint**<sup>(8)</sup> a picture. Adam goes to the park every week."

"Kareema always does drawing!" says Adam.

Mom smiles. "I think we can all be happy today. Let's go to the park. We can play there and we can take pencils and paper with us. You can draw in the park, too. But first, let's tidy the lounge."



### Check Vocabulary

- (1) ينظم
- (2) غرفة الجلوس
- (3) يبتسم
- (4) يتدرب
- (5) محبط
- (6) إبداعي
- (7) يرسم
- (8) يلون

### Read

and tick (✓)  
 or (X):

### Learn

1. Mom wants to tidy the kitchen.

### Practice

2. Adam wants to run in the park.

X

• Help your child look, listen and read the text

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يسمع ويقرأ النص

إليه يوم السبت لذا لا يوجد يوم دراسي. تسأل كريمة: "ماذا سيفعل ليوم ما أمي؟" يقول الأم: "علينا أن نرتب غرفة الجلوس ثم يمكننا اختيار ما نريدون القيام به". يبتسم دم يتفق كريمة ويقول: "أعرف ما أريد أن أفعله اليوم!" "هيا بنا نذهب إلى الحديقة يمكننا الجري واللعب. أريد أن أندرب على كرة القدم". تبدو كريمة محبطة تسأل أم: "ما الأمر؟" تجيب كريمة: "أحب الحديقة، ولكنني أريد أن أفعل سن ما إبداعي وقت الطهيرة هذا اليوم. أود أن أرسم أو ألون صورة. نذهب آدم إلى الحديقة كل أسبوع يقول آدم: "كريمة ترسم دائما" يبتسم الأم ويقول: "أعني أنه يمكننا حصفا أن نكون سعداء اليوم دعونا نذهب إلى الحديقة يمكننا اللعب هناك ويمكننا إحضار أقلام الرصاص والورق معنا ويمكنك الرسم في الحديقة أيضا لكني أود أن نرتب غرفة الجلوس".

1. Our brain controls how we move, what we remember, and the choices we make.

١. مخنا يتحكم فى كيفية الحركة لدينا وبماذا نتذكر وبالأختيارات التى تصنعها.

2. The three main areas of the brain are the cerebrum, the cerebellum and the brain stem, and they all have important jobs.

الثلث مناطق الرئيسية فى المخ هى منطقة المخ ومنطقة المخيخ وجذع الدماغ وكل منطقة منهم لها وظائف هامة.

3. The cerebrum controls our senses, thoughts, how we speak, and our memories. The cerebellum controls movement and balance.

منطقة المخ تتحكم فى مشاعرنا وأفكارنا وكيف نتحدث وذاكراتنا. منطقة المخيخ تتحكم فى الحركة والتوازن.

4. The brain stem joins the two parts of the brain.

٤. جذع المخ يربط جزئين المخ معًا.

5. The left hemisphere of the brain controls the right side of the body.

٥. الشق الأيسر من المخ يتحكم فى الجانب الأيمن من الجسم.

6. The right hemisphere of the brain control the left side of the body.

٦. الشق اليمين من المخ يتحكم فى الجانب الأيسر من الجسم.

7. More people use their right hand to write with.

٧. كثير من الناس يستخدمون يدهم اليمنى فى الكتابة.

8. Some people who are left-handed are very creative and artistic.

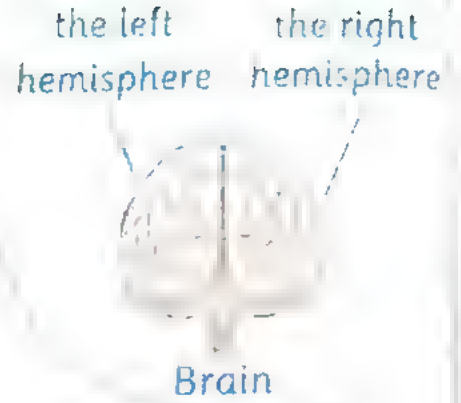
٨. بعض الناس عسر اليدى (يستخدمون اليد اليسرى) يكونوا مبدعين وفنانين / لديهم حس فنى.

9. The left hemisphere is important for math, science and solving problems.

٩. الشق الأيسر من المخ هام فى العمليات الحسابية والعلوم وحل المشكلات.

10. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.

١٠. نستخدم الشق اليمين فى الأنشطة الابداعية مثل الرسم والموسيقى.



#### Notes for parents

- Help your child learn about the brain and its importance.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن المخ وأهميته

Read  
and choose  
the correct  
answer

1. Our \_\_\_\_\_ controls how we move and remember.  
a. heart      b. brain      c. nose      d. tongue
- Practice 2. There are \_\_\_\_\_ main areas of the brain.  
a. one      b. two      c. three      d. four

## Language functions

### ★ Talking about your activities at the weekend.

التحدث عن الأنشطة الخاصة بك في عطلة نهاية الاسبوع.

What do you like to do  
at the weekend ?

ماذا تحب أن تفعل في عطلة  
نهاية الاسبوع ؟



I like to draw or paint  
a picture.

أحب أن أرسم أو ألون صورة.



### ★ Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل.

تستخدم في تقديم الاقتراحات

Let's go to the zoo.  
هيا نذهب لحديقة الحيوان.



That's a good idea !  
هذه فكرة جيدة !



• Help your child talk about his/her activities at the weekend.

• ساعد طفلك أن يتحدث عن الأنشطة الخاصة به/بها في العطلة.



## The Present Simple Tense

### Affirmative statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

I / You / We /

They / اسم جمع

+ المصدر الأول للفعل

- ex. - I **know** what I want to do.  
- We **play** tennis after school.

He / She / It

/ (All) اسم مفرد

+ (inf) + or  
مصدر الفعل

s →

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s)

es →

أما التي تنتهي بـ (sh, ch, ss, x, o) يضاف لها (es)

- ex. - Adam **goes** to the park every week.  
- Karima always **does** drawing.

### Notes :

الفعل المنتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (ies) مع حذف (y) :

- ex. - She **carries** a bag.

الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف له (s) :

- ex. - He **plays** volleyball every Friday.

### Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

- ex. - He **likes** reading books on holidays.  
- The sun **rises** in the east.

### Notes for parents

- Help your child identify the present simple tense.

• ساعد طفلك أن يعرف على زمن المضارع البسيط

## 2 Negative statements

الجملة السالبة  
المنفية

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't } + (inf.)  
I / you / We / They / اسم جمع + don't } + مصدر الفعل

- ex. - I don't have sisters.  
- He doesn't play tennis.

## 3 Interrogative

صيغة  
الاستفهام

Yes / No Question السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟

Do + I / you / we / they / اسم جمع } + inf. + باقي السؤال ؟  
Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد } + مصدر الفعل

ex. Do you like milk ?

- Yes, I do.  
- No, I don't.

ex. Does she like milk ?

- Yes, she does.  
- No, she doesn't.

Wh - question السؤال الذي يبدأ بكلمة استفهام.

Question word + { do + you / we / they } + inf. ؟  
does + he / she / it } + مصدر الفعل

ex. When do you get up every day ?

- I get up at 6 o'clock.

## 2 Auxiliary verbs

هناك بعض الأفعال لها أشكال خاصة في زمن المضارع كالتالي:

### 1 Verb to be فعل "يكون"

He	→	is	I	→	am	We	→	are
She	→	isn't	I	→	'm not	You	→	aren't
It						They		
- She <b>is</b> hungry.						- They <b>are</b> tired.		

### 2 Verb to have فعل "يملك"

He	→	has	I	→	have
She	→	doesn't have	We	→	don't have
It			You		
			They		
- Tarek <b>has</b> two sisters.			- I <b>have</b> one brother.		

### 3 Verb to do فعل "يفعل"

He	→	does	I	→	do
She	→	doesn't	We	→	don't
It			You		
			They		
- Hana <b>does</b> art class.			- We <b>do</b> cookery class.		
			- I <b>don't</b> do homework late.		

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child identify auxiliary verbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأفعال المساعدة





## Pop Quiz on Language

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. They ..... tired.  
a. be                      b. is                      c. are                      d. can
2. I ..... one brother.  
a. has                      b. have                      c. do                      d. am
3. We ..... cookery in class.  
a. are                      b. do                      c. does                      d. is
4. Adam ..... to the park every week.  
a. go                      b. goes                      c. going                      d. is going
5. .... he usually play at noon ?  
a. Does                      b. Do                      c. Is                      d. Are
6. I ..... eat pizza.  
a. doesn't                      b. isn't                      c. don't                      d. aren't
7. Hany ..... his bag every day to school.  
a. carries                      b. carry                      c. carrying                      d. is carrying
8. Do you have a jacket ? Yes, I .....  
a. does                      b. am                      c. do                      d. don't

### 2 Write the verb in brackets in the correct present form.

اكتب الفعل بين الأقواس بالصيغة الصحيحة للمضارع البسيط.

1. She ..... (eat) cheese for breakfast.
2. They ..... (lives) in a large house.
3. She always ..... (listen) to her teacher.
4. She ..... (do) her homework every evening.
5. Every morning, we ..... (reads) the newspaper.

1 Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

2 Ask your child to write the correct form of the verb in brackets.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للفعل بين الأقواس.

# General Exercises

بصوت  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Listen • Read • Write • Create

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Mom wants to tidy the .....  
a. kitchen      b. lounge      c. bedroom      d. balcony
- My brother wants to ..... in the park.  
a. draw      b. paint      c. move      d. run
- I want to do something .....  
a. creative      b. happy      c. noisy      d. easy

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- She ..... three sisters.  
a. have      b. has      c. do      d. is
- It ..... Friday, so there's no school.  
a. is      b. are      c. do      d. does
- Our brain ..... our body.  
a. control      b. controls      c. controlling      d. controlled
- Let's ..... to the park.  
a. go      b. goes      c. went      d. going

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

- we - are - **What** - doing - today ?
- like - I - draw - a picture - would - to.

### Notes for parents

1 Ask your child to listen and choose the correct answer

2 Ask your child to choose the correct answer

3 Ask your child to reorder the words and write the sentences correctly

1. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة

2. اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

3. اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بشكل صحيح



**Read and complete the text with the words from the box.**  
 اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الصندوق.

art – left – hemispheres – right

The brain is the most important organ of the body. There are two halves, or (1) \_\_\_\_\_, in our brain. The (2) \_\_\_\_\_ hemisphere is important for math, science, and solving problems. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and music.



**Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.**

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من حوالي (50) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة.

What do you like to do at the weekend ?

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**Guiding words :**

- creative
- paint
- practice
- park





# Lesson

## 4

### • Parasports



#### Vocabulary



Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

#### Key vocabulary

Paralympic Games = Paralympics	silver medal	ميدالية فضية
دورة الألعاب البارالمبية	bronze medal	ميدالية برونزية
(الألعاب الأولمبية ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة)	champion	بطل رياضي
international	parasports	الألعاب الرياضية ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة
دولي - عالمي	dedication	تفاني / إخلاص
competition		
مسابقة - منافسة		
athletes		
الرياضيين		
gold medal		
ميدالية ذهبية		

#### Extra vocabulary

disabilities	إعاقات	national team	الفريق القومي
Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية	hard work	عمل جاد
World Championship	بطولة العالم	level	مستوى
Egypt Cup	كأس مصر	sitting volleyball	كرة الطائرة على الكراسي المتحركة
female	أنثى	New Zealand	دولة نيوزيلندا
swimmer	سباح	Africa	قارة أفريقيا
runner	عداء - متسابق	Brazil	دولة البرازيل
race	سباق	country	دولة
opportunities	فرص		

#### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

##### Present

join ينضم

include يتضمن / يشمل

train يتدرب

##### Past

joined

included

trained

#### Irregular

##### Present

hold يعقد - يقيم

win يفوز

##### Past

held

won

#### Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات و يرددوها

## Important expressions and prepositions







تعابير وحروف جر هامة

take place = happen يحدث  
take part in يشارك فى  
is held in a different country  
تقام فى دولة مختلفة  
take years of dedication يستغرق سنوات من التفانى  
400-meter race سباق ٤٠٠ متر

get to يصل إلى  
have fun = enjoy يستمتع  
do a sport يمارس رياضة  
the 2016 Rio Paralympics دورة الألعاب البارالمبية ريو ٢٠١٦  
athletes with disabilities الرياضيون ذوو الاحتياجات الخاصة

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

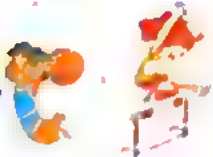
What do three types of medals mean ?

1		a gold medal	→	1 <sup>st</sup> winner (First place)	
2		a silver medal	→	2 <sup>nd</sup> winner (Second place)	
3		a bronze medal	→	3 <sup>rd</sup> winner (Third place)	

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Look and write the missing letters. انظر واكمل الكلمات.

1.



ath \_ \_ \_ es

2.



s \_ i \_ \_ er

3.



r \_ nn \_ r

4.



v \_ ll \_ yb \_ ll

• Help your child read the words and identify what the types of medals mean.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الكلمات ويحدد على ما تعنيه أنواع الميداليات.

• Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters.

• اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة.

## Reading

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

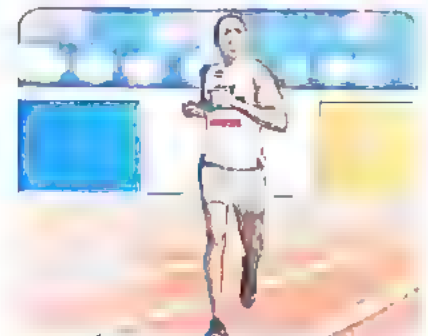
The Paralympic Games<sup>(1)</sup> is an international<sup>(2)</sup> competition<sup>(3)</sup> for athletes<sup>(4)</sup> with disabilities<sup>(5)</sup>. Like the Olympics<sup>(6)</sup>, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Paraspots is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.



Aya Ayman Abbas

Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion<sup>(7)</sup> who has won the Egypt Cup<sup>(8)</sup> three times. She was the first female<sup>(9)</sup> Egyptian Paralympic swimmer<sup>(10)</sup> in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of gold<sup>(11)</sup>, silver<sup>(12)</sup> and bronze<sup>(13)</sup> medals<sup>(14)</sup> in many different countries.

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner<sup>(15)</sup> who takes part in 100-meter, 200-meter and 400-meter races. He joined<sup>(16)</sup> the national team<sup>(17)</sup> in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won many medals, including gold in the World Championship<sup>(18)</sup> in New Zealand.



Mostafa Fathalla

### Check Vocabulary

- (1) دورة الألعاب البارالمبية
- (2) دولي
- (3) مسابقة
- (4) لاعبين رياضيين
- (5) ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة
- (6) الألعاب الأولمبية
- (7) بطل في السباحة
- (8) كأس مصر
- (9) أنثى
- (10) سباحة
- (11) ذهبي
- (12) فضي
- (13) برونزي
- (14) ميداليات
- (15) عداء
- (16) انضم
- (17) الفريق الوطني
- (18) بطولة العالم

### Notes for parents

- Help your child read the text and learn about the athletes

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعلم عن اللاعبين الرياضيين

دورة الألعاب البارالمبية هي مسابقة دولية للاعبين الرياضيين من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة وهي مثل دورة الألعاب الأولمبية. تحدث كل أربع سنوات، ويقام في دولة مختلفة كل مرة. دورة الألعاب الأولمبية لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة هي مجال هام من مجالات الرياضة، ومصر يدير العديد من الرياضيين الذين يشاركون في هذه المسابقات. أنه أيمي عباس هي بطلة في السباحة فازت بكأس مصر ثلاثة مرات وكانت أول سباحة مصرية في الألعاب البارالمبية في ريو عام ٢٠١٦ فازت بالعديد من الميداليات الذهبية والفضية والبرونزية في العديد من البلدان المختلفة. مصطفى فتح الله هو عداء شارك في مسابقات ١٠٠ متر و ٢٠٠ متر و ٤٠٠ متر انضم إلى المنتخب الوطني في مصر عام ٢٠٠٦ وشارك في العديد من البطولات الدولية وقد فاز بالعديد من الميداليات بما في ذلك الذهبية في بطولة العالم في نيوزيلندا.



Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays **sitting volleyball**<sup>(19)</sup>. He took part in the 2016 Rio Paralympics, where the team won bronze. He has played with his team in Africa and Brazil and they have won many international competitions for Egypt.

Being a Paralympic or Olympic athlete takes years of **dedication**<sup>(20)</sup> and hard work. Not everyone can get to this level, but there are many **opportunities**<sup>(21)</sup> for everyone to take part and have fun **doing a sport**<sup>(22)</sup> they enjoy.

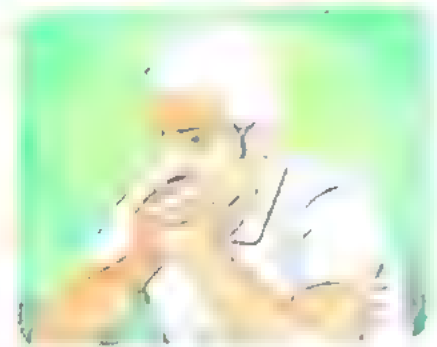
#### Check Vocabulary

كرة طائرة على الكرسي المتحركه

تعالى

فرص

رياضة



Ahmed Abdel Fattah

**Read**  
and tick (✓)  
or (x):

**Learn** 1. The Paralympic Games is held every three years. ☒

2. The Olympic Games is held in a different country each time. ☐

**Practice** 3. Mostafa Fathalla joined the national team in 2005 ☐

4. Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. ☐

الفرص على احمد

كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للمصف 4 الابتدائي

Connect Plus

المراجعة النهائية

امان نقول لمن يستحق

استعد من خلال بلعبة الكرة الطائرة على الكرسي المتحرك شارك في دورة الألعاب البارالمبية ٢٠١٦ حيث فاز الفريق بالميدالية البرونزية احمد وحيد فردي في تونس والبرازيل وشارك في البطولة العربية لتصنيف مصر  
السكران وشخصيا وسعيد انكوني الاحمديانك انماضه لا سطر انعميتا لذلك يتطلب مساهمة من الشان والاحمل الدار لا يمكن للمصنف الوصول الى هذا المستوى ولذا هناك  
... في مصر من استطيع للعب الكرة والاحمديانك مساهمة توراعه الى مساهمة

# General Exercises

on Lesson 4

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في كتاب  
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
ستمع واختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The Paralympic \_\_\_\_\_ is an international competition.  
a. Plays      b. Puzzles      c. Games      d. Music
- The Olympics takes place every \_\_\_\_\_ years.  
a. two      b. three      c. five      d. four
- It is held in a different \_\_\_\_\_ each time.  
a. village      b. building      c. country      d. island
- Egypt has many \_\_\_\_\_ who take part in these competitions.  
a. teachers      b. athletes      c. vets      d. captains

- 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.  
قرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

competitions - team - class - Paralympics

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. He took part in the 2016 Rio (1) \_\_\_\_\_, where the team won bronze. He has played with his (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in Africa and Brazil. They have won many international (3) \_\_\_\_\_ for Egypt.

- 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.  
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملة صحيحة.

- plays – He – volleyball – sitting.
- won – medals – He – many – has.

## Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read the text carefully and understand the meaning of the words.  
2. Ask your child to complete the text with the words from the box.  
3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences.

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

إختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Mark ..... fruits and vegetables.  
a. like                      b. likes                      c. to like                      d. not like
2. Does she ..... hard for the competitions ?  
a. trains                      b. trained                      c. training                      d. train
3. I ..... fun doing a sport.  
a. has                      b. having                      c. have                      d. to have
4. Sara ..... work on Sundays.  
a. isn't                      b. don't                      c. wasn't                      d. doesn't

**5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.**

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من حوالى (50) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الدسشرشادية.

**A swimming champion**

إجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**Guiding questions :**

1. Who is Aya Ayman Abbas ?
2. How many times did she win Egypt Cup ?
3. What medals did she have ?



- 4 Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
5. Ask your child to write a paragraph of (50) words using the given questions.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية مكون من (50) كلمة باستخدام الأسئلة المعطاة له



# Lessons 5 & 6

- Writing paragraphs
- Project



## Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### Key vocabulary

exercise	يتدرب / تدرّب	unhealthy habits	عادات غير صحية
healthy diet	نظام غذائي صحي	summer camp	معسكر صيفي
mental	عقلي	physical	بدني / جسدي

### Extra vocabulary

routine	نظام يومي	active	نشط
hard	صعب / شاق	fat	دهون
range	سلسلة / مجموعة	sugar	سكر
tips	نصائح	clear	واضح
especially	خصوصًا	unimportant information	معلومات غير هامة
video games	ألعاب فيديو		

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

##### Present

start يبدأ  
organise ينظم  
develop ينمي  
summarize يلخص  
stay يبقى

##### Past

started  
organised  
developed  
summarized  
stayed

#### Irregular

##### Present

find يجد  
drink يشرب  
choose يختار  
write يكتب  
give يعطي  
learn يتعلم

##### Past

found  
drank  
chose  
wrote  
gave  
learnt / learned

### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات وردد.

## Important expressions and prepositions

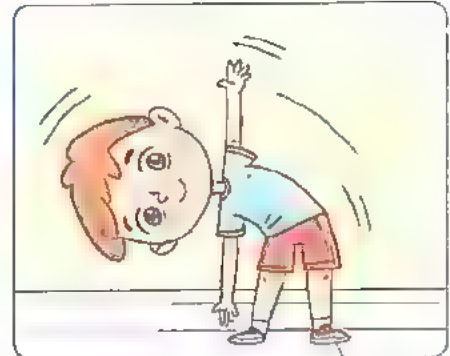
تعابير وحروف حر هامة

It is a good idea to	إنها لفكرة جيدة أن	as well	أيضاً
try to	يحاول أن	have for lunch	يتناول لوجبة الغداء
do some exercise	يقوم ببعض التدريبات الرياضية	play on	يلعب على
easy for	سهل لـ	a mixture of	خليط من
on hot days	في الأيام الحارة	sitting still for a long time	الجلوس بدون حركة لفترة طويلة
It's fun to	إنه من الممتع أن	choose for	يختار لـ
plan for	يخطط لـ	make friends	يكون صداقات
full of	مليء بـ	aged	ذو عمر/سن

🎧 **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ. **Pop Quiz** | تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

### كيف تبدأ التمرين بشكل روتيني ? **How to start an exercise routine ?**

Starting an exercise routine is hard, but it's a good idea to try to do some exercise three to five times a week. It's easier if you find a sport you enjoy doing, perhaps something you can do with friends. Find a time that is easy for everyone in your family.



البدء في التدريبات بشكل روتيني أمر صعب ولكنها فكرة جيدة أن تحاول القيام ببعض التدريبات من ثلاثة إلى خمس مرات في الأسبوع. فمن الأسهل أن تجد رياضة تستمتع بالقيام بها. ربما شيئاً يمكنك القيام به مع أصدقائك. قم بإيجاد وقت يكون مناسباً لكل فرد في عائلتك.

- Read** and tick (✓) or (X):
- Learn** 1. Starting an exercise routine is easy. (X)
- Practice** 2. Try to do some exercise four to six times a week. (○)

• Help your child listen to the text and read it.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى النص ويقرأه

## نصائح لنظام غذائي صحي **Tips for a healthy diet**

Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food, with lots of vitamins and minerals. We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fat, and fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of water, too, especially on hot days.

تناول الطعام المناسب هام جدًا لصحتنا. نحن بحاجة إلى قائمة بمجموعة من أنواع مختلفة من الطعام تحتوي على الكثير من الفيتامينات والمعادن. لا ينبغي أن نتناول الكثير من السكر أو الدهون كما أن الفاكهة والخضراوات هي خيارات صحية. أنه من المهم شرب الكثير من الماء أيضًا خاصة في الأيام الحارة.

**Read**  
and choose  
the correct  
answer

**Learn** 1. We shouldn't ..... too much sugar.

a. walk      b. think      c. eat      d. find

**Practice** 2. We drink lots of water on ..... days.

a. cold      b. hot      c. rainy      d. foggy

☆ **Read and complete.** اقرأ وأكمل.

## عادات غير صحية **Unhealthy habits**

computer – watching – video games – snacks

It's fun to play (1) ..... sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy (2) ..... when they are (3) ..... TV or playing on the (4) .....  
Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

إنه من الممتع أن تلعب ألعاب الفيديو بعض الوقت. ولكن من الجيد أن تكون نشيطًا أيضًا. الجلوس ثابت لفترة طويلة ليس جيد لصحتك. في بعض الأحيان يأكل الناس وجبات خفيفة غير صحية بكميات كبيرة عند مشاهدة التلفزيون أو اللعب على جهاز الكمبيوتر. حاول ألا تنمي عادات غير صحية.

### Notes for parents

• Help your child read the text and identify some tips for a healthy diet.

• Help your child read and complete the text using the words in the box

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعرف على بعض النصائح لنظام صحي

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدمًا الكلمات في المربع



## ★ Look, read and learn.

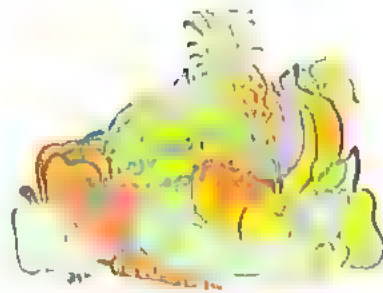
Pop Quiz | تدرّب على ٢٩ من مدّاح المفرد ونصوص الاجتماع

We all need to eat a **good diet**<sup>(1)</sup> to stay healthy. But what is a good diet ?

A good diet **includes**<sup>(2)</sup> lots of fresh food and **plenty**<sup>(3)</sup> of water to drink. Our brain is about 75% water and it needs water to work well.

We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of **fiber**<sup>(4)</sup> and are full of **vitamins**<sup>(5)</sup> and **minerals**<sup>(6)</sup>. We need these for healthy **skin**<sup>(7)</sup>, muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of **protein**<sup>(8)</sup> too, as this helps us grow. Foods with protein include fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts and meat.

We need **fats**<sup>(9)</sup> for a healthy **nervous system**<sup>(10)</sup> and these include nuts, **oily fish**<sup>(11)</sup>, oil and **butter**<sup>(12)</sup>. **Carbohydrates**<sup>(13)</sup> like bread, rice and pasta give us energy. Sugar also gives us **energy**<sup>(14)</sup>, but too much sugar isn't good for us. Sugar is in cakes, cookies, and candy, so try not to have too much of these. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.



### Check Vocabulary

- (1) نظام غذائي جيد
- (2) يشمل
- (3) مقدار وافر
- (4) الألياف
- (5) فيتامينات
- (6) معادن
- (7) جلد / بشرة
- (8) بروتين
- (9) دهون
- (10) جهاز عصبي
- (11) أسماك بها زيوت
- (12) زبدة
- (13) كربوهيدرات
- (14) طاقة

**Learn 1.** What foods are higher in fiber ?  
Fresh fruit and vegetables.

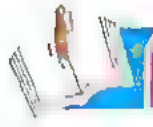
**Practice 2.** Is too much sugar good for us ?

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

• Help your child look, read the text and learn.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ النص ويتعلم.

نحتاج جميعاً إلى تناول نظام غذائي جيد للبقاء بصحة جيدة لكي ما هو النظام الغذائي الجيد ؟ يشمل النظام الغذائي الجيد على الكثير من الأطعمة الطازجة والكثير من الماء للشرب يكون قحياً من حوالي ٧٥٪ من الماء ويحوي الماء ليعمل بشكل جيد يجب أن نأكل لفاتحة الطازجة والخضراوات لأنها تحتوي على الكثير من الألياف وهنئة بالفيتامينات و المعادن نحن بحاجة إليها لصحة البشرة والعظام والأسنان نحن أن نأكل الكثير من البروتين أيضاً، لأن هذا يساعدنا على النمو. يشمل الأطعمة التي تحتوي على البروتين مثل الأسماك والحب والبقول والفول والمكسرات واللحوم نحن بحاجة إلى ادهون من أجل جهاز عصبي صحي. وهذا يشمل المكسرات والأسماك الزيتية والزيت والدهن. نحتاج الكربوهيدرات مثل الخبز والأرز والمعكرونة والخلاصة. نحتاج السكر أيضاً للطاقة. لكن الإفراط في تناول السكر ليس مفيداً لما السكر موجود في الكيك والمكسرات والحلوى. لذا حاول ألا نأكلها. اتبع نظاماً غذائياً جيداً يحتوي على الكثير من الأطعمة الطازجة المختلفة، وسنكون بصحة جيدة.



## Writing skill

### 1 How to choose a title for a text

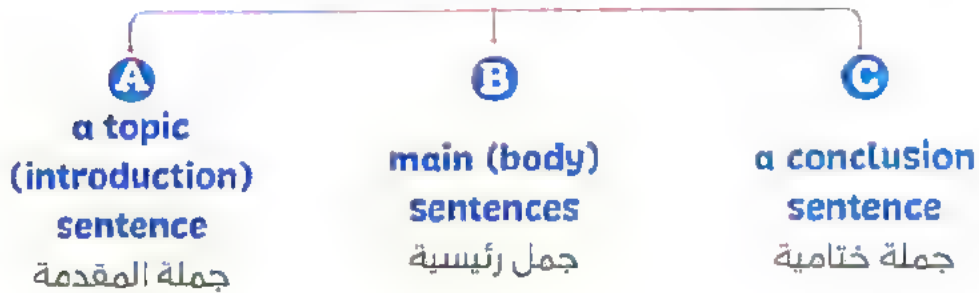
كيفية اختيار عنوانا للنص ما

- A. You need to summarize what it is about in a quick and clear way.  
فأنت تحتاج إلى تلخيص ما يدور حول النص بطريقة سريعة وواضحة
- B. You don't need any extra or unimportant information.  
أنت لا تحتاج إلى أي معلومات إضافية أو غير هامة.
- C. It's good if you can make the title funny or interesting, too.  
من الجيد أن تستطيع جعل العنوان مضحكاً أو ممتعاً أيضاً.

### 2 How to write a paragraph

كيفية كتابة فقرة إنشائية

A paragraph contains :



- ★ A paragraph is made up of several sentences (3-8 sentences).  
الفقرة تتكون من العديد من الجمل (من ثلاث لثمانى جمل).
- ★ The introduction sentence introduces the topic.  
جملة المقدمة تطرح الموضوع.
- ★ The main sentences are in the middle of the paragraph. They give more information.  
جمل الموضوع تكون فى منتصف الفقرة ونعصى معلومات أكثر عن الموضوع.
- ★ The conclusion sentence is last. It finishes the paragraph.  
جملة الختام تكون فى النهاية وتنتهى الفقرة.

#### Notes for parents

1. Help your child know how to choose a title for a text.
2. Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.

• ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يختار عنوانا للنص ما  
• ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيفية كتابته فقرة إنشائية

# General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## 1 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1. It's fun to play ..... games.
2. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for our .....
3. Try not to develop unhealthy .....
4. People eat unhealthy ..... when they are watching TV.

## 2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. the – camp – long – summer – How – is ?  
.....
2. hard – Starting – an exercise – is – routine.  
.....

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق.

vitamins - diet - water - eat

Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food with lots of (1) ..... and minerals. We shouldn't (2) ..... too much sugar or fat. Fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of (3) ....., too, specially on hot days.

1. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences

2. Ask your child to read, order and write the sentence correctly

3. Ask your child to read, and complete the text with words from the box.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويرتب ويكتب الجملة بشكل صحيح

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمات من الصندوق

- 4 Read the following text, and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي، وأجب عن الأسئلة.

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits. It's important to drink lots of water, especially on hot days.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You ..... sit still for a long time.  
a. should      b. shouldn't      c. would      d. have
- Try not to develop ..... habits.  
a. funny      b. healthy      c. unhealthy      d. good

### B. Answer the following questions .

3. What should you do on hot days ?

4. Is it good to be active ?

- 5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (50) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المرشدة المعطاة.

### How to be healthy

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

#### Guiding words :

- the right food
- be active
- fruit and vegetables
- snacks
- much water



### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.
- Ask your child to write a paragraph of (50) words using the guiding words.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويحب عن الأسئلة

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من (50) كلمة باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة



# Test your skills

## Unit 1



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

### My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning :  
اقرأ واكتب المعنى:

- A. stomach  
muscles  
combination  
cerebellum  
disabilities

- B. الجهاز الهضمي  
مالح  
غرفة الجلوس  
الذئابة الأولمبية  
حاسة البصر

### My Language

2 Circle the correct form of the verb in brackets.

ضع دائرة حول الصيغة الصحيحة للفعل بين الأقواس.

1. She (be - is) hungry.
2. We (play - plays) tennis after school.
3. I (has - have) one brother.
4. He (doesn't - don't) live in Egypt.

### My Reading

3 Read and put (✓) or (X).

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X).

1. We breathe in air through our heart. ( )
2. The Paralympic Games is an international competition. ( )
3. We use left hemisphere for math and science. ( )

### My Writing

4 Read and tick (✓) for the suitable title then write it.

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) للعنوان المناسب ثم اكتبه.

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

- ☐ Paralympic athletes  
☐ The brain  
☐ Different senses  
☐ Body parts

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.



# Review on unit 1



digestive system



respiratory system



bones



muscles



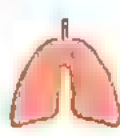
skeleton



heart



nose



lungs



stomach



## Present Simple Tense

<b>Affirmative</b>	- I / You / We / They <b>work</b> - He / She / It <b>works</b>
<b>Negative</b>	- I/You/We/They <b>don't work</b> - He/She/It <b>doesn't work</b>
<b>Interrogative</b>	- Do I/you/we/they <b>work</b> ? - Does he/she/it <b>work</b> ?
<b>Short answers</b>	- Yes, I/you/we/they <b>do</b> . - No, I/you/we/they <b>don't</b> . - Yes, he/she/it <b>does</b> . - No, he/she/it <b>doesn't</b> .

## Our senses



sight



taste



smell



touch



hearing

## Writing tips!

1. When you choose a title for a text, you need to summarize what it is about in a quick and clear way.
2. You don't need any extra or unimportant information.
3. It's a good idea if you can make it funny or interesting, too.

## Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 1



## 1. Reading & writing skills

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Digestive system	Digestive system	We use our digestive system to digest what we eat and drink.
	swallow	We chew and swallow food.
	stomach - liquid	In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients.
	bodies - energy	Our bodies need nutrients and energy.
Respiratory system	Respiratory system	We use our respiratory system when we breathe.
	nose	We breathe in air through our nose.
	lungs - oxygen	In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood.
	heart - blood	Our heart pumps blood around our body.
Skeleton	skeleton - bones	Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body.
	organs - protect	Bones make us strong and protect our organs.
	muscles	Muscles are attached to our bones. They lift and turn bones to make us move.
Our senses	understand	Our senses help us understand the world around us.
	smell	We smell with our nose.
	eyes - ears	We use our eyes to see. We use our ears to hear.
	tongue - skin	We taste with our tongue. We touch with our skin.
Our brain	control	Our brain controls how we move and what we remember and the choices we make.
	three main areas	The three main areas of the brain are the cerebrum, the cerebellum and the brain stem.
	cerebrum	The cerebrum controls our senses, thoughts, how we speak, and our memories.
	cerebellum	The cerebellum controls movement and balance.
	stem	The brain stem joins the two parts of the brain.
	two halves	There are two halves, or hemispheres.
	left hemisphere	The left hemisphere is important for math, science, and solving problems.
	right hemisphere	We use the right hemisphere in creative activities.
A healthy diet	right food	Eating the right food is very important for our health.
	sugar - fat	We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fat.
	fruit - vegetables	Fruit and vegetables are healthy choices.
	water	It's important to drink lots of water.

## 2. How to make a sentence:

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة.

1. I - practice - to - want - football.
2. good - is - It - be - to - active.

الجملة الخبرية

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

1. to - try - Don't - develop - habits - unhealthy.
2. exercise - every - Do - day.

الجملة الأمرية

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال ب (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. can - What - see - you ?
2. do - like - What - you - do - to ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال ب (هل .. ؟)

1. to - Is - passed - oxygen - the - blood ?
2. you - Do - like - vegetables ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1			passed	
2				



### 3. Writing skill

١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متنوعة بنموذج

#### What can I do ?

##### Our senses

- We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us.

##### Number

- We have five senses.

##### Uses

- We use our eyes to see.
- We use our ears to hear.
- We smell with our nose.
- We taste with our tongue.
- We can feel with our skin.

##### When

- Our senses are working all the time.

##### Function

- Our senses take in a lot of information.

##### Opinion

- Our senses are very important.

#### Read and learn. افرا وتعلم.

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We have five senses. We use our eyes to see. We use our ears to hear. We smell with our nose. We taste with our tongue. We can feel with our skin. Our senses are working all the time. Our senses take in a lot of information. Our senses are very important.

٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1

## Digestive system

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink.<sup>(1)</sup> We put food in our mouth.<sup>(2)</sup> We chew and swallow food.<sup>(3)</sup> We chew food with our teeth.<sup>(4)</sup> Then, it goes to our stomach.<sup>(5)</sup> In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

2

## Braille code

People who are blind or cannot see well can learn to read Braille.<sup>(6)</sup> It has different combinations of dots.<sup>(8)</sup> They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or a word.<sup>(9)</sup> People feel the dots with their fingers.<sup>(10)</sup> So, they are using the dots to find out what they mean.<sup>(11)</sup> Braille was invented by Louis Braille.<sup>(12)</sup>

3

## The Paralympic Games

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities.<sup>(13)</sup> It takes place every four years.<sup>(14)</sup> It is held in a different country each time.<sup>(15)</sup> Paraspots is an important area in sports.<sup>(16)</sup> Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.<sup>(17)</sup> Being a Paralympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work.<sup>(18)</sup>

4

## A healthy diet

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy.<sup>(19)</sup> A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink.<sup>(20)</sup> About 75% of our brain is made up of water and it needs water to work well.<sup>(21)</sup> We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals.<sup>(22)</sup> We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones, and teeth.<sup>(23)</sup> We should eat plenty of protein, too, as this helps us grow.<sup>(24)</sup>

# Test 1 on Unit 1

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

## A. Listening

- **1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**  
استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Bones \_\_\_\_\_ our organs.  
a. destroy      b. protect      c. provide      d. change
- Our \_\_\_\_\_ is made up of all the bones.  
a. stomach      b. lungs      c. skeleton      d. heart
- \_\_\_\_\_ are attached to our bones.  
a. Teeth      b. Muscles      c. Eyes      d. Lips
- Muscles \_\_\_\_\_ and turn our bones to make us move.  
a. lift      b. change      c. make      d. pump

- **2 Listen and complete.** استمع وأكمل.

- We need fats for a healthy \_\_\_\_\_ system.
- Carbohydrates like bread give us \_\_\_\_\_.
- Eat a good \_\_\_\_\_ with fresh food, and you will be healthy.
- Sugar isn't \_\_\_\_\_ for us.

## B. Reading

- **3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.**  
اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة من الكلمات في المربع.

system – digestive – lesson – respiratory

**Sama :** Good morning, Hana. How are you ?

**Hana :** Good morning, Sama. I'm fine, thanks.

**Sama :** It's our first school day in grade four.

**Hana :** Yes, I read the first English (1) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Sama :** What is it about ?

**Hana :** It's about our digestive (2) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Sama :** What does that system do ?

**Hana :** We use our (3) \_\_\_\_\_ system when we eat and drink.

1 Ask your child to listen and choose the correct answer.

2 Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.

3 Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة

• اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل

• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

- **4** Read the text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner who takes part in 100-metre, 200-metre and 400-metre races. He joined the national team in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won many medals, including gold in the World Championship in New Zealand.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- Mostafa has taken part in lots of . . . . . competitions.  
a. government    b. international    c. national    d. local
- Mostafa won a gold medal in the World . . . . . in New Zealand.  
a. Championship    b. Cup    c. Jumping    d. Medal

**B. Answer the following questions :**

- Who is Mostafa ?  
.....
- Which races did he take part in ?  
.....

• **5** **The reader**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

- Zeinab was bored.
- Grandpa wanted to be a vet.

<b>T</b>	<b>F</b>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- Some . . . . . make tables and chairs from wood.  
a. farmers    b. mechanics    c. artisans    d. teachers
- Grandpa was one of the . . . . . makers.  
a. button    b. train    c. chair    d. tent

**Notes for parents**

- Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions
- Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويحجب عن الأسئلة  
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويحجب عن الأسئلة طبقاً لأحداث القصة.



### C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. إختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

1. My teacher always \_\_\_\_\_ us interesting projects to do.  
a. giving      b. give      c. gave      d. gives
2. \_\_\_\_\_ that robot have many uses ?  
a. Do      b. Is      c. Does      d. Are
3. Tom usually \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early on weekends.  
a. goes      b. go      c. going      d. is going
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ watching films on TV.  
a. like      b. am liking      c. likes      d. is liking

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. do – What – we – to – have – protect – organs – our – to do ?
2. Arabic – Youssef – English – and – speaks.

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements. أكتب نص من (50) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة.

#### The Paralympic Games

مسابقات عنه في نهائيه الكتاب

#### Guiding words :

- international competition
- athletes
- disabilities
- Olympics
- Paraspports
- take part in



6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يحدد الإجابة الصحيحة

7. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يترتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

8. Ask your child to write a paragraph of (50) words using the given guiding words

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إثنائية مكونة من حوالي (50) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية

# Test 2 on Unit 1

Collected From Governorates Exams

اختبار مجمع من  
مختلف المحافظات

بموضوع  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## A. Listening

- **1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- When we eat and \_\_\_\_\_, we use our digestive system.  
a. drink                      b. breathe                      c. move                      d. listen
- A special liquid \_\_\_\_\_ the food into energy.  
a. does                      b. works                      c. goes                      d. changes
- We use \_\_\_\_\_ system when we breathe.  
a. digestive                      b. muscular                      c. nervous                      d. respiratory
- The food goes to the \_\_\_\_\_ after we swallow it.  
a. mouth                      b. stomach                      c. lung                      d. brain

(Beheira - Edku 2022 / Minia - Maghagha 2022,

- **2** Listen and complete.

- People who have difficulty hearing can \_\_\_\_\_ sign language.
- Sign language is a/an \_\_\_\_\_ language.
- There are different \_\_\_\_\_ of sign language.
- Some people who cannot see or hear, have different ways to \_\_\_\_\_.

(New Valley - Kharga 2022 / Giza - Bulaq El Dakrur 2022)

## B. Reading

- **3** Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

breathe - stomach - liquid - digestive

**Hana** : Sama, do you know that we have digestive system ?

**Sama** : Yes, I know. But what does that system do ?

**Hana** : We use our (1) \_\_\_\_\_ system when we eat and drink.

**Sama** : Where does food go after we swallow it ?

**Hana** : It goes to our (2) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Sama** : What changes the food into energy and nutrients ?

**Hana** : A special (3) \_\_\_\_\_ changes the food into energy and nutrients.

**Sama** : Great !

(Alexandria - Abu Qeer 2022 / Cairo - El-Shorouk 2022)

### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to listen and choose the correct answer.
- Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
- Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة

• اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل

• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بكلمات من المربع

• **4** Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Yesterday, I watched a program on the TV. It was about how to keep our bodies healthy. Water is very important to our bodies. We should drink plenty of water every day. Exercise keeps you fit and healthy. Eat fresh fruit and vegetables that have a lot of fiber and vitamins. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. Don't eat too many sweets. It's unhealthy. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The main idea of the text is about .....
  - a. how to keep our bodies healthy
  - b. how to keep our environment clean
  - c. unhealthy food
  - d. exercise
2. We can get vitamins from .....
  - a. sweets
  - b. water
  - c. vegetables
  - d. salt

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. Is too much sugar good for us ?
4. Why do we need vitamins ?

(Suez - North Suez 2022 / Gharbia - Zifta 2022)

• **5** **The reader**

**A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Zeinab was happy on the second week of holiday.
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her grandparents.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

(Qalyubia - Tikh 2022 / Menofia - Quesna 2022)

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Zeinab's grandpa was one of the .....
  - a. engineers
  - b. tent makers
  - c. doctors
  - d. writers
2. Grandpa can't ..... because his eyes aren't very good.
  - a. draw
  - b. paint
  - c. drive
  - d. sew

(Beheira - Hosh Issa 2022 / Giza - Omrania 2022)

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.

5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة  
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقاً لأحداث القصة

### C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Omar and Adam play football on Sundays.  
a. didn't      b. doesn't      c. hasn't      d. don't

(Assuit - Abnub 2022)

2. John ..... 10 years old.

a. am      b. is      c. do      d. are

(Minia - Matai 2022)

3. .... you go to school on Fridays ?

a. Does      b. Have      c. Do      d. Did

(Qena - Al-Mahdi 2022)

4. He ..... two brothers and a sister.

a. have      b. has      c. does      d. do

(Cairo - Al-Sagheer 2022)

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. plays - on - She - volleyball - Mondays.

(Giza - El-Dokki 2022)

2. heart - blood - pump - Does - our - the ?

(South Sinai - El-Dokki 2022)

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Respiratory system

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding questions :

1. What system do we use when we breathe ?
2. What does our heart do ?
3. What do our lungs do ?



Armani 2022 / Damietta - Farah

### Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

7. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يترتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

8. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding questions

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (50) كلمة مستخدماً الأسئلة الإرشادية



## Plants and animals

نباتات وحيوانات



• دراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.  
• التقييمات التلخيصية من الدراسة التفاعلية

• استخدام كارت المعاصر للقراءة والكتابة.  
• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة  
• دراسة المعاصر للمهارات

الوحدة  
الثانية

## Aims of Unit Two :

In this unit I will .....

- understand the classification of animals. - افهم تصنيف الحيوانات
- learn about the importance of size in the animal world. - اعلم من أهمية الحجم في عالم الحيوان
- form comparative and superlative adjectives, and adverbs - اكون صيغة صفات المقارنة وصيغة التفضيل والمفعول

## الاهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية :

في هذه الوحدة سوف.....

- read about invertebrates. - اقرأ عن اللافقاريات
- use contrasting ideas - استخدم افكار متناقضة
- make a habitat report - اقوم بعمل تقرير عن النيمات

# Lesson

## 1

### الحيوانات والنباتات



#### Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وكرر.

#### كلمات حيوانية

vertebrates	الحيوانات	reptiles	الزواحف
mammals	الثدييات	amphibians	البرمائيات
backbone	عمود فقري	cold-blooded	زواحف الدم البارد
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	scales	سندباد - جرادش
seeds	بذور	gills	الأسماك
bat	خفاش	fins	زعانف
beak	منقار	moist	رطب

#### كلمات نباتية

hair	شعر	turtles	سلحفاة
fur	فراء	smooth	ناعم
land	الأرض - اليابسة	wetlands	أراضي رطبة
whales	حيتان	feathers	ريش
seal	فقمة / سبع البحر	saltwater	ماء مالح
ostrich	نعامة	wings	أجنحة
toad	ضفدع الطين (علجوم)	nuts	مكسرات / سوداني
rivers	أنهار	freshwater	ماء عذب
humans	البشر	habitat	موطن - بيئة
shapes	أشكال	except	ما عدا

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويكررها

Do you know ?!

A species of animal is a group of animals that are the same or very similar. There are millions of species of animals on Earth - and scientists discover new ones every year!

الحيوان أو النوع هو مجموعة من الحيوانات التي تكون متشابهة تماماً أو متشابهة جداً. هناك ملايين من فصائل الحيوانات على الأرض والعلماء يكتشفون فصائل جديدة كل عام.

### Regular

#### Present

survive ينجو - يبقى حيًا  
move يتحرك  
discover يكتشف  
breathe يتنفس

#### Past

survived  
moved  
discovered  
breathed

### Irregular

#### Present

feed يطعم  
lay يبيض  
spend يقضي  
give birth تلد

#### Past

fed  
laid  
spent  
gave birth

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have hair/fur on their bodies

لديهم شعر / فراء على أجسامهم

animals with a backbone

حيوانات لديها عمود فقري

give birth to

تلد (تضع مولود)

keep warm

يبقى دافئ

in addition

بالإضافة إلى

made of

مصنوع من

such as

مثل

take in oxygen through their skin

تمتص / تستنشق الأكسجين عبر جلدها

feed their babies with milk

ترضع صغارها اللبن

come onto land

تصعد على اليابسة

use fins to move

تستخدم الزعانف لتتحرك

lay eggs

تضع البيض

live on land

يعيش على الأرض



### Pop Quiz on

#### Look and write the words.

1.



2.



3.



4.



• Ask your child to look and write the words under each picture

اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر ويكتب الكلمات أسفل كل صورة

## How many types of animals lay eggs ?

كم عدد أنواع الحيوانات التي تضع البيض ؟

### Vocabulary

Vertebrates<sup>(1)</sup> are animals with a backbone<sup>(2)</sup>.  
There are five different types of vertebrates.

#### 1. Mammals

Mammals<sup>(3)</sup> have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded<sup>(4)</sup>.  
They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth<sup>(5)</sup> to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.



#### 2. Reptiles

Reptiles<sup>(6)</sup> are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs, except snakes who don't have any. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales<sup>(7)</sup>. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.



#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) فقاريات
- (2) عمود فقري
- (3) ثدييات
- (4) دوات دم حار
- (5) تلد
- (6) زواحف
- (7) قشور - حراشف

**Read**  
and tick (✓)  
or (x):

- Learn** 1. Mammals are cold-blooded.  
**Practice** 2. Reptiles have scales.



#### Notes for parents

- Help your child to listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

هنا الحيوانات التي لها عمود فقري. هناك خمسة أنواع مختلفة من الفقاريات:  
1. الثدييات: لها شعر أو فراء على أجسامها. وهم من دوات الدم الحار ويرضع الثدييات صغارها اللبن. ومعظمهم تلد أطفالاً. جميع الثدييات ليس لها زواحف. ومعظم الثدييات تعيش على اليابسة، ولكن بعضها يعيش في البحر مثل الحيتان والعقود (عجل البحر). الخفافيش هي الثدييات الوحيدة التي يمكنها الطيران.  
2. الأسماك: من دوات الدم البارد. هذا يعني أن عليهم قضاء بعض الوقت في الشمس للحفاظ على دفئهم. معظم الأسماك لها أربعة أرجل ماعداً سمكاً. ليس لديهم أرجل. بعض الأسماك ليس لها شعر أو فراء. لديهم قشور. بالإضافة إلى أن كل الأسماك تضع البيض. أغلب الأسماك تعيش على اليابسة. بعض الأسماك يمكن أن تعيش في الأنهار.  
3. البرمائيات: مثل السمكة البهائية. ولكنهم يرحلون إلى اليابسة ليضعوا البيض.



### 3. Amphibians

Amphibians<sup>(8)</sup> can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive<sup>(9)</sup>. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water. They have smooth skin, not scales. They can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs.

#### Check Vocabulary

برمائيات (3)

يبقى على قيد الحياة (9)

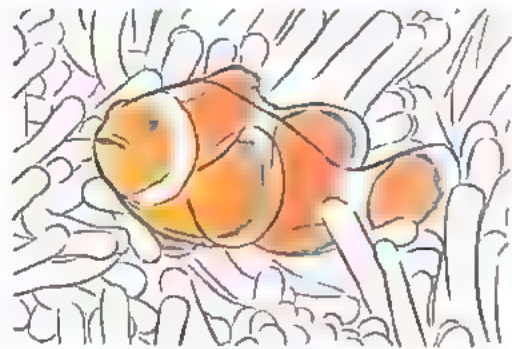
يتنفس (10)

تضع البيض (11)



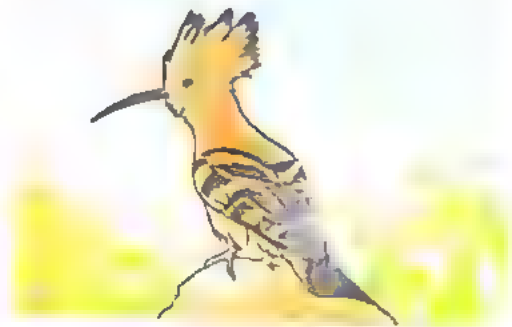
### 4. Fish

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe<sup>(10)</sup> air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.



### 5. Birds

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs<sup>(11)</sup> which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.



★ Read and identify.

• Mammals • ➡



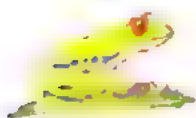
- have hair and fur.
- are warm-blooded.
- feed their babies with milk.
- don't lay eggs.
- most live on land.
- some live in the sea.

• Reptiles • ➡



- are cold-blooded.
- have 4 legs except (snakes).
- have scales.
- don't have hair or fur.
- lay eggs.
- live on land or in rivers or the sea.

• Amphibians • ➡



- are cold-blooded.
- lay eggs.
- have smooth skin.
- don't have scales.
- take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs.
- live on land and on water.

Notes for parents:

- Help your child read and identify the description of the vertebrates

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويعرف على وصف الفقاريات

## Fish



- live in saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.
- take in oxygen through their gills.
- are cold-blooded.
- use fins to move.
- have scales.
- lay eggs.
- can't breathe air.

## Birds



- are warm-blooded.
- have feathers.
- have wings.
- have beaks.
- lay eggs.
- some eat meat, nuts or seeds.

الأسئلة

للسؤال عن عدد شيء ما : **To ask about number of something.**

كم عدد + اسم جمع ..... ؟ **How many + plural noun ..... ?**

How many types of animals lay eggs ?



There are four.



• Help your child learn about how to ask about number using "How many ..... ?".

• ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يسأل عن العدد مستخدماً "How many ..... ?".

Note : Four types of animals lay eggs : reptiles, amphibians, birds and fish

# Dictation



يُمارس مهارة الكتابة باستخدام كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب.

## Read and spell

## Complete

## Write

vertebrates

ve \_ te \_ \_ ates

mammals

ma \_ \_ als

reptiles

re \_ \_ i \_ es

amphibians

am \_ \_ ibi \_ \_ s

survive

s \_ rv \_ v \_

fins

f \_ n \_

backbone

ba \_ \_ b \_ n \_

humans

hu \_ \_ ns

land

l \_ \_ d

whale

w \_ a \_ e

seal

s \_ \_ l

bat

b \_ t

gills

g \_ l \_ s

scales

s \_ a \_ es

feathers

f \_ at \_ ers

### Notes for parents

- Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words.

'ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، وينهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات



Understand      Apply      Create

- 1 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

animals – vertebrates – types – backbone

Hamza : How are you, Nourhan ?

Nourhan : Fine, and you ?

Hamza : Fine. I learned a lot about our lesson today.

Nourhan : What was it about ?

Hamza : It was about (1) .....

Nourhan : What are vertebrates ?

Hamza : They are animals with a (2) .....

Nourhan : How many (3) ..... are there of vertebrates ?

Hamza : There are five different types.

- 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive. Like reptiles, amphibians are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. Amphibians can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Amphibians are cold-blooded like .....  
a. mammals      b. birds      c. reptiles      d. fish
- Amphibians can take in oxygen through their ..... and lungs.  
a. skin      b. ears      c. eyes      d. tongue

B. Answer the following questions :

- Where can amphibians live ?  
.....
- What do amphibians need to survive ?  
.....

1. Ask your child read and complete the dialogue.  
2. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.

- اطلب من طفلك ان يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة  
- اطلب من طفلك ان يقرأ النص ويحبب عن الأسئلة

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a – animals – are – with – Vertebrates – backbone.
2. hair – have – Mammals – on – bodies – their.

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d.

1. How \_\_\_\_\_ types of animals lay eggs ? – There are four.  
a. often                      b. much                      c. many                      d. tall
2. Amphibians can \_\_\_\_\_ on land and on water.  
a. lives                      b. live                      c. living                      d. lived
3. Birds \_\_\_\_\_ have fur or hair.  
a. aren't                      b. hasn't                      c. doesn't                      d. don't
4. Frogs can take \_\_\_\_\_ oxygen through their skin and their lungs.  
a. up                      b. in                      c. out                      d. of

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Reptiles

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- cold-blooded
- lay eggs
- oxygen
- hair
- frogs and toads
- skin and lungs



Notes for parents

3. Ask your child to read, order the words and write them correctly.

على من طعلك أن يقرأ بعيد ترتيب الكلمات ويكتبهم بشكل صحيح.

4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer

على من طعلك أن يختار لاجبة الصحيحة

5. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding words

على من طعلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (50) كلمة مستخدفا الكلمات الإرشادية



## Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### Key Vocabulary

enormous	ضخم	Earth	كوكب الأرض
tiny	ضئيل قليل الحجم	natural world	الطبيعة
blue whale	الحوت الأزرق	African elephant	الفيل الأفريقي

### Extra Vocabulary

whale shark	سمكة قرش الحوت	quiet	هادئ
ostrich	نعامة	Madagascar	دولة مدغشقر
leopard	فهد	frog	ضفدع
scientist	عالم	Papua New Guinea	مديرية بابوا (غينيا الجديدة)
chameleon	حرباء	size	حجم
bee hummingbird	طائر طنان النحل	strong	قوي
Cuba	دولة كوبا	Asian elephant	الفيل الآسيوي
discover	يكتشف	sloth	حيوان الكسلان
rainforests	غابات استوائية	howler monkey	العرد العاوي
cheetah	الفهد الصياد	narwhal	حرس البحر - كركدن البحر - الحوت ذو الناب
anaconda	ثعبان الأناكوندا		

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

• It can be up to 30 meters long. قد يصل طوله إلى ٣٠ متر	• at about 12 meters long بطول حوالي ١٢ متر
• at just 30 mm long بطول ٣٠ ملم فقط	• extremely strong قوي للغاية
• on Earth على الأرض	• the same size نفس الحجم
	• in fact في الحقيقة / الواقع

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Ants are small, but they are extremely strong! For their size, they are much stronger than humans.

البعمل صغير الحجم، لكنه قوي للغاية! بالنسبة لحجمها، فهي أقوى بكثير من البشر



## Pop Quiz On Vocabulary

### • Look and write the words.

1.



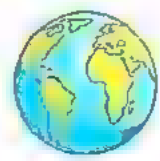
2.



3.



4.



### ★ Listen, read and identify. استمع، اقرأ وتعرف. Pop Quiz

### Where does the biggest animal in the world live ?

أين يعيش أكبر حيوان في العالم ؟

#### Big and small

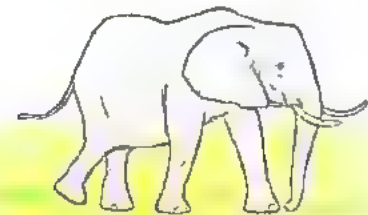
Check Vocabulary

In the natural world, there are some enormous<sup>(1)</sup> animals, and some tiny<sup>(2)</sup> ones!

(1) ضخم

(2) ضئيل الحجم

The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.



The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!



**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

**Learn** 1. What is the biggest animal on land ?  
- The African elephant.

**Practice** 2. What is the biggest animal in the world ?

#### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to look and write the words under the pictures.
- Help your child listen, read the text and identify the biggest and the smallest animals in the world

ساعد طفلك أن يظن ويكتب الكلمات أسفل الصور

في الطبيعة يوجد حيوانات ضخمة وأخرى ضئيلة الحجم

أكبر حيوان على اليابسة يكون من الثدييات وهو الفيل الأفريقي - الفيل الأفريقي أكبر من الفيل الآسيوي

أكبر حيوان في البحر هو الحوت الأزرق ويمكن أن يصل طوله إلى 30 مترًا. حقيقة هم أكبر الحيوانات التي عاشت على كوكب الأرض



The whale shark<sup>(3)</sup> is the biggest fish in the world. It's smaller than the blue whale, at about 12 meters long.

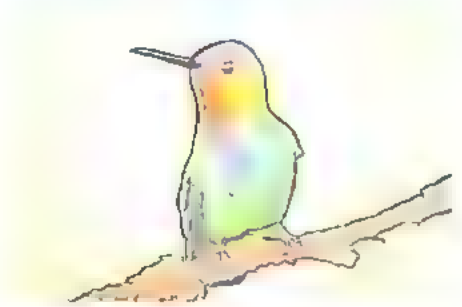
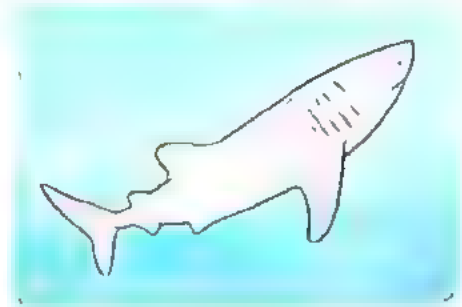
The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird<sup>(4)</sup>, which is about 5.5 centimeters long. It lives in Cuba. The biggest bird is the ostrich<sup>(5)</sup>. It can be 2.5 meters tall! Ostriches are faster than leopards<sup>(6)</sup>, but they can't fly.

In 2012, scientists<sup>(7)</sup> discovered a tiny chameleon<sup>(8)</sup> in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just 30 millimeters long!

But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua New Guinea. It's 7 millimeters long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered.

#### Check Vocabulary

- (3) قرش الحوت
- (4) طائر طنان السحل
- (5) نعامة
- (6) فهد
- (7) علماء
- (8) حرباء



#### Learn 1. Can an ostrich fly ?

- No, it can't.

#### Answer

the following questions :

#### Practice 2. What did scientists discover in 2012 ?

١- سمكة قرش الحوت هو أكبر سمكة في العالم إنها أصغر من الحوت الأزرق حيث يصل طوله حوالي ١٢ مترًا

- إن أصغر طائر هو طنان السحل والذي يبلغ طوله ٥.٥ سم إنه يعيش في دولة كوبا إن أكبر طائر هو للنعامة والتي يصل طولها لـ ٢.٥ مترًا تفوق سرعة النعام بهود لكنها لا تستطيع الطيران

- في عام ٢٠١٢ اكتشف العلماء حرباء ضئيلة الحجم في دولة مدغشقر يعتقد الناس أنها أصغر الراحف في العالم حيث يبلغ طولها ٣ ملليمتر فقط ولكن ذلك هي أكبر من ضفدع في مدينة بانوا بفرنسا الحديثة حيث يبلغ طوله ٧ ملليمتر لذا هو أصغر حيوان فقاري كيشفاه

# 1 Comparative : (شخصين / شيئين)

☆ عند المقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الآخر في نفس الصفة القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد نستخدم :

(short adj. + er) + than

☆ يضاف للصفات القصيرة (er) وبعدها (than):

- old → older

- fast → faster

أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتھية بحرف (ساكن) مسبوق بحرف (متحرك) يضاعف الحرف التّخير ثم تضاف (er):

- big → bigger

- hot → hotter

أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتھية بحرف (-y) تحول حرف (-y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (-er):

- happy → happier

- heavy → heavier

☆ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتھية بحرف (-e) نضيف (-r) فقط للصفة.

- nice → nicer

Ants are stronger than humans.



The horse is bigger than chameleon.



## Notes for parents

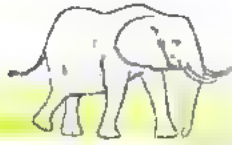
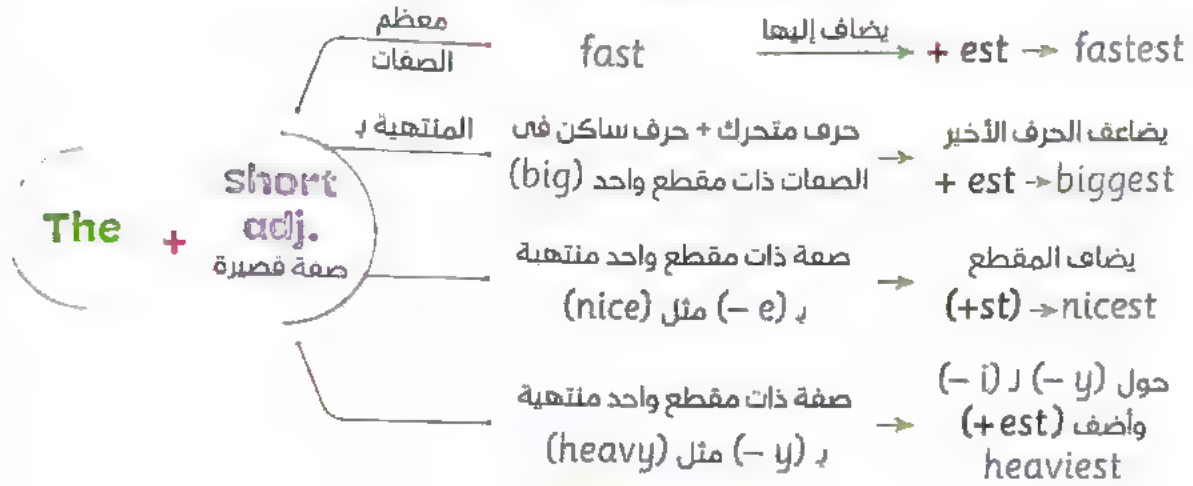
1. Help your child learn how to make comparative short adjectives

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكون صيغة المقارنة للصفات القصيرة

## 2 Superlative صيغة التفضيل (المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة) في صفة

عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (واحد ومجموعة في صفة ذات مقطع واحد) نضع the قبل الصفة ونضيف للصفة (est):

(the + short adj. + est) صفة قصيرة



The African elephant is the **biggest** animal on land.



The **smallest** bird is the bee hummingbird.



The **biggest** bird in the world can't fly.

مكتبة دار المسكن - دار المسكن - دار المسكن

**EL-MONASSER** احرص على اقتنائه

اللغة الإنجليزية

للف الرابع الابتدائي

**Connect Plus**

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

2. Help your child identify how to make a sentence using comparative adjectives.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف على كيفية تكوين جملة باستخدام صفات المقارنة



## Pop Quiz on Language

- Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
1. The ..... vertebrate is a frog in Papua New Guinea.  
a. smaller      b. small      c. smallest      d. smaller than
  2. The blue whale is ..... than the whale shark.  
a. big      b. biggest      c. bigger      d. the biggest
  3. Ahmed is taller ..... Ali.  
a. than      b. then      c. as      d. the
  4. Ants are small, but they are .....  
a. strongest      b. strong      c. as strong      d. stronger
  5. Who is ..... person in your family ?  
a. the tallest      b. taller      c. tallest      d. taller than
  6. December is ..... than June.  
a. colder      b. coldest      c. the coldest      d. cold
  7. She bought ..... cake in the bakery.  
a. big as      b. biggest      c. bigger      d. the biggest
  8. He is ..... of four children.  
a. the oldest      b. older      c. old      d. oldest
  9. The red bag is the ..... one in the box.  
a. heavy      b. heavier      c. heaviest      d. heavier than
  10. The plane goes ..... the train.  
a. fastest      b. faster than      c. fast      d. the fastest
  11. He is ..... boy in our class.  
a. thinnest      b. thinner      c. the thinnest      d. thin as
  12. Ayman is ..... cleverest student.  
a. than      b. the      c. then      d. there
  13. The black car is ..... than the blue car.  
a. cheaper      b. cheap      c. cheapest      d. cheap as
  14. Snakes are ..... the turtles.  
a. longest      b. longer      c. the longest      d. longer than

### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

اطلب من طفلك بقرا وبختار الإجابة الصحيحة



- Understand • Apply • Create

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c , or d.

- ..... discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar.  
a. Doctors      b. Engineers      c. Scientists      d. Vets
- People think that chameleon is the ..... reptile in the world.  
a. tallest      b. biggest      c. smallest      d. highest
- ..... is 30 millimeters long.  
a. Snake      b. Chameleon      c. Lion      d. Elephant
- Chameleon is bigger than a ..... in Guinea.  
a. bird      b. cat      c. snail      d. frog

### 2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- fish – The whale shark – is – biggest – the.

.....

- an – fly – Can – ostrich ?

.....

### 3 Choose the correct answers from a , b, c or d.

- Ants are stronger ..... humans.  
a. than      b. then      c. that      d. there
- The African elephant is ..... than the Asian elephant.  
a. biggest      b. big      c. bigger      d. the biggest
- The blue whale is the ..... animal in the world.  
a. biggest      b. bigger      c. big      d. small
- Cars are ..... than bikes.  
a. fastest      b. fast      c. faster      d. as fast

- 1 Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.      - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
- 2 Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly      - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يربط الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة
- 3 Ask your child to choose the correct word.      - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

- 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

In the natural world, there are some enormous animals, and some tiny ones! The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
  - blue whale
  - African elephant
  - Earth
  - world
- The blue whale lives in the .....
  - forest
  - street
  - sea
  - ocean

B. Answer the following questions :

- What is the biggest animal on land ?
- What does the text talk about ?

- 5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Animals in the world : مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding questions :

- What is the biggest animal on land ?
- What are the biggest animals have ever lived on Earth ?
- What is the biggest fish ?
- What is the biggest bird ?



#### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ثم يجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة

- Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding questions.

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (50) كلمة مستخدماً الأسئلة الإرشادية



## Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

## Key vocabulary

invertebrates	اللافقاريات	snail	حيوان الغوقع
protection	حماية - وقاية	squid	الحبار
crab	الكابوريا (سلطعون البحر)	jellyfish	فنديل البحر
octopus	الأخطبوط	dragonfly	حشرة البعسوب
arachnid	فصيلة العناكب	grasshopper	حسنة / الحراد

## Key vocabulary

project	مشروع	insects	حشرات
internet	شبكة الانترنت	amazing	رائع
shell	قوقعة	spiders	عناكب
research	بحث	sea star	بحمة البحر
giant	ضخم	Atlas moth	حشرة عثة الأطلس
clue	مفتاح الحل	mystery	لعز - عموض

## مراجعة المفردات

## تصريف الأفعال

## Regular

## Present

look	ينظر
laugh	يضحك
move	يحرك / يتحرك
finish	ينهى / ينتهى
protect	يحمى

## Past

looked
laughed
moved
finished
protected

## Irregular

## Present

write	يكتب
say	يقول
choose	يختار
find out	يكتشف
fly	يطير
hide	يختبئ - يختفى

## Past

wrote
said
chose
found out
flew
hid

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them
- Invertebrates are living things with no backbone

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم  
اللافقاريات كائنات حية ليس لديها عمود فقري في أجسامها

## Important expressions and prepositions

## تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- |                             |                         |                    |                |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| • write about invertebrates | يكتب عن اللافقاريات     | • have soft bodies | لها أجسام لينة |
| • more than 90%             | أكثر من ٩٠٪             | • move slowly      | يتحرك ببطء     |
| • find out information      | يكتشف / يبحث عن معلومات | • Well done !      | أحسننت !       |
| • Good idea !               | فكرة جيدة !             | • have ..... back  | يستعيد .....   |
| • have a hard shell         | لها قوقعة / قشرة صلبة   | • up to ....       | يصل إلى .....  |

★ **Read and identify.** اقرأ وتعرف. | Pop Quiz: تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

### ماذا يكتشف سامي ؟ What does Sami find out ?

"Dad, I don't know what to write for my project!"

said Sami sadly. "I have to find out about some animals, but I don't know which animals to choose."

"Why don't you write about invertebrates<sup>(1)</sup>?" asked Sami's dad. "More than 90% of all animals are invertebrates."

"Good idea!" said Sami. "Can I look on the internet quickly to find out information, please?"

"Of course," said Dad.

- "Oh wow!" said Sami. "I've found a lot of information! Invertebrates are cold-blooded<sup>(2)</sup>. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for protection<sup>(3)</sup>.

Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid."

- "Do you have enough information for your project?" laughed Dad.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) اللافقاريات  
(2) ذوات الدم البارد  
(3) حماية



### Notes for parents

- Help your child read the text and identify invertebrates

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعرف على اللافقاريات

قوله سامي "بابا، أنا لا أعرف ماذا أكتب لإعداد لمشروع عن اللافقاريات" يجب أن يبحث عن بعض الحيوانات. يمكن أن لا يعرف أي الحيوانات اختار " يسأل والد سامي ماذا لا يكتب عن اللافقاريات أكثر من ٩٠٪ من الحيوانات هي لافقاريات يقول سامي "فكرة جيدة" "هنا يمكن البحث على شبكة الإنترنت بسرعة لإيجاد المعلومات من فصلك ٣ يقول "لرب" بالصيغ" يقول سامي "أوه، وبوا" لقد وجدت الكثير من المعلومات اللافقاريات من ذوات الدم البارد يعيشون على الأرض وفي المياه بعض اللافقاريات مثل كائنات لها قشرة صلبة للحماية (حرون مثل قنديل البحر لديها أجسام لينة بعض اللافقاريات تستطيع السباحة بشكل جيد للغاية مثل الأخطبوط والحيات) يصحك والده "هل لديك معلومات كافية لمشروعك؟"



- "Oh yes!" said Sami. "Wait, I've found more! Some invertebrates, such as snails, have hard shells and move very slowly. Others are faster. Dragonflies can fly very fast. Insects<sup>(4)</sup> are also invertebrates. They have six legs. I think grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump more than a meter!" Did you know the spider is not an insect? It has 8 legs and is called an arachnid. It can move very quickly.
- "Well done!" said Dad. "Have you finished your research? Can I have my cell phone back now, please?"

Check Vocabulary

حشرات (4)

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

**Learn** 1. Are insects vertebrates or invertebrates?

- They are invertebrates.

**Practice** 2. Which invertebrate can fly very fast?



### Pop Quiz on Invertebrates

#### • Read and circle the correct word.

1. A (squid – crab) has a soft body and lives in the sea.
2. A (crab – snail) lives on land and in the sea. It can walk and it has a hard shell.
3. A (grasshopper – bird) is an insect that can jump one meter.
4. A (dog – frog) is an amphibian that lays its eggs in water.
5. A / An (octopus – dolphin) has eight legs. It lives in the sea and it swims fast.
6. A spider isn't an insect; it is an (arachnid – octopus) .
7. A (fish – jellyfish) has a soft body and it lives in the sea. It doesn't have legs or fins or scales.
8. A (snail – tail) has a shell. It doesn't have legs and it moves very slowly.

#### • Ask your child to read and circle the correct word.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة

يقول سامي "أوم نعم! انظر، لقد وجدت المزيد من المعلومات! بعض اللافقاريات مثل القواقع لديها قوقعة صلبة، تنحدر ببطء شديد التحريك أسرع منها. يمكن أن تطير العنكبوت بسرعة كبيرة. الحشرات هي أيضا من اللافقاريات، لديهم ستة أرجل. أعفد حشرة الجراد أكثر حشرة مذهلة. يمكنهم أن يقفروا أكثر من متر! هل عرفت أن العنكبوت ليس حشرة؟ إنه ثمانية أرجل ويسمى حيوان عنكبوتي. يمكنه التحرك سريعا جدا. يقول "أحسنت!" هل انتهيت من البحث؟ هل يمكنني استعادته من فضلك؟

## Adverbs of manner

ظروف الحال (الكيفية)

### Usage الاستخدام

تصف ظروف الحال كيف يحدث شيء ما. To describe how something happens.  
الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده و يتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

**adjective** الصفة

Doctors help sick people.

Rodina is happy.

الصفة تصف الاسم و تأتي قبله أو بعد  
(verb to be)

**adverb** الظرف

Snails move slowly.

الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده.

### Regular المنتظم

Adjective	Adverb
bad سيء	badly بطريقة سيئة
quiet هادئ	quietly بهدوء
loud عالٍ	loudly بصوت عالٍ
quick سريع	quickly بسرعة
slow بطيء	slowly ببطء
happy سعيد	happily بسعادة
sad حزين	sadly بحزن
soft هادئ	softly برفق / بهدوء

### Irregular غير المنتظم

Adjective	Adverb
good جيد	well بشكل جيد
fast سريع	fast بسرعة
hard صعب	hard بصعوبة
right صحيح	right بطريقة صحيحة
wrong خطأ	wrong/wrongly بطريقة خاطئة

### Formation التكوين

★ لتكوين الظرف نضيف (ly) للصفة المنتظمة.

slow → slowly quick → quickly

★ أما الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (y) تستبدل (y) بـ (i) و نضيف (ly).

happy → happily noisy → noisily easy → easily

### Notes for parents

- Help your child to identify how to form adverbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية تكوين الظروف (الحال)

☆ هناك صفات غير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي لا يضاف إليها (-يا-) عند تحويلها إلى ظرف.

good → well

☆ هناك صفات تبقى كما هي عند تحويلها إلى ظرف (حال).

fast → fast    hard → hard    right → right    late → late



POP QUIZ

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Salma walks ..... . She is tired.  
a. slow                      b. slower                      c. slowly                      d. slowest
2. Rokaya is ..... . She has a new dress.  
a. happily                      b. happy                      c. happier                      d. happiest
3. I could hear my neighbors shouting ..... at each other.  
a. angry                      b. angriest                      c. angrily                      d. anger
4. The teacher spoke ..... .  
a. quiet                      b. quietly                      c. quietest                      d. as quiet
5. Dragonflies can fly very ..... .  
a. fast                      b. fastly                      c. fastest                      d. as fast
6. My sister plays the piano ..... .  
a. good                      b. better                      c. well                      d. best
7. He usually cuts my hair ..... .  
a. quick                      b. quickly                      c. quickest                      d. quicker
8. The snail is a ..... animal.  
a. slowly                      b. slower                      c. slow                      d. as slow
9. Some spiders can hide very ..... .  
a. easy                      b. easier                      c. easily                      d. as easy

• Ask your child to choose the correct word

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة

# Dictation



ونقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

## Read and spell

## Complete

## Write

invertebrates

inv \_ \_ tebrates

crabs

cr \_ \_ s

protection

pro \_ \_ ction

jellyfish

je \_ \_ yf \_ \_ h

octopus

o \_ \_ opus

squid

s \_ \_ id

snails

s \_ \_ ils

dragonflies

dra \_ \_ nflies

grasshopper

gr \_ \_ sho \_ \_ er

spider

s \_ i \_ er

shell

she \_ \_

insect

i \_ se \_ t

## Notes for parents

• Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، ينهض، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات



# General Exercises

## on Lesson 3

- Understand • Apply • Create

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Invertebrates are .....-blooded.  
a. cold                      b. warm                      c. tall                      d. high
- Invertebrates live on .....  
a. sun                      b. moon                      c. sky                      d. land
- ..... have a hard shell.  
a. Crabs                      b. Octopuses                      c. Jellyfish                      d. Squids
- Jellyfish have ..... bodies.  
a. well                      b. good                      c. hard                      d. soft

### 2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- hard – have – Crabs – shells – protection - for.  
.....
- fly - can – Dragonflies – fast – very.  
.....

### 3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

invertebrates – cold-blooded – dragonflies – vertebrates

**Mohamed** : Hello, Maged.

**Maged** : Hello, Mohamed.

**Mohamed** : I don't know what to write for my project.

**Maged** : Why don't you write about (1) ..... ?

**Mohamed** : Good idea. Do you have some information about them ?

**Maged** : Yes. Invertebrates are (2) .....  
and they live on land and in water.

**Mohamed** : Can you give me some examples of invertebrates ?

**Maged** : Of course. Snails and (3) .....  
are invertebrates.

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly. اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة
3. Ask your child read and complete the dialogue with the correct words from the box. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Insects live in rainforests because they can find food  
 a. easy                      b. easily                      c. easiest                      d. as easy
- 2. She plays the drums ... ..  
 a. fast                      b. sad                      c. bad                      d. good
- 3. I tried ..... , but I couldn't win the race.  
 a. hard                      b. as hard                      c. hardly                      d. hardest
- 4. I did ..... in the test. I got 20%.  
 a. badly                      b. bad                      c. good                      d. well

- 5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

#### Insects and snails

نكتب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

#### Guiding words :

invertebrates / backbone / grasshopper / arachnid / hard shells

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

#### Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

5. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding words

• من المهم أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

• من المهم أن يكتب نص مكون من (50) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية

# Lesson

## 4

### • • • • •



#### Vocabulary

Listen and repeat.

الاستماع وردد .

#### Key Words

primary colors	ألوان أساسية	secondary colors	ألوان ثانوية
predator	مفترس	prey	فريسة

#### Key Words

type	نوع	interesting	ممتع
bright	لامع - زاهي	coral reef	شعاب مرجانية
pollen	حبوب اللقاح	warning	تحذير
shade	ظل	poisonous	مسموم / سام

#### تصريف الأفعال

##### Regular

###### Present

hunt بصطاد  
mix يخلط - يمزج  
attract يجذب  
reproduce يتكاثر - ينجب  
carry يحمل

###### Past

hunted  
mixed  
attracted  
reproduced  
carried

##### Irregular

###### Present

hide يختبئ  
catch يصطاد  
eat يأكل  
think يفكر  
be يكون

###### Past

hid  
caught  
ate  
thought  
was / were

#### Key Words

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- an underwater scene
- come in many different colors
- all shapes in between
- make green darker
- brightly colored
- hide from
- can be a warning

منظر تحت المياه  
يوجد منها ألوان مختلفة  
كل درجات اللون التي بينهم  
يجعل اللون الأخضر داكن أكثر  
ملونة بألوان زاهية / لامعة  
يختبئ من  
قد يكون تحذيرًا

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها

★ Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف.

### The Primary colors

الألوان الأساسية

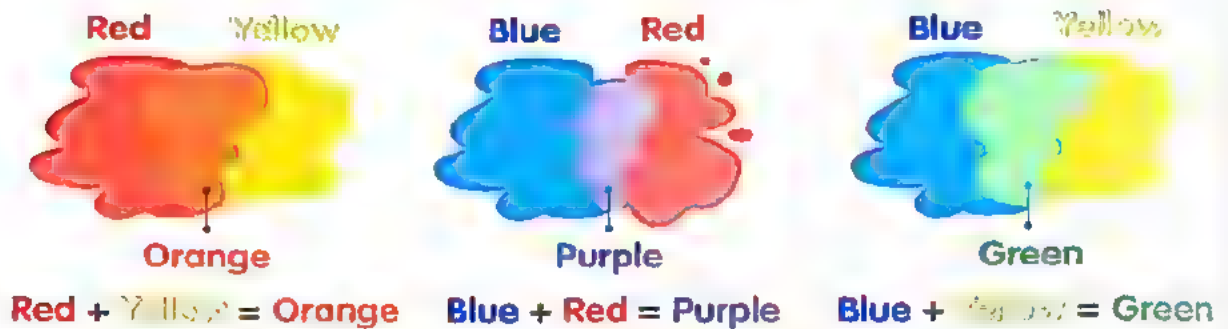


### Secondary colors

ألوان الثانوية



### How to mix colors



### Color Wheel

1. Primary colors
2. Secondary colors



#### Notes for parents

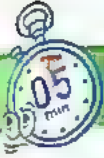
- Help your child read and identify warm and cold colors.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على الألوان الدافئة والباردة



**Warm colors :** الألوان الدافئة are linked to "joy, strength, power, energy and passion"  
الألوان الدافئة مرتبطة بـ "المرح، القوة، الطاقة والحماس"

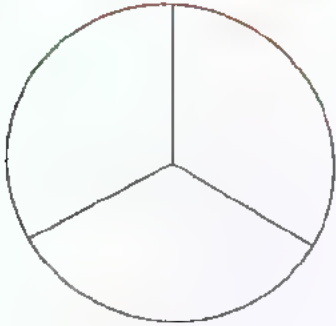
**Cold colors :** الألوان الباردة are linked to "quietness, sweetness, rest and sadness"  
الألوان الباردة : مرتبطة بـ "الهدوء، الجمال، الراحة والحزن"



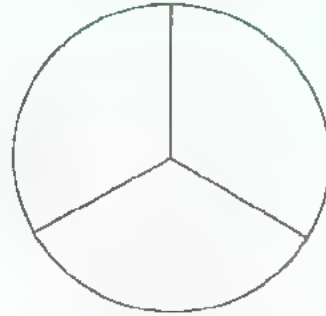
**Pop Out** - **Pop Out**

## 1 Read and Color.

**Primary colors**



**Secondary colors**



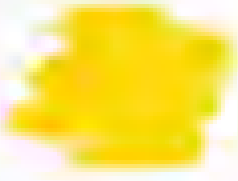
## 2 Look and write the words.

1.



.....

2.



.....

3.



.....

4.



.....

1. Ask your child to read and color.
2. Ask your child to look at the colors and write the words

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويلون.  
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الألوان ويكتب الكلمات

## Why do flowers have bright colors ?

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers<sup>(1)</sup> attract insects<sup>(2)</sup>, which carry pollen<sup>(3)</sup> from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.



### Check Vocabulary

- (1) رهور راهبه اللون
- (2) حشرات
- (3) حبوب اللقاح
- (4) ألوان أولية
- (5) ألوان ثانوية
- (6) ظلال
- (7) اغمق لوناً
- (8) افتح لوناً

Primary colors<sup>(4)</sup> are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make secondary colors<sup>(5)</sup> by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can make green, orange, purple, and all the shades<sup>(6)</sup> in between. For example, we can mix red and yellow to make orange. The secondary colors can be made by mixing primary colors which are nearest to them on the color wheel. Adding black to a color makes it darker<sup>(7)</sup>, and adding white makes it lighter<sup>(8)</sup>.

### Learn 1. How do you make green darker ?

- You add a tiny amount of black, or purple if you don't want to use black.

### Practice 2. What colors do you need to make purple ?

#### Answer

the following questions :

### Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يسمع ويفهم النص

يستخدمون مظهر على ألوان مختلفة. لجذب الأزهار راحة اللون الحشرات التي تقوم بنقل حبوب اللقاح من زهرة إلى زهرة. هذا يساعد الأزهار على التكاثر. الألوان الساطعة تجذب الحشرات. الحشرات تنقل حبوب اللقاح من زهرة إلى زهرة. هذا يساعد الأزهار على التكاثر. الألوان الساطعة تجذب الحشرات. الحشرات تنقل حبوب اللقاح من زهرة إلى زهرة. هذا يساعد الأزهار على التكاثر.

## ★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz  
تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع المفرد وبطون الاستماع

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea !  
Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants.  
In a coral reef<sup>(1)</sup>, having bright colors can help fish to hide<sup>(2)</sup> from predators<sup>(3)</sup>. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish.



### Check Vocabulary

شعاب مرجانية (١)

يختبئ

معتري

فريسة

سام

In addition, many predators don't eat prey<sup>(4)</sup> that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Learn** 1. Where can the fish hide from bigger fish ?

- In a coral reef.

**Practice** 2. Why do fish have bright colors ?

### Answer

the following questions :

## ★ Read and identify these definitions.

### Word

### Definition

predator

معتري

is the animal that hunts and eats other animals.

هو الحيوان الذي يقوم بإصطياد وأكل الحيوانات الأخرى

prey

فريسة

is the animal that is caught and eaten.

هو الحيوان الذي يتم صيده وأكله.

had listen and read the text

to read and identify the definition of each word

كانت تستمع وتقرأ النص  
لتقرأ وتحدد تعريف كل كلمة

# General Exercises

on Lesson 4

نصوص  
للاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## 1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. Scientists think that there are 400,000 different types of .....  
a. plants                      b. animals                      c. jobs                      d. places
2. The bright flowers ..... insects.  
a. repel                      b. attract                      c. warn                      d. describe
3. .... carry pollen from one flower to another flower.  
a. Trees                      b. Colors                      c. Plants                      d. Insects
4. Plants have ....., which come in many different colors.  
a. birds                      b. animals                      c. flowers                      d. trees

## 2 Listen and complete.

1. There are interesting things to see ..... the sea.
2. Bright colors can help fish to hide from .....
3. The coral is very ..... and has different colors.
4. Many predators don't eat ..... that are brightly colored.

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Red – yellow – make – and – orange.  
.....
2. flowers – attract – The – insects – bright.  
.....

### Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences
3. Ask your child order the words and write the sentence correctly.

طلب من طفلك أن يسمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة  
طلب من طفلك أن يسمع ويكمل الجملة  
طلب من طفلك أن يترتب الكلمات ويكتب الجملة بشكل صحيح



- 4 Read and complete the following dialogue from the words in the box.

pollen – attract – repel – reproduce

Rehab : Hi, Doaa. How many types of plants are there ?

Doaa : Hi, Rehab. There are nearly 400,000 different types of plants.

Rehab : Why do flowers have bright colors ?

Doaa : Because bright colors (1) ..... insects.

Rehab : What do insects carry from one flower to another ?

Doaa : They carry (2) ..... from one flower to another.

Rehab : How does the insect help the flowers ?

Doaa : It helps flowers to (3).....

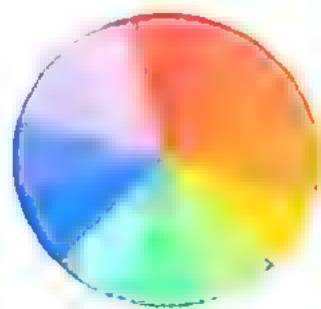
- 5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

The color wheel

مجاوب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- primary colors
- secondary colors
- mix
- lighter



4 Ask your child to read and complete the given dialogue from the words in the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

5 Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding words.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (50) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية



### Key vocabulary

water lily	الزنبق المائي	disadvantages	عيوب
echolocation	تحديد الموقع بالصدى	macro-habitat	بيئة / موطن كبير
advantages	مميزات	micro-habitat	بيئة / موطن صغير

### Extra vocabulary

soil	تربة زراعية	lake	بحيرة
flat leaf	ورقة شجر مسطحة	roots	جذور
surface	سطح	area	مساحة
stem	ساق نبات	bottom	قاع

### تصريف الأفعال

### تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

#### Irregular

##### Present

##### Past

##### Present

##### Past

reach	يصل إلى	reached
cover	يغطي	covered
pollinate	يلقح	pollinated

grow	ينمو	grew
spread	ينتشر	spread
make	يصنع - يجعل	made

### Important expressions and prepositions

### تعابيرات وحروف جر هامة

- on the surface of the water
- reaches down to
- make it difficult for
- look pretty
- the bottom of
- on the top of

- على سطح المياه
- يصل للأسفل إلى
- يجعلها صعبة لـ ...
- يبدو جميلاً
- قاع
- على القمة

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them

ساعد طفلك أن يسمع الى الكلمات ويردد هم



## WRITING SKILL

### ★ Learn and identify.

تعلم وتعرف.

#### How to link ideas in your paragraph

##### ● In addition بالإضافة

★ To add more information to the same idea.

لإضافة معلومات أكثر إلى نفس الفكرة :

**Ex.** Water lily have brightly colored flowers. In addition, their roots spread under water.

#### How to contrast ideas

##### ① However ومع ذلك

★ To show a change in topic. لعرض موضوع مختلف.

**Ex.** Most plants grow in soil. However, some plants grow in water.

##### ② On one hand ... on the other hand من ناحية ... ومن ناحية أخرى

★ To show two different points of view on the same topic. لتوضيح وجهتين نظر مختلفتين في نفس الموضوع.

**Ex.** On one hand, water lily looks pretty, but on the other hand, it can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.

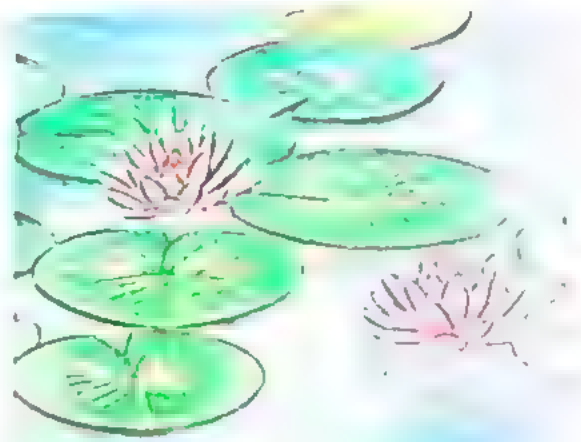
★ Look, read and complete.

طرا، افرا وأكمل.

on the other hand - In addition - However - On one hand

Most plants grow in soil. (1) , some plants grow in water, such as the water lily. They have a large, flat leaf on the surface of the water, and a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. They have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water.

(2) , their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area. (3) , this can look pretty, but (4) , it can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.



★ Read and identify.

فر، ويعرف.

### Water lily plants

#### Advantages

- They have brightly colored flowers.
- They can look pretty.

#### Disadvantages

- They make seeds which float on water.
- Their roots spread under the water and they can cover a very large area of water.
- Their roots can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child look, read and complete the text using the words in the box.

- Help your child read and identify the advantages and disadvantages of the water lily plant.

ساعد طفلك أن يظفر إلى الصورة ويقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع  
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويحدد علي مصيبرات وعيوب نبات ريق الماء  
سموا على النباتات في البرية وعو دلت بعض النباتات تنمو في الماء مثل ريق الماء وهو لديه ورقة شجر عريضة مسطحة على سطح الماء وبناتي طويلة والتي تصل إلى طاع  
لا تحترق هذه النباتات لها زهور ألوانها في هبة وبناتي تنمو في الماء على سطح الماء بناتي تنمو إلى أن الجذور تنزل تحت الماء ويمكنها أن تغطي مساحة كبيرة من الماء  
فمن ناحية إيجابية تنمو جميلة المظهر ولكن من ناحية أخرى إنها يمكن أن تسبب صعوبة للحيوانات الأخرى والنباتات التي تعيش تحت الماء



## ★ Look, listen and read.

- When we study the natural world, we find animals and plants living together in a habitat. Vertebrates, invertebrates and plants all need each other and they work together to survive.

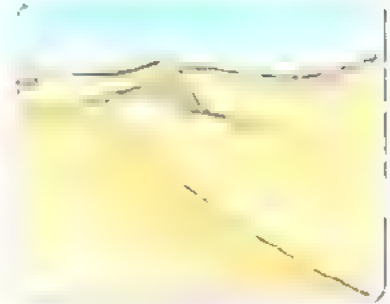
- عندما ندرس العالم الطبيعي، نجد الحيوانات والنباتات تعيش سوياً في الموطن، الفقاريات، اللافقاريات والنباتات جميعهم يحتاجون بعضهم البعض ويعملون سوياً للبقاء على قيد الحياة.

- Large habitats, or macro-habitats, are forests, deserts, and grasslands.

- البيئات الكبيرة هي الغابات، الصحاري، والمناطق الخضراء.

- A micro-habitat is a small area such as a pond or a tree.

- البيئة الصغيرة هي التي تكون على منطقة صغيرة مثل بركة أو شجرة.



## ★ Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.

## Animals and plants that live in the micro-habitats

pond بركة	cave كهف	tree شجرة
dragonfly حشرة البعسوف	bat خفاش	butterfly فراشة
fish سمك	snake ثعبان	monkey فرد
frog صفدع	lizard سحلية	bird طائر
snail حلازون	spider عنكبوت	squirrel سحاب
water lily زنبق الماء		
crab كابوريا		

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the sentences. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ الجمل.
- Help your child to read and learn. - ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم.

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

- 1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. Most mammals live on .  
a. desert                      b. sky                      c. sea                      d. land
2. Dolphins live in the .  
a. sea                      b. desert                      c. land                      d. forest
3. Bats live in trees or .  
a. caves                      b. houses                      c. temples                      d. nests
4. Bats fly very fast .  
a. at midday                      b. at night  
c. in the morning                      d. in the afternoon

- 2 Listen and complete.

1. Zoos are places of ..... research.
2. People can learn about ..... animals in zoos.
3. Animals are kept in the ..... habitats.
4. Animals aren't free to live a natural .....

- 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

flowers – difficult – roots – flat

Water lily grows in water. It has a large, (1) ..... leaf on the surface of the water. It has a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. It has brightly colored (2) ..... . Its (3) ..... spread under the water. They can cover a very long area. This can look pretty.

### Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
3. Ask your child to read and complete the given text from the words in the box.

طلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة  
طلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجملة

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص المعطى من الكلمات في المربع



Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. in – grow – Some – water – plants.
2. bats – are – unusual – Why ?
3. soil – plants – in – Most – grow.



Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Water lily grows in water and has a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. It has brightly colored flowers and it makes seeds which float on water. It has roots that spread under the water, and it can cover a very large area.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The roots of water lily plants ..... under the water.  
a. float      b. play      c. spread      d. swim
2. Water lily has a ..... stem.  
a. big      b. long      c. small      d. hard

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. Where does the stem reach ?
4. Where does the water lily grow ?

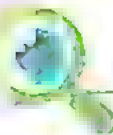
4 Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentence correctly

5 Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يترتب الكلمات ويكتب الجملة بطريقة صحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يعطه ويكتب على الأسئلة

# Test your skills



## Unit 2



If you got ● you need to revise the Unit again on the next page.

إذا حصلت على ● فستحتاج إلى مراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى من الصفحة التالية

### My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.  
اقرأ وأكتب المعنى.

- A. reptiles  
amphibians  
blue whale  
invertebrates  
coral reef

- B. الفقاريات  
الثدييات  
الربيق المائي  
دواب الدم الحار  
قشور

### My Language

2 Choose the correct answer.  
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. She is the (taller - tallest) girl in class.
2. Horses are (faster - fast) than elephants.

### My Reading

3 Read and tick (✓) or (X).  
اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X)

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats: saltwater, freshwater and wetland.

1. Fish take in oxygen through their scales. ( )
2. Fish are warm-blooded. ( )
3. Fish use fins to move. ( )

### My Writing

4 Read and write.  
اقرأ وأكتب.

When - However - On one hand - On the other hand

Bats live in groups in trees or caves. They can fly very fast at night because they can "see" using a special skill called echolocation تحديد الموقع عن طريق الصدى

- (1) ....., bats are helpful to humans and the environment.
- (2) ....., large numbers of bats can be noisy and messy.
- (3) ....., they are helpful to farmers.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.



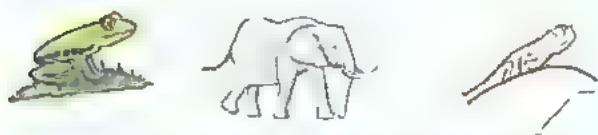
# Review on unit 2



hair fur whale seal



bat scales turtle ostrich



frog African elephant chameleon



coral reef water lily

## Primary Colors

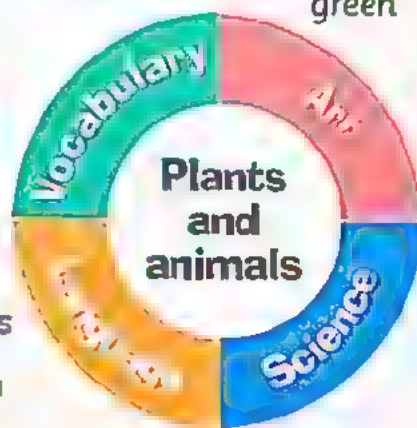


red yellow blue

## Secondary Colors



green orange purple



## Comparative adjectives

short adj. + er + than

- The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.



## Superlative adjectives

the + short adj. + est

- A frog is the smallest vertebrate.



- Vertebrates are animals that have a backbone.

- Humans are mammals.

- Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

# Skills



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بحمل  
لساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

## 1. Reading Strategy Skill

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Vertebrates	vertebrates	Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. There are five types of vertebrates.
	mammals	Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies.
	warm-blooded	They are warm-blooded.
	milk - egg	They feed their babies with milk. They don't lay eggs
	humans - bats	Humans are mammals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.
	reptiles	Most reptiles don't have hair or fur. They have scales.
	cold-blooded	They are cold-blooded.
	legs	Most reptiles have four legs except snakes.
	eggs	All reptiles lay eggs.
	amphibians	Amphibians have smooth skin.
	cold-blooded	They are cold-blooded.
	eggs	They lay eggs in water.
	habitat	They need water or a moist habitat to survive.
	fish - scales	Fish have scales. They use fins to move.
Invertebrates	breathe - gills	They can't breathe air. They take in oxygen through their gills.
	cold-blooded	They are cold-blooded.
	eggs	Fish lay eggs.
	birds	Birds don't have hair or fur. They have feathers.
	wings - beaks	Birds have wings and beaks.
	warm - blooded	They are warm-blooded.
	eggs	Birds lay eggs.
	invertebrates	More than 90% of all animals are invertebrates.
	cold-blooded	They are cold-blooded.
	land - water	They live on land and on water.
	hard shell	Some invertebrates have a hard shell for protection, like crabs
	soft bodies	Others have soft bodies, like jellyfish.
	move - slowly	Some invertebrates move very slowly, like snails.
	fly - fast	Others fly very fast, like dragonflies.
Water lily	soil	Most plants grow in the soil.
	water lily - water	Water lily grows in water.
	flat leaf - leaves	It has large, flat leaves on the surface of the water
	stem	It has a long stem that reaches to the bottom of the lake
	brightly - flowers	It has brightly colored flowers
	roots - spread	Their roots spread under the water and cover a very large area
	pretty - difficult	On one hand, it can look pretty, but on the other hand, it can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water

## 2. How to make a sentence

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة

الجملة الخبرية

1. some – There – animals – are – enormous.
2. animals – a backbone – are – Vertebrates – with.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

الجملة الأمرية

1. black – a color – Add – to.
2. look – the internet – Don't – on – long – for.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. lay – vertebrates – Which – eggs ?
2. animal – biggest – is – in the world – What – the ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. have – Do – a pet - you ?
2. fly – ostrich – Can – an ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1				
2				

### 3. Writing skill

١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متنوعة بنموذج.

#### Plants and animals

##### Plants

Most plants grow in soil.  
Some plants grow in water.

##### Example

Water lily grows in water.

##### Details

They have a large, flat leaf.  
They have a long stem.  
They have brightly colored flowers.

##### More details

They make seeds which float on water.  
Their roots spread under the water.  
They can cover a very large area.

##### Appearance

They look pretty.

##### Opinion

I like water lily.

#### Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Most plants grow in soil. Some plants grow in water. Water lily grows in water. It has a large, flat leaf. It has a long stem. They have brightly colored flowers. It makes seeds which float on water. Their roots spread under the water. They can cover a very large area. It looks pretty. I like water lily.



٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع إذا يجب أن يكون الجمل واضحاً ومترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ درس)

## (1) Invertebrates

Invertebrates don't have backbones.<sup>(1)</sup> They are cold-blooded.<sup>(2)</sup> They live in the sea but some live on land.<sup>(3)</sup> Some have soft bodies and some have hard shells.<sup>(4)</sup> Some invertebrates can swim and some can walk.<sup>(5)</sup> Arachnids are not insects.<sup>(6)</sup>

## (2) Mammals

Most mammals live on land, but some mammals such as whales and dolphins live in the sea.<sup>(7)</sup> However, bats are the only mammals that can fly.<sup>(8)</sup> Bats live in groups in trees or caves.<sup>(9)</sup> They sleep during the day and hunt for food at night.<sup>(10)</sup> They can fly very fast at night because they can 'see' using a special skill called echolocation.<sup>(11)</sup> In addition bats are helpful to humans and the environment.<sup>(12)</sup>

## (3) What animals do to protect themselves

There are many animals that can protect themselves.<sup>(13)</sup> Some invertebrates have a hard shell for protection.<sup>(14)</sup> Some animals such as bears have big teeth and claws to protect themselves.<sup>(15)</sup> Some have poisonous bites, such as snakes and some spiders.<sup>(16)</sup> Birds can fly away to protect themselves.<sup>(17)</sup> Other animals can run fast.<sup>(18)</sup>

## (4) Having a pet

It's fun to watch pets.<sup>(19)</sup> It's good to learn about how to look after them.<sup>(20)</sup> You can learn about their species.<sup>(21)</sup> Some animals such as dogs need to walk which is good exercise.<sup>(22)</sup> They need a lot of care and attention.<sup>(23)</sup> It can be expensive to have a pet.<sup>(24)</sup>

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## A. Listening

- 1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c or d.

- Reptiles are ..... - blooded.  
a. hot                      b. warm                      c. cold                      d. cool
- Reptiles have to spend time in the .....  
a. sun                      b. water                      c. sea                      d. lake
- Reptiles come to land to ..... their eggs.  
a. drink                      b. lay                      c. eat                      d. have
- Reptiles have .....  
a. hair                      b. scales                      c. fur                      d. fins

- 2 Listen and complete.

- Mammals are ..... - blooded.
- Mammals give ..... to their babies.
- Mammals don't ..... eggs .
- Mammals have ..... or fur on their bodies.

## B. Reading

- 3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

colors - animals - doing - What

- Israa : What are you doing, Nada ?  
Nada : I'm (1) ..... a research.  
Israa : What is it about ?  
Nada : It is about (2) ..... and birds.  
Israa : (3) ..... is the fastest animal ?  
Nada : It is the cheetah.  
Israa : That is great !  
Nada : Of course.

### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
- Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences
- Ask your child to read and complete the given dialogue with the correct words from the box

اطلب من طفلك أن يسمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يسمع ويكمل الجمل

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الصحيحة من الصندوق

- 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea ! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prey that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Coral reefs help fish to .....  
a. hide                      b. sleep                      c. stay                      d. lay
2. The coral is very .....  
a. light                      b. slight                      c. bright                      d. sunlight

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why are fish brightly colored ?
4. Why don't predators eat prey that are brightly colored ?

## • 5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa is an engineer.
2. Zeinab's friends is very clever.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Zeinab and her ..... visited the shop.  
a. father                      b. mother  
c. grandmother                      d. grandfather
2. Grandpa likes sewing ..... and geometric patterns.  
a. sun flower                      b. lotus flower                      c. rose                      d. daisy

4 Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويكتب عن الأسئلة المعطاه له

5 Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب عن الأسئلة طبقاً لأحداث القصة

### C. Writing

6 Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmed is ..... than Waleed.  
a. strong                      b. strongest                      c. stronger                      d. as strong
2. The snake is ..... than the ant.  
a. longer                      b. longest                      c. long                      d. the longest
3. Summer is the ..... season of the year.  
a. hot                      b. hotter                      c. hottest                      d. hotter than
4. My father is the ..... person in my family.  
a. tall as                      b. taller                      c. tall                      d. tallest

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. lay – in water – Amphibians – their – always – eggs.
2. make – How – you – darker – do – green ?

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements. اكتب نص من (50) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة.

Birds

محب عنه في رعاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

warm-blooded / fur / hair /  
feathers / wings / fly / can't /  
beaks / bones



#### Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
7. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly. اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بشكل صحيح
8. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding words اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (50) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية



- Understand • Apply • Create

## A. Listening

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Fish take in oxygen through their .....  
a. lungs      b. fins      c. stems      d. gills
- Fish have ..... on their bodies.  
a. fur      b. scales      c. feather      d. hair
- Fresh water and saltwater are .....  
a. holes      b. habits      c. habitats      d. hobbies
- Fish use ..... to move.  
a. gills      b. fins      c. tails      d. scales

(Cairo - Hadaig Ol-Qubbah 2022 / Luxor - Esna)

2. Listen and complete.

- The biggest animal on ..... is a mammal.
- The biggest animal in the world is the ..... whale.
- The whale shark is the biggest ..... in the world.
- The whale shark is about ..... meters long.

(Assiut - Abu Tig 2022 / Dakahlia - Belqas 2022)

## B. Reading

3. Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

land - writing - hummingbird - ostrich

Hala : What are you doing, Mona ?

Mona : I'm (1) ..... an English paragraph.

Hala : What is it about ?

Mona : It is about animals and birds.

Hala : What is the biggest animal on (2) ..... ?

Mona : The biggest animal on land is the African elephant.

Hala : What is the smallest bird ?

Mona : It's the bee (3) .....

(Beheira - Abu Hummus 2022 / Qalyubia - Benna 2022)

1 Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.

2 Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.

3 Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with words from the box

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بكلمات من المربع

-  Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive. Like reptiles, amphibians are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water. They have smooth skin, not scales. They amphibians can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs. They also absorb water through their skin.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ...  
a. mammals      b. birds      c. reptiles      d. amphibians
2. Amphibians can take in oxygen through their  
a. skin      b. lungs      c. eyes      d. skin and lungs

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What do amphibians need to stay alive ?
4. Can amphibians drink water by using their mouth ?

•  5

### The reader

☐ T ☐ F

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab and her grandfather visited the park. ☐
2. Zeinab loved the Khayameya design with flowers at her grandfather's shop. ☐

(Grade 2022 - Sharada - Faeus)

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Khayameya design of flower takes \_\_\_\_\_ to be done.  
a. two weeks      b. four months      c. one year      d. four days
2. Grandfather's design is made of thousands and thousands of small  
a. stitches      b. stickers      c. photos      d. machines

(Grade 2022 - Sharada - Faeus)

#### Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions

5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجب عن الأسئلة المعطاة له  
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجب عن الأسئلة طبقاً لأحداث القصة

### C. Writing

6 Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d.

- The whale shark is the ... fish. (Assuit - El Bedart, 2022)  
a. bigger      b. big      c. biggest      d. bigger than
- Speak ... The baby is sleeping. ...  
a. quiet      b. quietly      c. soft      d. good
- The camel is taller ... the horse. (Sharbia - Kotaa, 2022)  
a. there      b. then      c. than      d. their
- Why are you running ... , Ehab? (Menofia ...)  
a. quick      b. fast      c. slow      d. noisy

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- mammals - Bats - the only - fly - are - that. ...
- lay - vertebrates - Which - eggs? ...

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Having a pet

محباب عنه فى بهانه الكتب

Guiding elements :

species / look after / attention / care / expensive

(Dahmed - El Zorag / Cairo - El Matareya 2022)

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
- Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly. - اطلب من طفلك أن يترتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بشكل صحيح
- Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding words. - اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (50) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية



• دراسة المعاصر الفاعلية.  
• الاقليات النصرية في الدراسة الفاعلية

• استخدام خات المعاصر للقراءة والكتابة  
• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة  
• دراسة المعاصر للمعارف.

### Aims of Unit Three :

In this unit I will .....

- understand what makes a community  
• فهم ما يكون المجتمع
- understand and use possessive forms  
• فهم واستخدام صيغ الملكية
- learn about the history of Egypt  
• تعلم عن تاريخ مصر
- form and use regular and irregular past simple verbs  
• تكوين واستخدام صيغ الماضي البسيط مع أفعال المنتظمة وغير منتظمة

• أهداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة :

- read about the governorates of Lower and Upper Egypt.  
• قراءة عن محافظات مصر السفلى والعلوية
- learn about Egyptian folk music  
• تعلم عن الموسيقى الشعبية المصرية
- make a tourist information guide  
• إعداد دليل معلومات سياحية





## Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

اسمع وردد.

## Key vocabulary

community

neighborhood

neighbors

مجتمع

جوار (معارف الجارة)

جيران

sports club

citizenship

mixture

نادي رياضي

مواطنة

مربح / خليط

## Extra vocabulary

group

activities

ideas

probably

city

village

kind

fair way

polite

helpful

مجموعة

أنشطة

أفكار

من المحتمل

مدينة كبيرة

قرية

عطوف / طيب

طريقة عادلة

مهذب

متعاون

street

shop

society

weather

games

cousin

clothes

house

civilization

tourists

شارع

محل (متجر صغير)

مجتمع

الطقس

ألعاب

ابن / ابنة (العم/الحال)

ملابس

منزل

حضارة

سائحون

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

## Regular

## Irregular

## Present

## Past

believe يؤمن / يصدّق

share يشارك

act يؤدي / يفعل

include يشمل / يتضمن

behave يتصرف

believed

shared

acted

included

behaved

## Present

## Past

think يعتقد / يفكر

thought

\* Ask your child to listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يسمع إلى الكلمات و يردد هم.

## Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات وحروف جر هامة

in the same area	في نفس المنطقة	close to	بالقرب من
more than	أكثر من	What is special about ... ?	ما المميز عن ... ؟
for me	بالنسبة لي	look after	يرعى
part of	جزء من	from different parts of	من أجزاء مختلفة من
act in a way ...	يتصرف بطريقة ...	drop trash	إلقاء القمامة
good for	جيد بالنسبة لـ		
work hard	يعمل بجد		



### Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- Look and write the missing letters.

1.



sp \_ \_ t \_ c \_ \_ b

2.



s \_ \_ \_ et

3.



ne \_ \_ hb \_ \_ \_

4.



vi \_ \_ ag \_

- ★ Read and identify these definitions. اقرأ وتعرف.

Word	Definition
<b>community</b> مجتمع	a group of people who live together in the same area and share activities and ideas مجموعة من الناس يعيشون معًا في نفس المنطقة ويتشاركون في الأنشطة والأفكار
<b>neighborhood</b> حي	the streets, houses, shops and schools close to where you live الشوارع والمنازل والمحلات والمدارس القريبة من المكان الذي تعيش فيه
<b>citizenship</b> المواطنة	behaving in a way that helps your society أن تتصرف بطريقة ما لتساعد مجتمعك

#### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters. اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة.
- Help your child read and identify the definitions. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويحدد على المعرفات.

Egypt is one of the oldest civilizations on Earth. It became powerful over 5,000 years ago

مصر واحدة من أقدم الحضارات على الأرض. أصبحت قوية منذ أكثر من 5000 عام

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

## My community

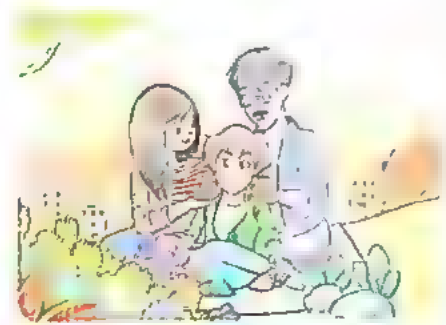


Habiba

A **community**<sup>(1)</sup> is a group of people who live and work together in the same area.

A community is more than your house, family, or your **neighborhood**<sup>(2)</sup>. It is

a **mixture**<sup>(3)</sup> of people, places, activities, and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit. You can also have a community there. For me, I am part of the community at my sports club too. When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good **citizenship**<sup>(4)</sup>. This means that you work hard to help other people, and **behave**<sup>(5)</sup> in a kind and **fair**<sup>(6)</sup> way. Good citizenship is a good part of being in a community. I am always **polite**<sup>(7)</sup> and **helpful**<sup>(8)</sup> at school, and at my sports club.



### Check Vocabulary

- (1) مجتمع
- (2) حي
- (3) خليط
- (4) مواطنة
- (5) يتصرف
- (6) عادل
- (7) مهذب
- (8) متعاون

## Language

### 1 Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الإشارة

#### Singular

We use "This" to talk about something near.

نستخدم (This) للحديث عن شيء مفرد قريب



This

a red T-shirt.

We use "That" to talk about something far.

نستخدم (That) للحديث عن شيء مفرد بعيد



That

is

a camera.

ex. - This is a book.



- That is a book.



• Help your child look at the pictures, listen to the text and read it.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور. يستمع إلى النص ويقرأ.

مجمعي: المجتمع هو مجموعة من الأشخاص يعيشون ويعملون سوياً في نفس المنطقة. المجتمع هو أكثر من منزل، عائلتك أو أحي الخاص بك. هو مزيج من الأشخاص والأماكن والأنشطة والأفكار. يشمل مجتمعي عائلتي، أصدقائي ومدرستي. وهناك على الأرجح أماكن مهمة في مدينتك أو قريتك غالباً ما تزورها. يمكنك أيضاً أن تكون لديك مجتمع هناك بالنسبة لي، أنا جزء من المجتمع في النادي الرياضي الخاص بي أيضاً. فحينما يتصرف بطريقة جيدة تجاه مجتمعك فهذه مواطنة جيدة. وهذا يعني أن عليك أن تفعل جيداً لتساعد الأشخاص الآخرين. ويتصرف بطريقة نظيفة وعادية. إن مواطنته الصالحة جزء جيد من كونك في مجتمع. أنا دائماً مهذبة ومتعاونة في المدرسة وفي النادي الرياضي الخاص بي.

## Plural الجمع

We use "These" to talk about things that are near.

نستخدم (These) للحديث عن اسم جمع قريب

→ These nice sunglasses.  
are

We use "Those" to talk about things that are far.

نستخدم (Those) للحديث عن اسم جمع بعيد

→ Those brown jackets.

ex. - These are books. →  - Those are books. → 



## Pop Quiz on Language

### • Read and choose.

1. That (is - are) a beautiful flower.
2. (That - Those) are my favorite dresses.
3. (This - Those) is my school.
4. (These - That) are my crayons.
5. That (is - are) an octopus.
6. Those (are - is) apples.
7. (This - Those) is my brother.
8. (That - Those) is our house.
9. (These - This) is my neighborhood.
10. These (is - are) my friends.

### Notes for parents

- Help your child to identify and use the demonstrative pronouns
- Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على ويستخدم ضمائر الإشارة  
التي من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة

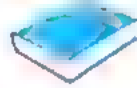


## 2 Possessive Pronouns

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية
تستخدم قبل الفعل	تستخدم قبل اسم المملوك	تستخدم بدل من صفات الملكية تستخدم بعد فعل
I أنا	my ملكي	mine ملكي
You أنت/أنتم/أنتم	your ملكك/ملككم	yours ملكك/ملككم
He هو	his ملكه	his ملكه
She هي	her ملكها + noun	hers ملكها
We نحن	our ملكنا	ours ملكنا
They هم	their ملكهم	theirs ملكهم
It هو/هي/عبر/عقرب	its ملكه/ملكها (عبر/عقرب)	

تستخدم ضمائر الملكية للتعبير عن ملكية شخص أو أشخاص لشيء معين

ex. - This book is mine.



هذا الكتاب ملكي.

- This umbrella is hers.



هذه الشمسية ملكها.

☆ ضمائر الملكية غالبًا ما تأتي في نهاية الجملة.

ex. That ice cream is mine! It isn't yours.

ذلك الآيس كريم ملكي! إنه ليس ملكك.



☆ لا نستخدم اسم (noun) بعد ضمائر الملكية.

ex. - This is my bag. It's mine.



هذه حقبتتي. إنها ملكي.

- That is his shirt. It's his.



ذلك قميصه. إنه ملكه.

Help your child to identify and use the possessive forms.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على ويستخدم صيغ الملكية



## Pop Quiz on Language

### 1 Read and circle the correct answer.

1. Omnia left  $\frac{\text{her}}{\text{their}}$  school book on the bus.
2. Is this pencil  $\frac{\text{hers}}{\text{her}}$  ?
3. That cat is  $\frac{\text{mine}}{\text{my}}$  .
4. Are these beautiful paintings  $\frac{\text{your}}{\text{yours}}$  ?
5. The dog eats  $\frac{\text{it}}{\text{its}}$  food.
6. The red truck is  $\frac{\text{his}}{\text{my}}$  .

### 2 Choose the correct possessive pronoun to replace the underlined noun.

1. We watched the cat's babies as they were playing.  
a. their                      b. our                      c. its
2. The pencil is Hamza's.  
a. its                      b. his                      c. her
3. The sister's dream was to become a doctor.  
a. Our                      b. His                      c. Her
4. Omar and Yassin's parrot can say "Hello".  
a. Our                      b. Their                      c. Its

### 3 Read and choose the correct pronoun.

1. I wrote \_\_\_\_\_ (my - mine) name on the paper.
2. I think that this skateboard is \_\_\_\_\_ (its - his).
3. Have you seen ..... (ours - our) dog ?

#### Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read the sentences and circle the correct answer.

2. Ask your child to choose the correct pronouns to replace the underlined nouns.

3. Ask your child to read and choose the correct pronoun

# Dictation



إتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

## Read and spell

community

neighborhood

sports club

citizenship

mixture

share

neighbors

polite

society

street

kind

city

village

## Complete

co \_ \_ \_ nity

ne \_ \_ \_ borh \_ \_ d

sp \_ \_ ts c \_ \_ \_

ci \_ \_ \_ ens \_ ip

mi \_ \_ ure

s \_ ar \_

n \_ \_ g \_ b \_ rs

p \_ l \_ te

s \_ c \_ et \_

str \_ \_ t

k \_ n \_

c \_ t \_

v \_ \_ lag \_

## Write

Handwriting practice lines for the 'Write' section, consisting of multiple sets of three horizontal lines (top, middle dashed, bottom) for writing practice.

• Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، ينهج، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات

# General Exercises

## on Lesson 1

بخصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

- **1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a group of people who live together in the same area.  
a. citizenship    b. community    c. neighborhood    d. city
2. My community includes my family, my \_\_\_\_\_, and my school.  
a. friends    b. sisters    c. brothers    d. cousins
3. A good \_\_\_\_\_ is acting in a way that helps your society.  
a. neighbor    b. village    c. citizenship    d. community
4. I am always \_\_\_\_\_ and helpful at school.  
a. polite    b. happy    c. good    d. angry

- **2** Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

sports club - live - city - work

Nabil : Good morning, Mourad. Where do you (1) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Mourad : Good morning, Nabil. I live in a (2) \_\_\_\_\_.

Nabil : Who do you live with ?

Mourad : I live with my family.

Nabil : What are the things you can do at the city ?

Mourad : I can go to the (3) \_\_\_\_\_.

Nabil : That's great !

Mourad : Yes, of course.

### Notes for parents

1 Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer

2 Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue from the given words

طلب من طفلك أن يسمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

طلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة من الكلمات المعطاة



### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. That is my cat. The cat is .....  
 a. his                      b. hers                      c. yours                      d. mine
2. I didn't believe ..... story.  
 a. her                      b. yours                      c. ours                      d. hers
3. .... boots look very expensive.  
 a. They                      b. These                      c. That                      d. This
4. These ..... fun games.  
 a. do                      b. have                      c. are                      d. is

### 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - a mixture - A community - people - of.
2. club - sports - my - I am - part of - at - the community.

### 5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Your community

مجاہب عنہ فی نہایۃ الکتاہ

#### Guiding questions :

- Where do you live ?
- Who do you live with ?
- What is special about your community ?
- What things can you do ?



3 Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

4 Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences

اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

5 Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding questions

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (50) كلمة مستخدماً الأسئلة الإرشادية

## Lesson

# 2

## The History of Egypt



### Vocabulary



Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### Key vocabulary

history	تاريخ	scribe	كاتب - ناسخ
Ancient Egypt	مصر العديمة	hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية
tombs	مقابر / مدافن	pharaoh	فرعون
Lower Egypt	الوجه البحرى	hieroglyphic	هيروغليفي
Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلى	Ptolemy dynasty	سلالة البطالمة
unite	يوحد		

### Extra vocabulary

interesting	ممتع / شيق	special	مميز / خاص
BCE "Before the Common Era"	قبل الميلاد	powerful	قوى - ذو نفوذ
separate	منفصل	Old Kingdom	المملكة القديمة
area	مساحة / منطقة	Middle Kingdom	لمملكة الوسطى
north	الشمال	New Kingdom	المملكة الجديدة
south	الجنوب	ruling dynasties	السلالات الحاكمة
desert	صحراء	pyramid	هرم
boat	قارب	stone	حجر
papyrus reeds	عيدان نبات البردى	symbols	رموز
main	أساسى - رئيسى	the Nile	نهر النيل
ink	حبر	signs	علامات
		museum	متحف

### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

The Pyramid of Djoser is the oldest pyramid in the world. People started building it in about 2648 - 2627 BCE.

- There are over 700 hieroglyphic symbols.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

هرم زوسر (الهرم المدرج) هو أقدم هرم في العالم بدأ الناس بناؤه في حوالي ٢٦٤٨ - ٢٦٢٧ قبل الميلاد

هناك أكثر من ٧٠٠ رمزا هيروغليفي

## Conjugation of Verbs

تصريف الأفعال

### Regular

#### Present

start يبدأ  
flow يتدفق  
rule يحكم  
control يتحكم  
sailبحر  
join يتصل/يضم  
die يموت

#### Past

started  
flowed  
ruled  
controlled  
sailed  
joined  
died

### Irregular

#### Present

become يصبح  
build يبني  
be (am/is/are) يكون  
mean يعنى  
read يقرأ  
make يصنع  
spend يفضى  
write يكتب

#### Past

became  
built  
was/were  
meant  
read  
made  
spent  
wrote

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

At first فى البداية  
flow through يمر/ يتدفق من خلال  
in about فى حوالى  
as far as حتى - لى  
rule for many years يحكم لعدة سنوات  
the Pyramid of Djoser الهرم المدرج للملك زوسر  
know so much about يعرف الكثير عن  
at the time فى عصر/وقت

write down يدون - بسجل  
work for the ruling dynasties يعمل لدى السلالات الحاكمة  
write on stone ينقش على الحجر  
made from مصنوع من  
live near the Nile يعيش بالقرب من النيل  
become powerful يصبح ذو نفوذ/سلطة  
flow out to sea تنساب/تتدفق إلى مياه البحر



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

### • Look and write the words.

1.



2.



3.



4.



• Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the words.

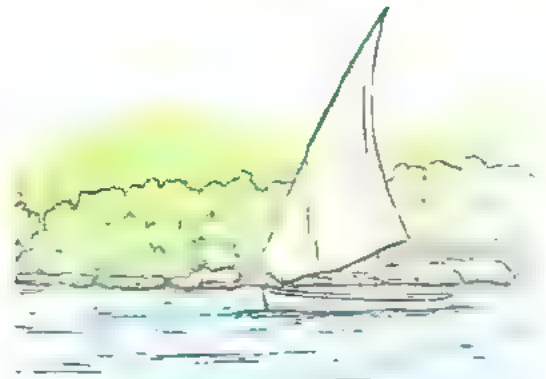
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمات

☆ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

## What are the three main parts of the history of ancient Egypt ?

Egypt is a **country**<sup>(1)</sup> with a very long and interesting **history**<sup>(2)</sup>. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile **flows**<sup>(3)</sup> through the deserts of Africa. In about 3200 BCE, one **pharaoh**<sup>(4)</sup>, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful. There are three main parts to the history of ancient Egypt :



### Check Vocabulary

- (١) دولة  
(٢) تاريخ  
(٣) يتدفق  
(٤) فرعون  
(٥) سلالات حاكمة

the Old Kingdom  
[ 2800 - 2200 BCE ]

the **Middle** Kingdom  
[ 2065 - 1775 BCE ]

the New Kingdom  
[ 1570 - 1098 BCE ]

Important **dynasties**<sup>(5)</sup> controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

**Choose**  
the correct  
answer :

**Learn** 1. Mena joined the north and south to ..... Egypt.  
a. start      b. divide      c. unite      d. mix

**Practice** 2. A dynasty was an important ..... that ruled for many years.  
a. person      b. family      c. pharaoh      d. kingdom

### Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يسطر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص  
مصر هي دولة ذات تاريخ طويل جداً، وممتنع بدأ الناس العيش بالقرب من النيل منذ حوالي ٩,٠٠٠ عام. في عام ٧,٠٠٠ قبل الميلاد، كان هناك منطقتان منفصلتان في مصر السفلى وكانت في الشمال حيث يسكن النيل مع البحر وصعيد مصر في الجنوب حيث يتدفق النيل عبر صحاري أفريقيا. في حوالي ٣٢٠٠ قبل الميلاد، ضم أحد شراعيه ودعى صيد الحزلي لموحيد دولة مصر. كانت مصر تتحكم في نهر النيل حتى تستطيع القوارب أن تبحر فيه، لذلك أصبحت ذات نفوذ قوي.  
بعد ثلاثة أعوام، تسمى ساريج مصر القديمة  
تحتل الدولة القديمة من عام ٢٨٠٠ إلى ٢٢٠٠ قبل الميلاد  
استمر ساريج حاكمة دعه على مصر بسواب عبيده هذه السلالات الهامة هم من حكموا البلاد  
٢- المملكة الوسطى من عام ٢٦٥٠ إلى ١٧٧٥ قبل الميلاد  
٣- المملكة الحديثة من عام ١٥٧٠ إلى ٩٨٠ قبل الميلاد



How do we know so much about the history of Egypt? **Egyptians**<sup>(1)</sup> at that time used scribes to write down everything that happened. **Scribes**<sup>(2)</sup> were very important people. They worked for the **ruling dynasties**<sup>(3)</sup>.

They wrote in **hieroglyphs**<sup>(4)</sup>, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from **papyrus reeds**<sup>(5)</sup>.



#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) المصريين
- (2) الكتبة
- (3) الأسر الحاكمة
- (4) اللغة الهيروغليفية
- (5) أعواد نبات البردي

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

**Learn** 1. Why did the ancient Egyptians use scribes ?  
- To write down everything that happened.

**Practice** 2. Where can we see hieroglyphs today ?

## الإنجليزية

### The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

#### Verb to (Be) in the Past Simple Tense

الفعل "يكون" في زمن الماضي البسيط

**1**  
Affirmative  
statements

الجملة الحصرية  
المثبتة

**I / He / she / It** + اسم مفرد **was**

**They / you / we** + اسم جمع **were**

Rami was at the Pyramids **yesterday**.

She was at home two hours **ago**.

They were at the zoo **last** week.

• Help your child to listen, look at the picture and read the text  
• Help your child learn about verb to "be" in the past simple tense

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص  
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن فعل "يكون" في زمن الماضي البسيط  
• استخدم المصريين الكلمة في تصريفهم لمزيد من الكلمات، حيث كان الكلمة اسم خاص يوصف شخصاً بعد كانوا يفتخرون به  
• استخدموا كلمة "yesterday" في الماضي البسيط، حيث كانوا يكتبون على الأحجار وعلى الورق المصنوع من أعواد نبات البردي  
• استخدموا كلمة "ago" في الماضي البسيط، حيث كانوا يكتبون على الأحجار وعلى الورق المصنوع من أعواد نبات البردي

**2**  
**Negative statements**  
الاجمل الديرية  
المنفية

**I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was not = wasn't**

**They / you / we / اسم جمع + were not = weren't**

They weren't at the hospital.

She wasn't at home.



من هذه الكلمات "... ago / yesterday / last ..." للدلالة على زمن الماضي البسيط.

**B The Past Simple Tense with "Regular verbs"**  
زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة.

**Usage** الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وإنتهى في الماضي.

**Subject + الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + (ed / d / iced)**

**Affirmative Statements**  
الاجمل الخبرية  
المثبتة

- They listened to stories.

- My mother cooked breakfast.



**Notes for parents**

- Help your child learn about the past simple tense with regular verbs and irregular verbs
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة والغير منتظمة

Most verbs Add - ed	watch → watched look → looked	• معظم الأفعال المنتظمة يضاف إليها (ed).
Verbs that ending in vowel + consonant Double consonant + ed	drop → dropped	• الأفعال التي تنتهي بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ثم يضاف إلى الفعل (ed).
Verbs that ending in e Add - d	bake → baked close → closed	• الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (e) يضاف إليها (d) فقط.
Verbs that ending in consonant + y Change (y) to (i) and add - ed	study → studied	• الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن لحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إلى الفعل (ied).
Verbs that ending in vowel + y Add - ed	play → played	• الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (y) قبلها حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف إليها (ed).

## Ⓢ The Past Simple Tense with "Irregular verbs"

زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة.

### Formation : التكوين

☆ يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل غير المنتظم (يحفظ كما هو).

Meaning	Present	Past	Meaning	Present	Past
يشرب	drink	→ drank	يفوز	win	→ won
يرى	see	→ saw	يشترى	buy	→ bought
يأكل	eat	→ ate	يذهب	go	→ went
يملك / يتناول	have	→ had	يأخذ	take	→ took

\* Help your child learn about the past simple tense with regular verbs and irregular verbs

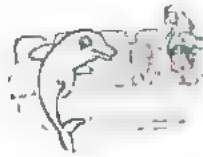
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة

تكملة الجملة + التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل Subject

1

Positive statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة



They **saw** a show.

التصريف الثاني للفعل



She **took** pictures.

التصريف الثاني للفعل

2

Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

I / He / She / It /  
They / you / we / + **did not** (didn't) + مصدر الفعل (inf.)

- ex. - She didn't watch the sunrise.  
- She didn't clean the tent.  
- She didn't see the show.

3

Interrogative

صيغة  
الاستفهام

Did I / he / she / it /  
you / we / they + مصدر الفعل (inf.) + باقي السؤال ؟

Short answers الإجابات المختصرة

Yes, + I / he / she / it / + **did.** عند الإثبات  
No, + you / we / they + **didn't.** عند النفي

- ex. - Did you listen to stories ? - Yes, I did.  
- Did she clean the tent ? - No, she didn't.

☆ لاحظ أن عند السؤال بـ "هل ... ؟" باستخدام (Did) يكون الفعل في المصدر (inf.).

Key words :

من الكلمات الدالة على زمن الماضي البسيط

in the past في الماضي  
(فترة زمنية) + ago منذ  
yesterday أمس

last

→ year السنة الماضية  
→ month الشهر الماضي  
→ week الأسبوع الماضي  
→ Tuesday الثلاثاء الماضي



عند تكوين السؤال لمبدوء بكلمة استفهام في زمن الماضي البسيط نستخدم :

question word + did + he / she / it + مصدر الفعل (inf.)  
we / you / they

- Where did you go yesterday ?
- I went to the museum yesterday.



### Pop Quiz on

• Choose the correct answer from a ,b, c or d

1. Not everyone in ancient Egypt \_\_\_\_\_ to read and write.  
a. learns      b. learned      c. learn      d. learning
2. Scribes \_\_\_\_\_ with reed brushes and ink in the past.  
a. writing      b. writes      c. write      d. wrote
3. \_\_\_\_\_ she play the piano ? - Yes, she did.  
a. Has      b. Does      c. Did      d. Do
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ to the zoo yesterday.  
a. go      b. went      c. goes      d. going
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ hieroglyphs and hieratic scripts in the past.  
a. studied      b. study      c. studies      d. to study
6. People \_\_\_\_\_ to live near the Nile in 7000 BCE.  
a. starting      b. started      c. start      d. starts
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ in the school yesterday.  
a. is      b. was      c. did      d. were
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ happy yesterday.  
a. were      b. was      c. is      d. are

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Egyptians at that time used ..... to write down everything that happened.  
a. vets                      b. scribes                      c. engineers                      d. doctors
- Scribes worked for the ruling .....  
a. dynasties                      b. symbols                      c. stones                      d. signs
- Scribes wrote in .....  
a. Arabic                      b. English                      c. hieroglyphs                      d. French
- Children learnt to become a scribe at .....  
a. home                      b. office                      c. hotel                      d. school

2 Listen and complete.

- Egypt is a country with a very long .....
- People started to live near the ..... about nine thousand years ago.
- Lower Egypt was in the .....
- Upper Egypt was in the .....

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- was – Egypt – **Where** – Lower ?  
.....

- very – people – **Scribes** – important – were.  
.....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.

2. Ask your child listen and complete the sentences with the correct words.

3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences.

طلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائره حول الإجابة الصحيحة

طلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل بالكلمات الصحيحة

طلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ليكون جمل صحيحة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

A. Choose the correct answer.

- Upper Egypt was in the .....  
a. north                      b. south                      c. east                      d. west
- Boats could ..... on the Nile of Egypt.  
a. unite                      b. miss                      c. control                      d. sail

B. Answer the following questions.

- Where was Lower Egypt ?  
.....
- Who united the two parts of Egypt ?  
.....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Scribes

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

write down – in hieroglyphs – symbols – tombs – paper – papyrus reeds

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.

اطلب من طفلك ان يقرأ النص ويحبب عن الأسئلة المعطاة له .

5 Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the given guiding words.

اطلب من طفلك ان يكتب نص مكون من حوالي ( 50 ) كلمة مستخدماً لكلمات الارشادية .



## Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

## Key vocabulary

## The governorates of Egypt

محافظات مصر

governorate	محافظة	Damietta	محافظة دمياط
capital city	عاصمة	Ismailia	محافظة الإسماعيلية
Cairo	محافظة القاهرة	Aswan	محافظة أسوان
Giza	محافظة الجيزة	New Valley	محافظة الوادي الجديد
Alexandria	محافظة الإسكندرية	Red Sea	محافظة البحر الأحمر
Qalyubia	محافظة القليوبية	Aswan	محافظة أسوان
Suez	محافظة السويس	Asyut	محافظة أسيوط
Port Said	محافظة بورسعيد	Beni Suef	محافظة بني سويف
Beheira	محافظة البحيرة	Minya	محافظة المنيا
Monufia	محافظة المنوفية	Luxor	محافظة الأقصر
Sharqia	محافظة الشرقية	Matruh	محافظة مطروح
Gharbia	محافظة الغربية	North Sinai	محافظة شمال سيناء
Dakahlia	محافظة الدقهلية	South Sinai	محافظة جنوب سيناء
Kafr El Sheikh	محافظة كفر الشيخ	Sohag	محافظة سوهاج
Faiyum	محافظة الفيوم	Qena	محافظة قنا

## Extra vocabulary

map	خريطة	region	منطقة
large cities	مدن كبرى	the countryside	الريف
How many ... ?	كم العدد ... ؟	popular	محبوب / مشهور
Which ... ?	أيهما ... ؟ (للتخير)	scuba diving	لغطس تحت الماء (باستخدام أنبوب التنفس)
How big .... ?	كم الحجم ... ؟	water sports	رياضات مائية
farthest	الأبعد	the High Dam	السد العالي
Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر	port	ميناء
natural features	السمات الطبيعية	oasis	واحة
population	عدد السكان		

## Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات و يردد هم



## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

### Regular

#### Present

visit	يزور
finish	ينتهي
sail	يبحر

#### Past

visited
finished
sailed

### Irregular

#### Present

are	يكون
is	يكون
have / has	يملك

#### Past

were
was
had

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look at	ينظر إلى
next to the sea	بحانب / بجوار البحر
sail in ...	يبحر داخل
sail out of ...	يبحر خارج

find places on the map	يحدد أماكن على الخريطة
lots of = a lot of	الكثير من



## Pop Quiz on Conjugation

### • Look and write.

1.



2.



3.



4.

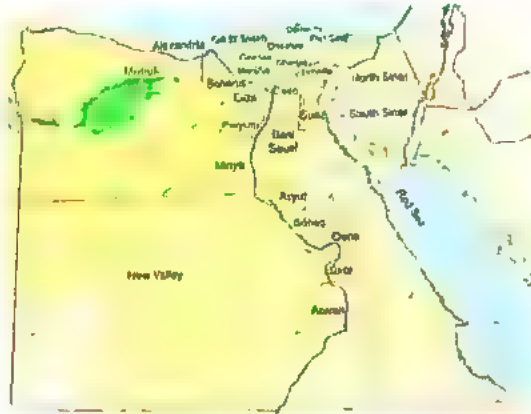


- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the correct word under each picture.

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمة الصحيحة أسفل كل صورة

## The governorates of Egypt

There are 27 **governorates**<sup>(1)</sup> in Egypt today. Look at the **map**<sup>(2)</sup>. Where do you live ?



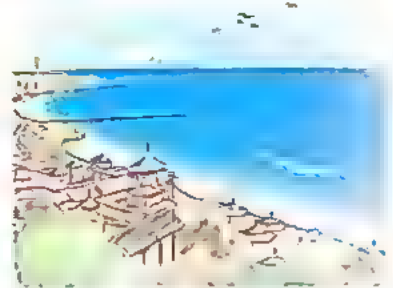
### Check Vocabulary

- (1) محافظات
- (2) خريطة
- (3) العوص تحت الماء (باستخدام أنبوب التنفس)
- (4) عاصمة



Fares

I'm Fares, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for **scuba diving**<sup>(3)</sup> and water sports.



Nadia

I'm Nadia, and I live in Aswan Governorate. It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its **capital**<sup>(4)</sup> is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.



Ibrahim

I'm Ibrahim, and I live in Alexandria Governorate. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.



### Notes for parents

- Help your child to look, listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويفهم النص

محافظة مصر يوجد سبعة وعشرون محافظة في مصر اليوم انظر إلى الخريطة أين تعيش ؟  
 أنا فارس ولعيش في محافظة البحر الأحمر إن بها شاطئ سابع طوله ١٠ كم إنه مكان مشهور جدا للزيارة من أجل رياضة العوص تحت الماء والرياضات المائية  
 أنا نادية ولعيش في محافظة أسوان إنها الأبعد في جنوب صعيد مصر وعاصمتها هي مدينة أسوان في عام ١٩٧٠ أنشئ المهندسون بناء السد العالي في أسوان  
 أنا إبراهيم ولعيش في محافظة الإسكندرية إنها محافظة هامة لأن الكثير من السفن تبحر إلى داخل وخارج البلاد كانت مدينة الإسكندرية عاصمة لمصر في الماضي

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Nadia lives in ..... Governorate.  
a. Red Sea      b. Aswan      c. Luxor      d. Alexandria
- It's the farthest south in ..... Egypt.  
a. Lower      b. Upper      c. up      d. down
- ..... finished the High Dam in 1970.  
a. Vets      b. Doctors      c. Engineers      d. Nurses
- The capital of Upper Egypt is .....  
a. Aswan      b. Luxor      c. Cairo      d. Alexandria

### 2 Listen and complete.

- New Valley doesn't have a big .....
- The ..... of New Valley Governorate is Kharga.
- Kharga is a / an ..... town.
- New Valley ..... is 440,098 km<sup>2</sup> in size.

### 3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

Aswan – important – Where – Cairo

**Walaa** : Welcome to Cairo. Is it your first visit to (1) ..... ?

**Basma** : Yes, it is.

**Walaa** : (2) ..... do you live ?

**Basma** : I live in Alexandria.

**Walaa** : Why is Alexandria (3) ..... ?

**Basma** : Because lots of ships sail in and out of the port.

**Walaa** : Great ! I wish you would enjoy your visit in Cairo.

**Basma** : Thank you.

- Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
- Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences with the correct answer.
- Ask your child to read and complete the given dialogue.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل بالإجابة الصحيحة.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة المعطاه له.

#### 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Aswan - live - Governorate - I - in.
2. live - in - people - Egypt - How - many ?
3. do- live - Where - you ?

#### 5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Amr, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1.000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports.

I'm Ali, and I live in the Alexandria Governorate. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c & d :

1. The Red Sea Governorate has a/an . . . . . which is over 1,000 km.  
a. oasis                      b. beach                      c. desert                      d. village
2. In Alexandria, . . . . . sail in and out of the port.  
a. ships                      b. boats                      c. buses                      d. trains

#### B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is Red Sea Governorate famous for ?
4. Why is Alexandria important ?

#### Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read and order the words then write the sentences correctly

2. Ask your child to read the text, then answer the given questions.



# Lessons 4 & 5

## CLIL : Music Writing Folk dancing in Egypt



### Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### Key vocabulary

folk dancing	الرقص الشعبي	costumes	أرباء حاصه
Nubian dancing	الرقص النوبي	culture	ثقافة
Raqs Assaya	الرقص بالعصا	wind instrument	آلة نفخ موسيقيه
tradition	تقليد - عُرف	string instrument	آلة موسيقيه وترية

### Extra vocabulary

folk music	موسيقى شعبية	Nubian music	موسيقى نوبية
style	أسلوب	singing	الغناء
musician	موسيقيار	drumming	فرع الطبول
Saidi music	الموسيقى الصعيدى	shaabi music	موسيقى شعبية
ney	الناي	simsimeya	آلة السمسمية
qanun	القانون	Bedouin music	الموسيقى البدوية
rebaba	الربابة	Tahtib	التحطيب
oud	العود	drum	الطبله
shabbaba	الشبابه (آلة موسيقية بدوية)	oboe	أوبوا (آلة موسيقية تشبه المزمار)
clapping	التصفيق	violin	آلة الكمان
lively	مفعم بالحيوية والنشاط	key	أساسي / جوهري
rhythm	إيقاع - تناغم	fighting	قتال
occasion	مناسبة	tent maker	صانع الخيم
dancer	راقص	bright-colored	دات ألوان زاهية
stick (Assaya)	عصا	poetry	الشعر
special	خاص	the Suez Canal	قناة السويس
patterns	أنماط	international	عالمي
Bedouin	بدوي	type	نوع

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them

• ساعد طفلك ان يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

### Regular

### Irregular

Present		Past	Present		Past
link	يربط	linked	know	يعرف	knew
include	يشمل	included	make	يصنع	made
step	يخطو	stepped	wear	يرتدي	wore
perform	يؤدي	performed			

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

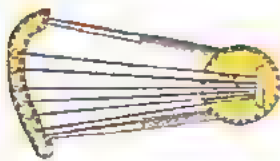
such as	مثل	all over Egypt	في جميع أنحاء مصر
farther south	أقصى الجنوب	put ..... into .....	يضع بداخل
the home of	موطن لـ ....	It is linked to ....	به مرتبط بـ
look like	يشبه		



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- Look and write the words.

1.



2.



3.



### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the correct word under each picture  
طلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمة الصحيحة أسفل كل صورة
- Music was important in ancient Egypt, too. We know this because scribes made pictures of musicians playing instruments, and ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.  
الموسيقى شديدة الأهمية في مصر القديمة أيضاً. نعرف ذلك لأن الكتبة صنعوا رسوماً لموسيقيين يعزفون على آلات ووضع المصريون القدماء الآلات داخل الأهرامات

## ★ Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz ! ندرج على ٢٩ من قطع المقدم ونصوص الاستماع

### What kind of music do you like ?

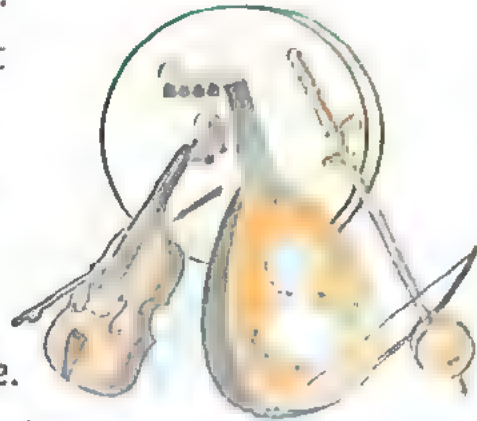
Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. There are different styles from different parts of the country.

Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments<sup>(1)</sup> such as violins, and wind instruments such as the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a key part.

Farther south is the home of Nubian music. Clapping<sup>(2)</sup> and drumming<sup>(3)</sup> is an important part of this type of music. Nubian music is now popular all over Egypt.

Sometimes it is mixed<sup>(4)</sup> with other modern styles of music.

The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and the rebaba. Bedouin music also often includes singing. Songs are usually about special events.



#### Check Vocabulary

- (١) الآلات الوترية ( )
- (٢) التصفيق ( )
- (٣) قرع الطبول ( )
- (٤) تدمج ( )

**Learn** 1. The oboe is a ..... instrument.

- a. modern    b. string    c. key    d. wind

**Practice** 2. Folk musicians from ..... Egypt play Saidi music.

- a. Lower    b. Upper    c. Up    d. Down

**Choose**  
the correct  
answer :

• Help your child to look at the picture and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.

إن مصر لديها الكثير من الموسيقى الشعبية التقليدية هناك أنماط مختلفة من أجزاء مختلفة من البلاد فالموسيقيون الشعبيون من صعيد مصر يعرفون الموسيقى الصعيدية فيستخدم هذا النوع من الموسيقى الآلات الوترية مثل الكمان وآلة النفخ مثل أودو العناء وقرع الطبول هو أيضاً جزء أساسي يوجد في أقصى الجنوب موطن الموسيقى البوسية وبعد التصفيق وقرع الطبول جزء هام من هذا النوع من الموسيقى أن الموسيقى البوسية معروفة حالياً على مستوى مصر أحياناً تُدمج مع أنواع حديثة أخرى من الموسيقى أشهر الآلات لموسيقى بدوية هي الشبابة والزبابة يشتمل الموسيقى البدوية العناء غالباً تكون الأغاني حول المناسبات الخاصة

تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم وبموضوع الاستماع انظر، استمع واقرأ. Look, listen and read.

## Folk dancing in Egypt

Folk dancing<sup>(1)</sup> has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to<sup>(2)</sup> the folk music of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm<sup>(3)</sup> of the music. Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition<sup>(4)</sup> of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks<sup>(5)</sup> in a way that looks like fighting. Dancers wear special costumes. These can be dark and plain, or bright-colored and patterned. In the cities alongside the Suez Canal, there are international types of music and dance. Musicians play the simsimeya, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.



### Check Vocabulary

- (١) لرقص الشعبي
- (٢) ارتبط بـ
- (٣) إيقاع
- (٤) تقليد
- (٥) عصي

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

**Learn** 1. Does folk dancing have a long history ?  
- Yes, it does.

**Practice** 2. What do the dancers use in Saidi music ?

### Notes for parents

- Help your child look, listen and read the text

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر يستمع ويقرأ النص  
يُعتبر الرقص الشعبي له تاريخ طويل في مصر وهو مرتبط بالموسيقى الشعبية في مناطق مختلفة فالرقص النبوي ذو حيوة وبهجة الناس يحركون أذرعهم وأقدامهم  
بعض الرقصات الشعبية ارتبطت على الأرواح جو الرقص بأكثر شهرة في الموسيقى الصعيدية التقليدية يستخدم الراقصون العصا (العصا) ويخطون بسرعة  
الخطوات كما يخطون من مائدة الموسيقى الصعيدية حيث يقوم الراقصون بالرقص بعصا بطريقة تشبه القتال يركل الراقصون أرباء خاصة  
بعض الرقصات الشعبية (الرقص) أو راقصة اللوز بها نقوشات في بعض المحاوره لفتاة التوسس هناك أنواع عالمية من الموسيقى والرقص  
في المدن على السمسمة وهي آلة يدوية بجانب الطبول





## Writing Skill وصف

★ When you write a description, use a mixture of adjectives and adverbs to make your writing more interesting.

عندما تكتب وصفاً ما، استخدم مزيج من الصفات والظروف لجعل كتابتك ممتعة أكثر.

## Language

### Remember

#### 1 What's an adjective ? ما هي الصفة ؟

★ An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be.

الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتي بعد (verb to be).

ex. - It is a small cat.

- This bag is big.

#### 2 Adverbs of manner صروف الحال (الكيفية)

### Usage الاستخدام

★ We use adverbs of manner to describe how we do the action of a verb.

نستخدم ظروف الكيفية لوصف حدث / فعل (الطريقة التي يؤدي بها شخص ما شيئاً ما).

- الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده و يتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة. والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

### adjective الصفة

They are quiet people.

Our team are bad.

الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتي قبله أو بعد (verb to be).

### adverb الظرف

Our team are playing badly.

الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده.

• Help your child to know how to make his writing interesting using adjectives and adverbs.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يجعل كتابته شيقة باستخدام الصفات والأحوال

## كيفية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية How to write a paragraph

### ★ القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

1. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريبًا ١ سم) في السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
2. أن تبدأ كل كلمة بحرف Capital.
3. أن تضع (.) واضحة في نهاية كل جملة.
4. إتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
5. يبدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوع بدايات الجمل.
6. استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذي تكتبه.
7. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
8. اجتهد في تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
9. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

## الأجزاء الرئيسية للفقرة الإنشائية The main parts of a paragraph

### 1. The first sentence

- It is a topic or introduction sentence.
- إنها حملة الموضوع أو المقدمة.
- It explains the main idea of the paragraph.
- تشرح الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة.

### 2. The last sentence

- It presents a summary of the topic in other words.
- تقدم ملخصًا للموضوع بعبارات أخرى.

#### Note :

Topic sentences in paragraphs should be developed with facts, definitions, and details.

حب توصيح جمل الموضوع في الفقرات الإنشائية بالحقائق والتعريفات والتفاصيل.

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child identify how to write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف على كيفية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

# General Exercises

on Lessons 4 & 5

بخصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- \_\_\_\_\_ made pictures of musicians playing instruments.  
a. Teachers      b. Artists      c. Scribes      d. Engineers
- Ancient Egyptians put instruments into \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. homes      b. pyramids      c. schools      d. museums
- Music was important in \_\_\_\_\_ Egypt.  
a. Ancient      b. Upper      c. Lower      d. Modern
- \_\_\_\_\_ were playing instruments in Ancient Egypt.  
a. Players      b. Doctors      c. Vets      d. Musicians

## 2 Listen and complete.

استمع واقرأ.

- There is a long history of \_\_\_\_\_ crafts in Egypt.
- \_\_\_\_\_ created khayameya to decorate huge tents for occasions.
- Khayameya \_\_\_\_\_ are beautifully designed using different colors.
- You can buy \_\_\_\_\_ in many traditional stores and markets.

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

wool – patterns – makers – quickly

Carpet making is an Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work (1) \_\_\_\_\_, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The (2) \_\_\_\_\_ are bright and colorful. Each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian (3) \_\_\_\_\_. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for the complicated patterns in red and blue.

1 Ask your child to listen and circle correct answer

2 Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences

3 Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - lively - and - ... - colorful - dancing.
2. has - history - a long - dancing - in Egypt -
3. music - do - like - ... - you - of ?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Marina is playing with the teddy bear  
 happiest      a. happier      c. happy      d. happily
2. Amal was nervous and couldn't talk  
 clear      b. clearly      c. clearest      d. clearer
3. Mohammed is a      driver.  
 careful      b. carefully      c. care      d. caring
4. Walk      or you may miss the bus.  
 a. quickest      b. quicker      c. quickly      d. quick

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

### Music in Upper Egypt

محباب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- instruments
- musicians
- folk music
- singing



### Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences.

5. Ask your child to write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the...





## Vocabulary

Listen and repeat.

اسمع وردد.

## Key vocabulary

location	موقع	history	التاريخ
geography	الجغرافيا	culture	ثقافة

## Extra vocabulary

entertainment	سبلة	Montazah Palace	قصر المنزه
section	جزء - فقرة	Maamoura Beach	شاطئ المأمورة
brochure	كيب / نشرة	concert	حفل موسيقى
headings	عناصر رئيسية	Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط
Alexander the Great	الاسكندر الأكبر	coastline	خط الساحل
facts	حقائق	art exhibition	معرض فني
tourist information guide	دليل استعلامات سياحي	attractions	عناصر الجذب
		features	سمات

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

## Regular

## Irregular

## Present

## Past

## Present

## Past

happen	يحدث	happened
illustrate	يوضح	illustrated

make	يصنع	made
------	------	------

## Useful phrases and expressions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• in the past	في الماضي	• in the north of	في شمال
• play traditional music on	يعزف موسيقى تقليدية على	• make paper from	يصنع ورق من

\* Help your child listen to the words and repeat them

ساعد طفلك أن يسمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

اقرأ وعرّف على هذه العرشفات. Read and identify these definitions.

Word	Definitions	
1 Location المكان / الموقع	where a place is in the country	مكان في الدولة
2 Geography الجغرافيا	the environment and any natural features	بيئة وأي سمات طبيعية
3 Attractions عناصر الحدث	what you can do and see in a place	... يستطيع أن يفعله أو يراه في المكان
4 History التاريخ	information about what happened here in the past	معلومات عن ما حدث هنا في الماضي
5 Culture الثقافة	traditional art, entertainment, food, and music	الفن التقليدي، الترفيه، الطعام والموسيقى

★ Listen, read and learn.

سمع، اقرأ وتعلم.

Section	Section
Geography	There are high mountains next to a river. هناك جبال عالية بجانب النهر.
Attractions	There's an art exhibition at the museum and a market every Tuesday. هناك معرض فني في المتحف وسوق كل ثلثاء.
Culture	People play traditional music on string instruments. يعزف الناس الموسيقى التقليدية على الآلات الوترية.
Location	It's in the north of the country. إنها في شمال البلاد.
History	People used to make paper from papyrus reeds. أعتاد الناس صنع الورق من عيدان نبات البردي.

#### Notes for parents

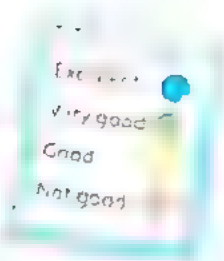
- Help your child read and identify the definition of each word
- Help your child listen, read and learn about sections of the tourist information guide

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على تعريف كل كلمة

ساعد طفلك أن يسمع، يقرأ ويتعلم عن أقسام دليل المعلومات السياحية

## Unit 2

مركز معلومات الإعلام والمواطنة وإدارة حملات التوعية



أمرأ وأكيب المعصي

B. کاتب - ناسخ  
مقابر  
فرعوں  
سلالات حاکمہ  
محافظہ

صع داتره حول الإحابة الصديقه

5. My parents were very (happy) at the party.

## Citizenship Community

صع علامات الترفيم للجمة الآتية

scribes were very important

# Review of unit 3

community neighborhood colorful

hieroglyphs the Red Sea Governorate drumming

Raqs Assaya pharaoh scuba diving

scribe oud ney



- This is **our** school.  
It's **ours**.

- Those are **her** books.  
They're **hers**.

- Ancient Egyptians  
**wrote** in hieroglyphs.

- There are three main parts to the history of ancient Egypt :

the Old Kingdom  
[ 2600 - 2200 BCE ]

the Middle Kingdom  
[ 2065 - 1775 BCE ]

the New Kingdom  
[ 1570 - 1098 BCE ]

- Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
- Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt.
- Nubian music is popular all over Egypt.

## Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 3.

ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة الثالثة

# Skills



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل  
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

## 1. Reading: Spotting Main

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The history of Egypt	history	Egypt has a very long and interesting history.
	Nile - live	People started to live near the Nile 9.000 years ago.
	area	There were two separate areas.
	Lower Egypt	Lower Egypt was in the north.
	Upper Egypt	Upper Egypt was in the south.
	Mena - joined	Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.
	three main parts	There are three main parts of the history of ancient Egypt : the Old, Middle and the New Kingdom.
The governorates of Egypt	The Red Sea beach	I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach.
	water sports	It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports.
	Aswan	I live in Aswan Governorate.
	Upper Egypt	It's in Upper Egypt.
	High Dam	In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.
	Alexandria ships capital	I live in Alexandria Governorate. Lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.
Folk music / dance	traditional	Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
	folk - Saidi	Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music.
	instruments	Saidi music uses string instruments such as violins, and wind instruments such as oboe.
	Raqs Assaya	Raqs Assaya is the most famous dance. The dancers use sticks.
	Nubian	Nubian music is popular all over Egypt.
	clapping	Clapping and drumming are important parts of this type of music.
	dancing	Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. The dancers move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music.
	Bedouin instruments	Bedouin music includes singing. The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and rebaba.



## 2. How to make a sentence:

العلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة

### الجملة الخبرية

1. Alexandria – I – live – in – Governorate.

2. music – has – of – lots – Egypt – folk – traditional.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

### الجملة الامرية

1. in – fair – way – a kind – Behave.

2. play – in – Don't – classroom.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

### الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. live – many – How – people – in – Cairo ?

2. live – you – do – Where ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. any – you – Do – know – of this – music ?

2. music – Was – ancient – important – Egypt – in ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1				
2				

### 3 Writing skill

١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم افكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متنوعة بنموذج

#### My world

##### Folk dancing

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt.

It is linked to the folk music of different areas.

##### Nubian dancing

Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music.

##### Raqs Assaya

It is a famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition.

Dancers use sticks and step quickly in special patterns.

##### The Tahtib

The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting.

##### Simsimeya

Musicians play the **simsimeya**, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.

##### Opinion

I like folk dancing **so** much.  
My favorite folk dance is .....

#### Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. Raqs Assaya is a famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. Dancers use sticks and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks. In Suez Canal cities, they like the **simsimeya**. I like folk dancing **so** much.

٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ حصة).

### 1 Scribes in Ancient Egypt

Not everyone in Ancient Egypt learned to read and write. This was a job for scribes. Scribes were very important people in society. To become a scribe, children went to a special school. In the school, they studied hieroglyphs and hieratic scripts. The children had to learn lots of different signs and symbols.<sup>(6)</sup>

### 2 My Community

The girls at my running club are my community. We are all from different parts of town and we go to different schools, but that doesn't matter.<sup>(3)</sup> We have lots of friends and families who live in our neighborhood.<sup>(9)</sup> We are always visiting each other's houses. Our favorite time is the summer when everyone has fun together in the park.<sup>(11)</sup> I think good citizenship is about looking after where you live and being kind to people.<sup>(12)</sup>

### 3 New Valley Governorate

New Valley Governorate is the biggest governorate in Egypt. It's a very large area but New Valley doesn't have a big population.<sup>(14)</sup> The population is about 245,000.<sup>(15)</sup> The capital of New Valley Governorate is Kharga.<sup>(16)</sup> Kharga is a famous place.<sup>(17)</sup> Kharga is an oasis town in the south of this region.<sup>(18)</sup>

### 4 An Egyptian craft

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt.<sup>(19)</sup> The most popular crafts are Khayameya and carpet making.<sup>(20)</sup> Carpet making is an Egyptian craft.<sup>(21)</sup> A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet.<sup>(22)</sup> The patterns are bright and colorful.<sup>(23)</sup> Each carpet is made carefully using Egyptian wool.<sup>(24)</sup>

# Test 5 on Unit 3

لصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

## A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Carpet making is another Egyptian .  
a. sports                      b. craft                      c. dance                      d. music
2. The carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian .  
a. metal                      b. wool                      c. plastic                      d. wood
3. It takes many                      to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet.  
a. weeks                      b. days                      c. years                      d. months
4. A skilled person can work                      .  
a. quickly                      b. slowly                      c. quietly                      d. badly

2 Listen and complete.

استمع واقرأ.

1. Omar lives in .
2. Alexandria is in the                      of Egypt.
3. Lots of                      sail in and out of the port.
4. Alexandria used to be the                      city of Egypt.

## B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

governorate – arms – Where – which

Adel : Hello, Maged ! Where do you live ?

Maged : Hi, Adel! I live in Upper Egypt.

Adel : (1)                      is Upper Egypt ?

Maged : It is in the south.

Adel : What (2)                      do you live in ?

Maged : I live in Aswan.

Adel : Great ! What is it famous for ?

Maged : Nubian dancing. It's lively and colorful. We move our  
(3)                      and feet to the rhythm of the music.

1 Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.

2 Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences

3 Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box

• اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

• اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل

• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for ruling dynasties. Important dynasties controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

Ancient Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.**

1. There are pictures and symbols in ..... and museums.  
 a. streets      b. clubs      c. schools      d. tombs
2. Ancient Egyptians ..... everything that happened.  
 a. worked      b. learnt      c. wrote down      d. used

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What are dynasties ?
4. Why was a scribe important in Ancient Egypt ?

## • 5 The reader

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Grandpa's favorite design is lotus flowers.
2. Zeinab doesn't like sewing.

T

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Grandpa liked sewing ..... best.  
 a. birds and animals      b. trees  
 c. geometric patterns      d. sunflower patterns
2. When Grandpa was young, he wanted to be a/an .....  
 a. singer      b. engineer      c. doctor      d. pilot

### Notes for parents

- 4 Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.
- 5 Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story



### C. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This is Aliaa's bag. It is

- a. his                      b. hers                      c. her                      d. mine

These shoes belong to Mazen. They are . . . . .

- a. his                      b. theirs                      c. him                      d. hers

2. This carpet is made . . . . . , using Egyptian wool.

- a. care                      b. caring                      c. careful                      d. carefully

4. It's your house. It's . . . . .

- a. their                      b. yours                      c. ours                      d. mine

2. Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. in – is – a governorate – What ?

2. area – large – It – a very – is.

3. Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

#### Folk dancing in Egypt

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

#### Guiding questions :

1. What is the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition ?
2. How do dancers perform it ?



6 Ask your child to choose the correct answer

7 Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly.

8 Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding questions.

اطلب من طفلك ان يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك ان يقرأ، ترتيب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

اطلب من طفلك ان يكتب نص مكون من حوالى ( 50 ) كلمة مستخدماً الأسس الإرشادية

# Test 6 on Unit 3

حساب مجموع من  
مختلف المحافظات

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

Create

## A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Braille is a code which uses combinations of  
a. patterns      b. shapes      c. dots      d. marks
- Braille system represents .....  
a. letters and numbers      b. shapes and numbers  
c. letters and dots      d. numbers and sums
- People who are ..... can use Braille.  
a. deaf      b. blind      c. strong      d. weak
- People have difficulty seeing use ..... instead of sight.  
a. touch      b. hearing      c. smell      d. taste

(Cairo - Hozha 2022 / Qena - Elwan)

2 Listen and complete.

- Folk musicians from ..... Egypt play Saidi music.
- Saidi music uses string instruments such as .....
- Farther ..... is the home of Nubian music.
- The most popular instruments in ..... music are the shabbaba and the rebaba.

(Luxor - Esna 2022 / Gharbia - Elsanio 2)

## B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

eat – fish – Coffee – Where

Waiter : Welcome, sir ? What would you like to (1) ?

Eyad : Thank you. I'd like (2) ..... and rice.

Waiter : What would you like to drink ?

Eyad : (3) ..... , please.

Waiter : What about desserts ?

Eyad : Do you have cheese cake ?

Waiter : Yes. Anything else ?

Eyad : No, thank you.

### Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer

2. Ask your child to listen and complete with the correct answer

3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with words from the box

عند من طعمك أن تسمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة  
عند من طعمك أن تسمع وتكمل بالإجابة الصحيحة

عند من طعمك أن تقرأ وتكمل المحادثة بكلمات من المربع



There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created khayameya to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using different colors. Carpet making is another Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The main idea of the text is about .....
  - Egyptian wool
  - Egyptian occasions
  - Egyptian crafts
  - skilled people
- Khayameya is a/an .....
  - tool
  - pattern
  - occasion
  - craft

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What was khayameya made for?
4. Why is it not easy to make many Egyptian carpets?

[illegible]

## The reader

**A** Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street.
2. Zeinab doesn't want to visit her grandparents.

T	F

**B** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Grandpa likes sewing Khayameya design with \_\_\_\_\_ .  
a. clothes                      b. lotus flowers      c. socks                      d. grass
2. \_\_\_\_\_ wanted to be an engineer in the past .  
a. Grandpa                      b. Zeinab                      c. Rasha                      d. Lobna

4 Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions

5 Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story

• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويحيط عن الأسئلة  
to the events of the story  
• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويحيط عن الأسئلة طبياً لأحداث القصة

### C. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Is this cup ..... ?  
a. your                      b. yours                      c. my                      d. their
2. Hazem lives in ..... grandpa's house.  
a. him                      b. her                      c. his                      d. hers
3. John ..... a bear in the garden an hour ago.  
a. seen                      b. sees                      c. see                      d. saw
4. We ..... excited after the show yesterday.  
a. did                      b. were                      c. was                      d. have

2. Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. belong - to - These - Mazen - shoes.
2. make - How - you - darker - do - green ?

3. Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

#### Ancient Egypt

محات عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

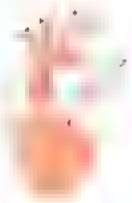
long history / pharaoh / unite / Upper Egypt

#### Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
7. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly.

## Unit 1 - Body and Senses

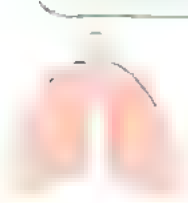
### Vocabulary



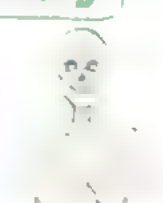
heart



stomach



lungs



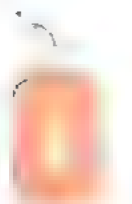
skeleton



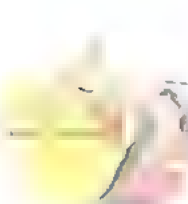
muscle



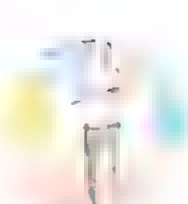
bones



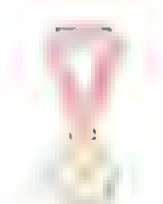
blood



champion



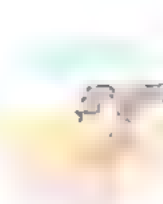
Olympic  
athlete



medal



volleyball

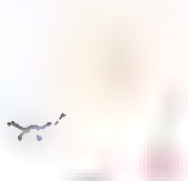


runner

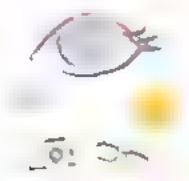
### Our senses



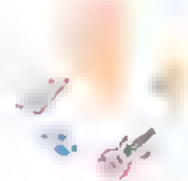
We taste  
with our  
tongue.



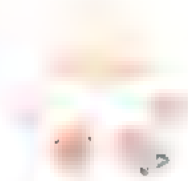
We feel  
with our  
skin.



We see  
with our  
eyes.



We hear  
with our  
ears.



We smell  
with our  
nose.

### The present simple tense

- How **does** she feel today?

- She **feels** disappointed.

- He **goes** to the park  
every week.

- They **play** volleyball  
on Mondays.



## Animal Kingdom

### Vocabulary



vertebrate



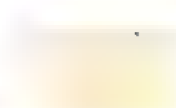
bat



reptile



amphibians



fur



beak



gills



fins



scales



invertebrate



ostrich



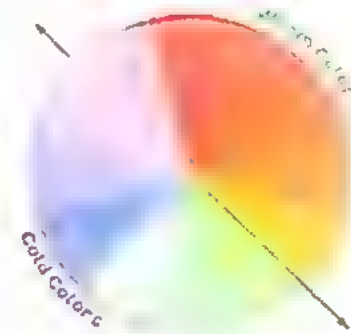
leopard

### Art

#### The Primary colors



#### The Secondary colors



### Language

#### Comparative adjectives

- The elephant is **bigger than** the lion.
- The whale shark is **smaller than** the blue whale.



#### Superlative adjectives

- The ostrich is **the biggest** bird.
- A tiny chameleon is **the smallest** reptile.





## General Exercises

## Unit 1, 2, 3

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It is difficult for deaf people to .....  
a. see                      b. hear                      c. smell                      d. touch
2. We can ..... with our skin.  
a. feel                      b. smell                      c. taste                      d. hear
3. They ..... Sandy's parents.  
a. have                      b. do                      c. is                      d. are
4. Nubian music is very ..... all over Egypt.  
a. different                      b. popular                      c. similar                      d. stranger
5. Ants are ..... humans.  
a. the strongest                      b. stronger than  
c. stronger                      d. strong
6. A frog is ..... smallest vertebrate.  
a. the                      b. than                      c. that                      d. as
7. A ..... is a mixture of people, places and ideas.  
a. club                      b. community                      c. school                      d. hospital
8. The boy is reading .....  
a. quicker                      b. quick                      c. quickly                      d. quickest
9. " ..... " means where a place is in the country.  
a. Culture                      b. Geography                      c. Location                      d. History
10. My aunt ..... my family last month.  
a. to visit                      b. visits                      c. visited                      d. visit
11. Egypt has ..... governorates.  
a. 25                      b. 26                      c. 27                      d. 28
12. We ..... a nice garden.  
a. has                      b. have                      c. did                      d. are

### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer

طلب من طفلك أن يجار الإجابة الصحيحة

Non-Fiction  
Reader

# Coral Reefs

الشعاب المرجانية



☆ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

### Vocabulary Part 1

tiny	صغير جداً	polyps	البوليبس
hard exoskeleton	هيكل خارجي صلب	clear	شفاف
ocean	بحر	algae	طحالب
organisms	الكائنات	shallow	ضحل
tropical fish	أسماك استوائية	habitat	بيئة

### Vocabulary Part 2

camouflage	مخفية (خفية)	unusual	غير عادي
leave	يغادر	global warming	ارتفاع حرارة الأرض
temperature	درجة حرارة	coral bleaching	احمرار المرجان
ecosystem	النظام البيئي	marine	بحري
pollution	تلوث	rise	ارتفاع
reduce	يقلل	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر

☆ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Word	Definition
exoskeleton لهيكل خارجي	a skeleton that is on the outside of an invertebrate's body هو هيكل يوجد خارج جسم الحيوان اللافقاري
polyp (البوليب)	a very small and simple creature that lives in the sea مخلوق دقيق جداً وبسيط يعيش في البحر
organism كائن حي	a living animal or plant حيوان أو نبات حي
clear شفاف	no color, you can see through it بدون لون، تستطيع أن ترى من خلاله
shallow ضحل	not deep; in the sea or a river, the water doesn't go down very far ليس عميق؛ المياه لا تكون عميقة في البحر أو النهر
algae طحالب	very simple organisms that live in water كائنات حية دقيقة تعيش في المياه.

### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen and repeat the words.
- Help your child to read and identify the given definitions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع وردد الكلمات  
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويعرف على التعريفات المعطاة



## Some information

1. Coral reefs are made of polyps which had a hard exoskeleton.

- الشعاب المرجانية تتكون من البوليب والتي لديها هكل خارجى صلب.

2. Polyps grow into different shapes and sizes.

- "البوليب" ينمو فى أشكال وأحجام مختلفة.

3. Most coral reefs don't have a color.

- أغلب الشعاب المرجانية لبس لها لون.

4. Polyps' color comes from tiny algae that live inside.

- تأتى ألوان البوليب من الطحالب الدقيقة التى تعيش بداخلها.

5. Coral polyps can live in all the oceans and in warm seas.

- الشعاب يمكنها أن تعيش فى كل المحيطات والبحار الدافئة.

6. Coral reefs grow together in shallow water as they need sunlight to live and grow.

- تنمو الشعاب المرجانية معًا فى المياه الضحلة لأنها تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس كي تنمو وتعيش.

7. The unusual shapes of coral reefs also give a lot of places to hide.

- الأشكال غير العادية للشعاب المرجانية توفر الكثير من الأماكن للاختباء.

8. The largest coral reef system in Africa and the third largest reef system in the world is the Red Sea coral reef.

- أكبر نظام للشعاب المرجانية فى أفريقيا وثالث أكبر نظام للشعاب المرجانية فى العالم هو الشعاب المرجانية للبحر الأحمر.

9. The seas and oceans on Earth are getting warmer because of the global warming.

- تصبح البحار والمحيطات على كوكب الأرض أكثر سخونة بسبب ظاهرة الاحتباس الحرارى.

10. When the algae leave, the reef is pale and white. This is called "Coral bleaching".

- عندما ترحل الطحالب تصبح الشعاب شاحبه وبيضاء وهذا يسمى بـ "ابيضاض الشعاب".

11. When a reef loses its color, the coral dies.

- عندما تفقد الشعاب لونها تموت.

12. To protect coral reefs we need to have less pollution.

- لنحمى الشعاب المرجانية نحتاج إلى تقليل التلوث.

☆ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

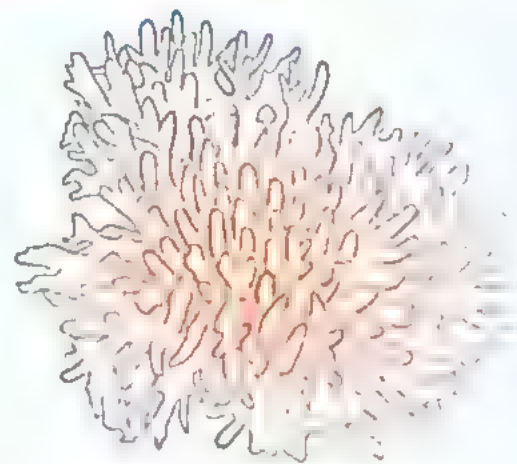
### What are coral reefs ?

They look like they are made of plants, but this is wrong. Coral reefs<sup>(1)</sup> are made of thousands of tiny invertebrates<sup>(2)</sup>, called polyps<sup>(3)</sup>. They have a hard exoskeleton<sup>(4)</sup>, and they don't move - they stay in the same place all the time.

Different species of polyps grow into different shapes and sizes, but they all grow very slowly. They can sometimes grow for more than ten thousand years.

We think coral reefs have very bright colors<sup>(5)</sup>. However, most coral polyps don't have a color. They have clear bodies and their exoskeletons are white. The color comes from tiny algae<sup>(6)</sup> that live inside the polyps. It is their bright colors that we can see.

In a small part of a coral reef, there are millions of these tiny organisms<sup>(7)</sup>.



Notes for parent:

1. Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny invertebrates.

2. Invertebrates are animals that do not have a backbone.

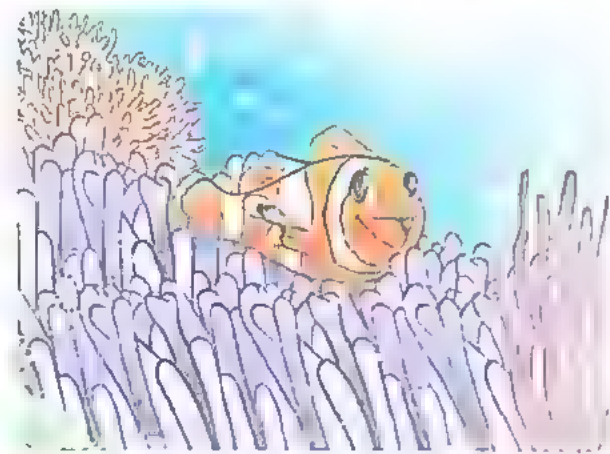
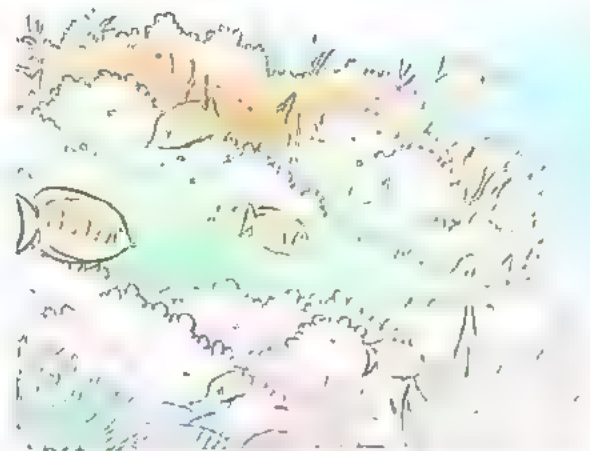
3. Polyps are small, tube-like animals that live in colonies.

4. Exoskeleton is a hard outer shell that protects the body.

Coral polyps can live in all the oceans around the world, in very cold water and in warm seas<sup>(11)</sup>. They only grow together and make coral reefs in warm water. The water must be shallow<sup>(12)</sup> too, because the reefs need sunlight<sup>(13)</sup> to live and to grow.

Coral reefs are homes<sup>(12)</sup> for many other animals, so they are a very important habitat. Tropical fish<sup>(13)</sup> often have bright colors so they can hide safely in a reef. It is a type of camouflage<sup>(14)</sup>. The unusual shapes of coral reefs also give lots of places to hide<sup>(15)</sup>.

The Red Sea coral reef is the largest coral reef system in Africa and the third largest reef system in the world. It is about 4,000 kilometers long, and covers over 2,000 square kilometers.



• Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

يمكن أن يعيش سلسلة المرجانية في جميع المحيطات حول العالم. في المياه شديدة البرودة وفي البحار الدافئة. فهي تنمو فقط في المياه الدافئة يجب أن يكون المياه ضحلة أيضاً لأن الشعاب المرجانية تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس لتعيش وتنمو. الشعاب المرجانية هي موطن للعديد من الحيوانات. أخرى لذلك فهي موطن هام جداً. غالباً ما تكون الشعاب المرجانية راحية اللون حيث يمكن من إخفاءها في الشعاب المرجانية. وقد نوع من السمكة (سمكة) سيج أيضاً لا يمكن أن تعيش في الشعاب المرجانية أماكن كثيرة للأحياء. أن الشعاب المرجانية خضراء وسحر. حجمه 400 كم مربع. الشعاب المرجانية في أفريقيا وأنت أكبر نظام للشعاب في العالم وهو حوالي 4 كيلو متر ويعطى أكثر من 2 كيلو متر مربع.

### Read and write T(True) or F (False).

1. Coral reefs have bright colors. ☐
2. Coral reefs don't need sunlight. ☐
3. Tropical fish live in coral reefs. ☐
4. Polyps have a hard exoskeleton. ☐
5. Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny vertebrates. ☐
6. Polyps don't move. ☐
7. Coral polyps have a color. ☐
8. Coral polyps can live in all the lakes around the world. ☐
9. Tropical fish can hide safely in a reef. ☐
10. Coral reefs are homes for many animals. ☐

### Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Coral polyps can live in all the \_\_\_\_\_ around the world.  
a. mountains    b. lakes    c. oceans    d. pools
2. The color of the coral reefs comes from tiny \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. alga    b. ocean    c. moon    d. sunlight
3. The Red Sea coral reefs are the \_\_\_\_\_ in Africa.  
a. smallest    b. largest    c. tallest    d. fattest
4. Polyps stay in the \_\_\_\_\_ place all the time.  
a. different    b. shape    c. same    d. beside
5. Coral polyps can live in \_\_\_\_\_ water.  
a. shallow    b. behind    c. beside    d. deep

### Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read and write T (True) or F (False). اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة (F) للإجابة الخاطئة
2. Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة







Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Global warming makes oceans and seas cold.
2. The water in the Red Sea is warm.
3. We need to have less pollution in the world's oceans.
4. The algae give the coral reefs its bright colors.
5. Some coral reefs in the Red Sea can survive changes in temperature.

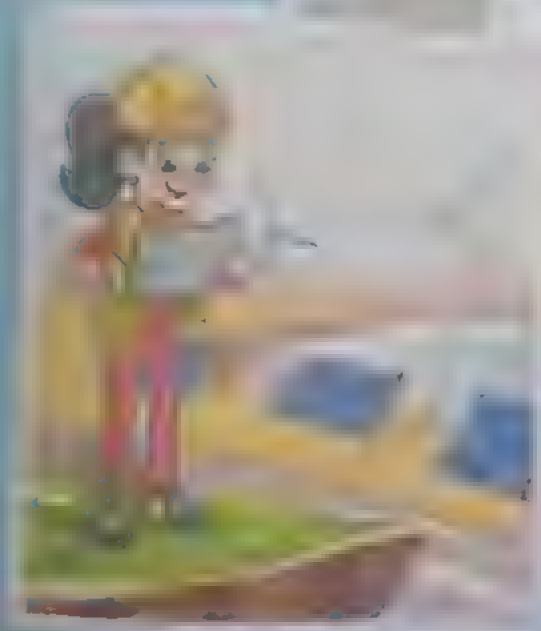
Choose the correct answer from the options.

1. Coral reefs look like they are made of .....  
 a. plants                      b. wood                      c. paper                      d. stone
2. The water of the Red Sea is ..... than other seas.  
 a. higher                      b. cooler                      c. warmer                      d. hotter
3. We need to ..... global warming.  
 a. reduce                      b. increase                      c. decrease                      d. use

1. Ask your child to read and write (True) or (False)
2. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

# Theme 2

## Myself and others





• دراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.  
• التقييمات الشهرية في الدراسة التفاعلية.

• استخدام كارت المعاصر للقراءة والكتابة.  
• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.  
• دراسة المعاصر للمهارات.



### Aims of Unit Four :

In this unit I will .....

- compare life in the city and in the country.  
- أقرن بين الحياة في المدينة وفي القرية.
- form and use regular and irregular plural nouns.  
- اكون واستخدم أسماء الجمع المنتظمة والنهر منتظمة.
- read about crafts and heritage industries.  
- اقرأ عن الحرف والصناعات التراثية.

### الأهداف العامة للوحدة الرابعة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف .....

- use subordinating conjunctions in sentences.  
- استخدم الروابط في الجمل للتتابع.
- multiply and divide numbers.  
- ضرب وأقسام الأرقام.
- add and subtract fractions.  
- اجمع وأطرح الكسور.
- plan smart growth for a city.  
- خطط نمو ذكي لمدينة.

# Rural and urban places



## Vocabulary

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### Key vocabulary

densely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية عالية	isolated	معزول
sparsely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة	metropolitan	عاصمي
pedestrian	مشاة	urban	حضرى / مدنى
congestion	ازدحام (كحطام)	rural	قروى / ريفى

### Extra vocabulary

sparse	ضئيل / قليل	workshops	ورش عمل
dense	كثيف / كثير	environment	بيئة
services	خدمات	Greater Cairo	القاهرة الكبرى
city	مدينة (كبيرة)	population	تعداد السكان
village	قرية	inhabitants	السكان

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

##### Present

live يعيش  
want يريد

##### Past

lived  
wanted

#### Irregular

##### Present

tell يخبر  
have يملك  
do يفعل

##### Past

told  
had  
did

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير و حروف جر هامة

• tell about

يخبر عن

• close to

قرب من

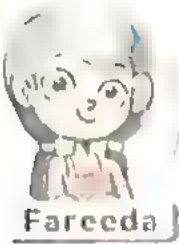
• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات و يردددهم

The oldest city in Egypt is probably Fayoum. Archeologists say that people started living there more than 6 000 years ago.

ربما تكون أقدم مدينة في مصر هي مدينة الفيوم. يقول علماء الآثار أن الناس بدأوا العيش هناك منذ أكثر من ٦٠٠٠ عام مضى.

Look, listen and read



Fareeda

Hello, my name's Fareeda  
and I want to tell you  
about where I live. I live  
in Greater Cairo. It's  
a metropolitan area

and densely populated<sup>(9)</sup>. There are more  
than 20 million inhabitants<sup>(10)</sup>, so it's  
a very busy place. There are a lot of  
cars so there's also congestion<sup>(11)</sup>.

If you are a pedestrian<sup>(12)</sup>, you have  
to be very careful.



Zein

Hi there. I'm Zein. I'm  
going to tell you about  
my village. It's sparsely  
populated<sup>(13)</sup> – only about  
700 people live here. It's

also a very traditional place. It's in  
the desert so it's an isolated<sup>(14)</sup> place,  
too. We have a lot of services close  
to my family's home though, like  
shops, workshops, and my school.

مناطق حضرية  
أكثر سكاناً  
مزدحم  
مشاة  
أحياء سكنية  
مختلطة  
متروبول

**Answer**  
the following  
questions

**Learn** 1. Where does Fareeda live?  
- She lives in Greater Cairo.

**Practice** 2. What services are in Zein's village?

### Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the text

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويسمع ويعرف النص

لدينا اسمي فريده وأريد أن أخبرك عن مكان سكني. أنا عيش في القاهرة الكبرى - إنها منطقة حضرية وذات كثافة سكانية عالية. فهناك أكثر من ٢٠ مليون سكاكن، لذلك  
هناك مزدحم جداً. يوجد الكثير من السيارات لذلك يوجد أيضاً ازدحام. فانا كبت في المشاه يحب أن يكون حذراً جداً  
سبحاً أنا من مشاهدين عن فريدي. إنها ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة جداً. ٧ شخص فقط يعيشون هنا. إنه أيضاً مكان تقليدي جداً. إنه في الصحراء لذا فهو مكان  
معتدل. لدينا الكثير من الخدمات بالقرب من منزل عائلتي، مثل متحلات وورش العمل ومدرستي



# Dictation



• لإتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

## Read and spell

## Complete

## Write

city

c \_ \_ y

village

vi \_ \_ a \_ e

densely populated

d \_ \_ sely p \_ p \_ \_ ated

sparsely populated

s \_ \_ rsely p \_ \_ ulated

pedestrian

p \_ \_ e \_ \_ rian

congestion

c \_ \_ ge \_ tion

isolated

i \_ \_ lated

desert

d \_ \_ ert

services

s \_ \_ vi \_ es

environment

e \_ \_ iro \_ me \_ t

rural

ru \_ \_ l

urban

u \_ \_ an

workshops

w \_ \_ ksh \_ \_ s

• Help your child read , spell , complete and write the words.

• ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ ، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات

# General Exercises

on level 1

بخصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Zein lives in a/an .....  
 a. city      b. oasis      c. village      d. town
2. Zein lives in a very ..... place.  
 a. new      b. traditional      c. old      d. metropolitan
3. Zein's village is in the .....  
 a. desert      b. city      c. forest      d. sea
4. We have a lot of services close to my family's .....  
 a. museum      b. home      c. office      d. city

2 Listen and complete.

1. I live in ..... Cairo.
2. The Greater Cairo is a ..... populated area.
3. There are more than 20 million .....
4. If you are a ..... , you have to be very careful.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

sparsely - workshops - pedestrian - village

Ahmed : Where do you live ?

Ali : I live in a (1) .....

Ahmed : Is it sparsely or densely populated ?

A : It's (2) ..... populated - only about 700 people live here.

Ahmed : What services are there ?

A : We have a lot of services, like shops, ..... , and schools.

## Notes for parents

- 1 Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer
- 2 Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences
- 3 Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box

1. استمع إلى التسجيل وجمع الإجابة الصحيحة

2. استمع إلى التسجيل واكمل الجمل

3. اقرأ مني واطلع ان يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق اعلاه

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Hello, my name is Fareeda and I want to tell you where I live. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Fareeda tells us about where she .....  
a. lives                      b. plays                      c. works                      d. goes
2. Fareeda's city is very .....  
a. lazy                      b. crazy                      c. busy                      d. isolated

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many people are there in Fareeda's area ?

.....

4. Why is there congestion in Fareeda's city ?

.....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. place - village - a - traditional - My - very - is.

.....

2. Egypt - The oldest - is - Fayoum - city - in.

.....

3. populated - Is - sparsely - it - densely - or ?

.....

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.  
5. Ask your child to order the words and write them correctly.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويحجب عن الأسئلة  
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يربط الكلمات ويكتبهم بطريقة صحيحة



## Vocabulary



Listen and repeat.

الاستماع وردد.

## Key vocabulary

goose - geese	أوزة - أوز	man - men	رجل - رجال
buffalo(es)	حاموسة - جاموس	woman - women	سيدة - سيدات
sheep	خروف - خراف	child - children	طفل - أطفال
person - people	شخص - أشخاص	goslings	صغار الأوز

## Extra vocabulary

several	العديد	interview	مقابلة رسمية
onion(s)	بصلة - بصل	irrigation	عملية الري
donkey	حمار	program	برنامج
goods	بضائع	lucky	مخطوظ
geographic features	خصائص جغرافية	coal	فحم
historically	تاريخيًا	aluminum	معدن الألومنيوم
natural resources	المصادر الطبيعية	copper	نحاس

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

## Regular

## Present

## Past

develop	يطور	developed
wonder	يتساءل / يتعجب	wondered
imagine	يتخيل	imagined
trade	يقايض / يتاجر	traded

## Irregular

## Present

## Past

grow	يزرع	grew
have	يملك	had
give	يعطي	gave

## Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات و يردد لهم

More people live in rural areas than urban areas in Egypt

في مصر يعيش أكثر الناس في المناطق الريفية أكثر من المناطق الحضرية

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

• on the Nile	على شاطئ النيل	• half of	منتصف
• of course	بالطبع	• used to + (inf.)	اعتاد أن
• have in common	لديهم نقاط مشتركة	• grown up	بالغ - راشد

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

### Look and write the words.

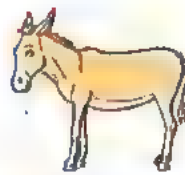
1.



2.



3.



4.



### ★ Look, listen and read.



Waleed

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't

have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese on the river.

My family lives in a traditional home. There are seven people living in it. There are two men in my family - my dad and my grandpa - and two women - my mom and my grandma.

And of course, there are some children too! I have two sisters, but there aren't any babies because we're all grown up. Do you have any brothers or sisters?



- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر ويكتب الكلمات أسفل كل صورة.
- Ask your child to look and write the words under each picture.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويقرأ النص.
- Help your child look, listen and read the text.

اسمى وليد أعيش في قرية صغيرة على النيل أبي مزارع هو يزرع الطماطم، البطاطس، البصل، الخوخ، التين، الفواكه، الخ. ولدي بعض الحيوانات أيضاً فيوجد ستة من الخراف وثمان من الحماموس يوجد بعض الحمير في قريتي، ولكني لا أملك أي منهم الآن يمكنكم أن تروا الفطير في الشارع، وإذا كنت محظوظاً سمري بعض "عصافير" الحمير في النهر تعيش أسرني في منزل تقليدي يوجد سبعة أفراد يعيشون فيه يوجد رجلان في عائلتي هما أبي وحدي، وامرأتان هما أمي وحدي، وانضع بعض الأطفال أيضاً أنا بدي أختان ولكن لا يوجد أطفال رضع لأننا جميعاً كبيراً هل لديك أي أخوة أو أخوات؟



## Language

### Plural صيغة الجمع

#### 1 Regular plural nouns

أسماء الجمع المنتظمة

Noun الاسم	Plural الجمع	Examples أمثلة
Most nouns معظم الأسماء	يضاف لها (s)	girl → girls cat → cats
Nouns end in (z / s / ss / x / o / sh / ch)	يضاف لها (es)	fox → foxes tomato → tomatoes
Nouns end in (vowel + o)	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (o) وقبلها حرف متحرك يضاف لها (s)	zoo → zoos radio → radios
Nouns end in (consonant + y)	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (y) قبله حرف ساكن، يحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ويضاف (es)	city → cities baby → babies family → families
Nouns end in -f	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (f) يحول حرف (f) إلى (v) ويضاف لها (es)	shelf → shelves scarf → scarves

#### 2 Irregular plural nouns

أسماء الجمع غير المنتظمة

★ We don't add -s or -es but they are learnt as they are.  
لا يضاف لها (-s) أو (-es) ولكنها تحفظ كما هي.



Some irregular nouns don't change in the plural.  
بعض الأسماء الغير منتظمة لا يتغير شكلها من المفرد إلى الجمع.

**Note :** تحذف أداة (a/an) عند جمع الاسم

Singular	Plural
a woman	women
a goose	geese
a man	men
a child	children
a fish	fish
a sheep	sheep
a tooth	teeth
a foot	feet
an ox	oxen
a mouse	mice
a person	people

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child identify regular and irregular plural nouns.   
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على جمع الأسماء المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة.



## Pop Quiz on Language

### 1 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. My grandmother has four .....  
☐ children ☐ child
2. Tigers have sharp .....  
☐ tooth ☐ teeth
3. My ..... hurt.  
☐ feet ☐ foot
4. Cats like to catch .....  
☐ mice ☐ mouse
5. A ..... has two wings.  
☐ geese ☐ goose
6. Three ..... are waiting in line.  
☐ woman ☐ women
7. The farmer has twelve .....  
☐ sheep ☐ a sheep
8. Many ..... like pizza.  
☐ people ☐ person

### 2 Read and write the correct plural form of the words.

1. My (child) ..... hate eating pasta.
2. The (tomato) ..... I bought are in the fridge.
3. They're sending some (man) ..... to fix the broken tables.
4. How many (mango) ..... do you eat?

### 3 Write the plural form.

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a man ..... men | 2. a desk .....   |
| 3. a fish .....    | 4. a woman .....  |
| 5. a baby .....    | 6. a foot .....   |
| 7. a mouse .....   | 8. a cherry ..... |
| 9. a tooth .....   | 10. a glass ..... |

1 Ask your child to read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

2 Ask your child to read and write the correct plural for the given words

3 Ask your child to write the plural to the given words.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب صيغة الجمع الصحيحة للكلمات المعطاة.

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب صيغة الجمع للكلمات المعطاة.

★ Listen, read and role-play.

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

**Presenter** : Have you ever wondered why cities develop where they do ? As you can probably imagine, there are several reasons. Today we are talking to Dr. Hossam about this topic. Welcome to our program, Dr. Hossam.

هل تساءلت يوماً لماذا تتطور المدن في مكان إقامتها؟ كما يمكنك أن تتخيل على الأرجح، هناك عدة أسباب. اليوم نتحدث مع الدكتور حسام حول هذا الموضوع. مرحباً بكم في برنامجنا يا دكتور حسام.

**Dr. Hossam** : Thank you. So, one of the main reasons is for food and transportation. Have you ever noticed that a lot of cities are developed near bodies of water ? These can be rivers, lakes or oceans.

شكراً لك. لذا، فإن أحد الأسباب الرئيسية هو الطعام والمواصلات. هل سبق لك أن لاحظت أن الكثير من المدن قد تم تطويرها بالقرب من المسطحات المائية؟ يمكن أن تكون هذه الأنهار أو البحيرات أو المحيطات.

**Presenter** : So why are bodies of water important for cities then ?  
لماذا تعتبر المسطحات المائية مهمة للمدن إذن؟

**Dr. Hossam** : For one thing, they have animals in them, like fish and birds, which gives people food to eat. Another important reason is that people can use them for transportation. If a city wants to trade its goods with other places, they can be more easily moved to other places on boats. Another very important reason is that fresh water can be used for irrigation. Farmers need to water their plants, you know.

أحد الأسباب، لديهم حيوانات فيها، مثل الأسماك والطيور، مما يعطي الناس طعاماً ليأكلوه. سبب آخر مهم هو أن الناس يستخدمونها للنقل. إذا زادت مدينة أن تتاجر بسلعها مع أماكن أخرى، فيمكن أن يتم نقلهم بسهولة إلى أماكن أخرى على متن القوارب. سبب آخر مهم للغاية هو أنه يمكن استخدام المياه العذبة للري. يحتاج المزارعون إلى سقي نباتاتهم، كما تعلم.

**Notes for parents**

- Help your child to listen, read the dialogue and role-play it with his/her.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ المحادثة ويتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

**Presenter** : Are there any other geographic features which make good places to start a city ?

هل هناك أي ميزات جغرافية أخرى تشكل أماكن جيدة لبدء مدينة؟

**Dr. Hossam** : Yes, there are. Mountains are another place around the world where cities develop. Cities develop in the mountains because historically they are easier to protect. There are also minerals and good water sources in some mountains. The only bad part is that transportation is more difficult so they might be more isolated than cities near water.

نعم ، يوجد. هناك الجبال هي مكان آخر حول العالم تتطور فيه المدن. تتطور المدن في الجبال لأنها تاريخيًا يسهل حمايتها. كما توجد معادن ومصادر مياه جيدة في بعض الجبال. الجزء السيئ الوحيد هو أن التنقل أصعب لذا فقد يكونون أكثر عزلة من المدن القريبة من المياه.

**Presenter** : Oh, I didn't think of that. Are there any more reasons ?

أوه، لم أفكر في ذلك. هل هناك أسباب أخرى؟

**Dr. Hossam** : Let me see. Well, a third big reason is because of natural resources. If there is a lot of natural resources in an area, a city may develop there.

دعني أرى. حسنًا، السبب الرئيسي الثالث هو الموارد الطبيعية. إذا كان هناك الكثير من الموارد الطبيعية في منطقة ما، فقد تتطور المدينة هناك.

**Presenter** : Can you give us an example ? هل يمكنك أن تعطينا مثالًا؟

**Dr. Hossam** : Of course - there are a lot of them, but oil, coal, aluminum, or copper are a few examples. Forests also give us a very important natural resource - paper.

بالطبع هناك الكثير منها، لكن النفط ، الفحم ، الألمنيوم والنحاس أمثلة قليلة. توفر لنا الغابات أيضًا موردًا طبيعيًا مهمًا للغاية - الورق.

**Presenter** : Very interesting. Thank you very much, Dr. Hossam.

مثير جدًا. شكرًا جزيلاً لك دكتور حسام.



# General Exercises

on Lesson 2

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

- 1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

irrigation - sheep - fish - goods

A lot of cities are developed near rivers, lakes or oceans. They have animals, like (1) ..... and birds, which give people food to eat. A city trades its (2) ..... with other places, they can be more easily moved to other places on boats. Fresh water can be used for (3) .....

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- How many ..... does your cat catch ?  
a. mouse's      b. mice      c. a mouse      d. mouse
- There are three ..... work in my office.  
a. a person      b. person's      c. person      d. people
- Three ..... are waiting in line.  
a. woman      b. women      c. a woman      d. woman's
- ..... like water.  
a. Geese      b. Goose      c. Goose's      d. A goose

- 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. from - get - the water - People - food.

2. see - the - cats - street - can - You - in.

3. a small - I - village - live in - the Nile - on.

## Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box.

2. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

3. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمات من المربع.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.



**4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

Hello, I'm Waleed's dad and this is my farm. I've got some sheep and two buffaloes on my farm. We used to have donkeys but we don't have any now. I grow a lot of dates, onions and some potatoes. We live near the river and this year, there are two Egyptian geese on the river. And they have three young goslings. They're really small.

I live in a traditional house with my family. I have three children. Waleed is my youngest child. The women in my family are my wife and my mother. And there are two men, me and my dad.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Waleed's family lives near the .....  
a. ocean                      b. desert                      c. river                      d. forest
2. The Egyptian geese have three young .....  
a. donkeys                      b. sheep                      c. buffaloes                      d. goslings

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Who is Waleed ?

4. What does Waleed's dad grow ?

**5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.**

Your village life

مجاہب عنہ فی نہایۃ الکتاہ

**Guiding questions :**

1. Where do you live ?
2. What is your father's job ?
3. What does he do ?
4. What services are there ?



4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة

5. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (50) كلمة مستخدماً الأسئلة الإرشادية المعطاة.

# Lesson

## 3

### • Language



#### Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

سمّع وردد.

#### Key vocabulary

artisans	حرفيون	dye	صبغ / مصغ
warp	خيوط النسج	spin	ن / ينسج
yarn	خبط / غزل	wool	وف
carpet	سجادة	weave	ح

#### Extra vocabulary

workshop	ورشة عمل	spun cotton	نسيج المسج
craft	حرفة / مهارة	machine	آلة / كينة
dark colors	ألوان غامقة - داكنة	loom	ن (اسم آلة)
synthetic	صناعي - مصطنع	geometric patterns	نمط هندسية
structure	تركيب - أساس	skill	مهاره

#### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

##### Present

explain	يشرح
collect	يجمع
prefer	يفضل
design	يصمم
decorate	يزين
guess	يخمن
dry	يجفف
boil	يغلي

##### Past

explained
collected
preferred
designed
decorated
guessed
dried
boiled

#### Irregular

##### Present

learn	يتعلم
take	يأخذ
make	يصنع

##### Past

learned / learnt
took
made

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them

ساعد طفلك أن يسمع إلى الكلمات وردد لهم

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- traditional Egyptian crafts  
الحرف اليدوية المصرية التقليدية
- spinning and weaving workshop  
ورشة الغزل والنسيج
- make by hand  
يصنع يدويًا

- ready for .....  
مستعد ل.....
- the same  
مطابق - مماثل
- pick out  
يختار / يلتقط
- make it into  
يصنعوا منه / يحولوا إلى

### ★ Listen and read.

تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع | Pop Quiz

## Visiting a Carpet Workshop



Last summer I really wanted to learn about traditional Egyptian **crafts**<sup>(1)</sup>. So, my grandma took me to a **spinning**<sup>(2)</sup> and **weaving**<sup>(3)</sup>

workshop so that I could learn about this craft. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpets while we watched them **weave**<sup>(4)</sup>.

First, they collect the wool from sheep. They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it. The **artisans**<sup>(5)</sup> spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it.

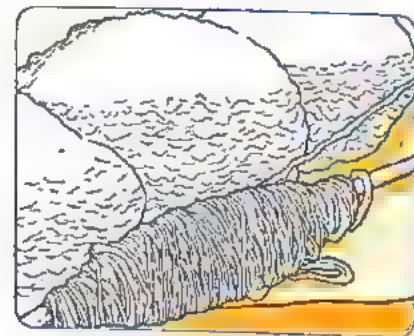
Then, they need to dye the **yarn**<sup>(6)</sup>-that is how it gets its color. I think the bright colors are the most beautiful ones even though some people prefer dark colors.

### Check Vocabulary

- (1) حرف
- (2) غزل
- (3) نسيج
- (4) ينسج
- (5) حرفيون
- (6) خيط - غزل



dye



spin

• Help your child listen to the text and read it.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى النص ويقرأه.

رَبْرَه ورشة سجاد في الصيف الماضي كنت أريد حقًا أن أتعلم عن الحرف المصرية التقليدية لذلك، أخذتني جدتي إلى ورشة الغزل والنسيج لكي أستطيع أن أتعلم عن هذه الحرفة. قام المرشد بتوضيح كيف يصنع الحرفيون السجاد عندما كنا نشاهدهم وهم ينسجون أولًا، يقومون بجمع الصوف من الأغنام. وعليهم أن يظفروا ويغسلوا ويحفظوا الصوف قبل أن يستخدموه يقوم الحرفيون بغزل الصوف ليصنعوا منه خيوط بعد تنظيفه. ثم يحتاجون إلى أن يقومون بصنع الخيط هذه هي الطريقة التي تحصل بها على لونها. اعتقد أن الألوان الزاهية هي الأكثر جمالًا على الرغم من أن بعض الناس يفضلون الألوان الداكنة.



These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes, although some other workshops use synthetic dyes. My grandma and I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional. So, now I guess you're wondering how they dye the wool. Well, I learned that different plants and roots are first grown in a **rural**<sup>(7)</sup> village.

Then they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool. They have to **boil**<sup>(8)</sup> the yarn with the dyes, and then let it dry. As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the **warp**<sup>(9)</sup>. The warp is the structure of the **carpet**<sup>(10)</sup>. They make the warp using spun Egyptian **cotton**<sup>(11)</sup>. Later, they use the warp and the **dyed wool**<sup>(12)</sup> to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

My grandma let me pick out a carpet for my bedroom. Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make just one carpet.

#### Check Vocabulary

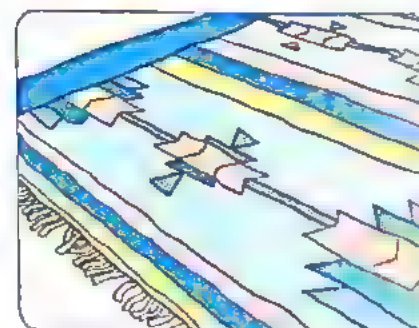
- (7) قروي
- (8) يغلي
- (9) خيوط سداة النسيج
- (10) سجادة
- (11) قطن
- (12) صوف



yarn



warp



carpet

#### Notes for parents

نستخدم هؤلاء الحرفيون فقط الأصباغ النباتية الطبيعية، على الرغم من أن بعض ورش العمل الأخرى تستخدم الأصباغ الصناعية. أنا وحماتي نحب الأصباغ الطبيعية لأنها تقليدية أكثر. لذلك، الآن أنا أخشى أنك تسأل كيف يقومون بصناعة الصوف. حسنًا، لقد تعلمت أن النباتات والحدود المختلفة نمت في البداية في قرية ريفية. لم يستخدموا هذه النباتات والحدود لصنع أصباغ جميلة لتلوين الصوف. يجب أن يقوموا بغلي الخيوط مع الأصباغ وبعد ذلك يتركوه لتجف. فمجرد أن يجف، يستطيعون أن يستخدموه في نسيج السجاد. قبل أن ينسج الحرفيون السجاد كان عليهم أن يصنعوا خيوط النسيج. فالخيوط هي نسيج السجاد. أنهم يصنعون الخيوط باستخدام القطن المصري المقروء. ومؤخرًا يستخدمون نسيج السجاد والصوف المصنوع لصنع سجاد جميل. يقوم الحرفيون بصناعة السجاد اليدوي مستخدمين ماكينات تسمى النول. إنهم يصبغون ألوان مختلفة من الغزل لصنع أنماط هندسية جميلة. جعلني اختيار سجادة أعرفه يومي. ففي كل مرة أنظر إليها، أتذكر مدى العمل والمهارة التي استغرقت لعمل سجادة واحدة فقط.

## Language

### The conjunctions الروابط

#### 1 After

بعد

ex. - After I went to the club, I met my friends there.

#### 2 Before

قبل

ex. - We had to chop the vegetables **before** we cooked them.

#### 3 So that

لكي

(so that + السبب أو الغرض)

ex. - Salma is studying English **so that** she can be a journalist.

#### 4 Although

على الرغم من

- لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

ex. - Tamer couldn't eat **although** he was hungry.

#### 5 Even though

رغم أن

- لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

ex. - I watched Amr play football **even though** I don't like sports.

#### 6 While

بينما / أثناء

- لربط حدثان في نفس التوقيت.

ex. - We chatted with our friends **while** we waited for the bus.

#### 7 Every time

كل مرة

ex. - My little sister dances **every time** she hears this song.

#### 8 As soon as

بمجرد أن

- لربط فكرتين أو حدثين متتاليتين.

ex. - Malak ran inside **as soon as** it started raining.





## Pop Quiz on Language

### 1 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. ... I was tired, I managed to finish the work.  
☐ Although                      ☐ But                      ☐ And
2. It was late ..... I went home.  
☐ so that                      ☐ as soon as                      ☐ but
3. He was watching TV ..... I was studying.  
☐ when                      ☐ while                      ☐ although
4. Hamza ran upstairs to see his little brother ..... he got home.  
☐ but                      ☐ as soon as                      ☐ even though
5. I opened the present yesterday ..... I came back home.  
☐ after                      ☐ but                      ☐ or
6. .... the lesson ends, I'll go home.  
☐ As soon as                      ☐ Before                      ☐ Until

### 2 Read and circle the correct answer.

1. I have lunch ..... I get home from school.  
as soon as                      while                      even though                      so that
2. I understand what I learned ..... I did my homework.  
while                      before                      so that                      even though
3. She was studying ..... she was sick.  
while                      although                      every time                      before
4. .... I went home, I took a shower.  
Before                      So that                      While                      As soon as

#### Notes for parents

# General Exercises

## on Lesson 3

لصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

Understand

Apply

Create

### 1 Listen and complete.

1. The warp is the structure of the .....
2. The artisans can ..... the carpets.
3. The artisans make the carpets by .....
4. They add the different colored .. to make geometric patterns.

### 2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. from - wool - The artisans - sheep - the - collect.

2. use - weave - They - to - a carpet - yarn - can.

### 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

( loom - carpet - artisans - wool )

Salma's grandma took her to a spinning and weaving workshop. The guide at the workshop explained how the (1) ..... make the carpets. They collect the wool from the sheep. They have to clean, wash and dry the (2) ..... before they can use it. Artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn. They dye the yarn then the artisans can weave a (3) .....

1. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
2. Ask your child to order the words to make correct sentences.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل

3. Ask your child to read and complete the text with words from the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يربط الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I change my clothes ..... I get home from school.  
a. so that                      b. as soon as                      c. also                      d. even though
2. I don't talk ..... the teacher is talking.  
a. while                      b. before                      c. even so                      d. as soon as
3. I do my homework ..... I can get good grades.  
a. before                      b. every time                      c. while                      d. so that
4. I'll have a bath ..... I go to work.  
a. as soon as                      b. while                      c. before                      d. every time

**5 Read the text and answer the questions below.**

My grandma and I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional. So, now I guess you're wondering how the artisans dye the wool. Well, I learned that different plants and roots are first grown in a rural village. Then, they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. They use dyes to ..... the wool.  
a. color                      b. use                      c. dry                      d. cry
2. You wonder how the ..... dye the wool.  
a. artisans                      b. roots                      c. farmers                      d. teachers

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Why do they like natural vegetable dyes ?

.....

4. Why do they use plants and roots ?

.....

**Notes for parents**

4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
5. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.



## Vocabulary



Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

tops	بحل دوار	potter	صانع الحرف - فخاري
work on a project	ينفذ مشروع	pots	أواني
in group of	في مجموعة مكونة من	sack	كيس
sell → sold	سبع ← باع	loaf	رغيف خبز

## Learn

## Multiplication word problem

Eman has 3 plates.

There are 2 oranges in each plate.

How many oranges are there in all ?



• Understand

• Plan

• Solve



## Understand

- What do you want to find out ? Circle the question.
- What fact do you need ? Underline them.



## Plan

- Write a number sentence to solve.  $3 \times 2 = ?$



## Solve


- You can use one of these different ways to solve the problem.

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• Help your child learn about different ways to solve multiplication word problem.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.  
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن طرق مختلفة لحل المسائل الكلامية الخاصة بعملية الضرب.

Using repeated addition

  
 $2 + 2 + 2 = 6$

Using skip counting



Using objects



These are 3 rows of 2 arrays.

There are 6 objects.

So,  $3 \times 2 = 6$



### Pop Quiz on Math

- Read and match each problem to the suitable multiplication sentence.

- Ali downloaded 3 games onto his tablet. The next day he downloaded 3 more.



How many games has he downloaded ?

$6 \times 2 = 12$

- A guitar has 6 strings.



How many strings are there in 2 guitars ?

$2 \times 5 = 10$

- There are 5 apples in a box.



How many apples are there in 2 boxes ?

$3 \times 2 = 6$

### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to read each story problem carefully to determine the suitable multiplication sentence and match.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ كل مسألة كلامية بعناية ليحدد عملية الضرب المناسبة ويصل.



## How to solve word problems on division.

كيفية حل المسائل الكلامية على القسمة.

### PROBLEM :

Wael has 12 shells. He wants to put the same number of shells in each of 3 boxes. How many shells will be in each box ?

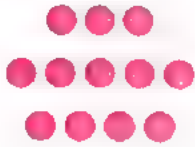
find  $(12 \div 3)$  as follows :



When you divide, you separate into equal groups.

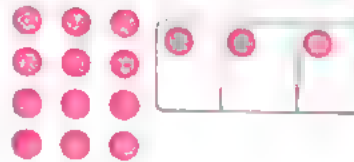
#### Step 1

Use 12 counters.



#### Step 2

Show 3 boxes. Place 1 counter in each box.



#### Step 3

Continue until all 12 counters are used.

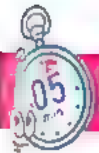


$$12 \div 3 = 4$$

So, there will be 4 shells in each box.

سوف يجد ٤ صدقات في كل صندوق.

Number of shells in each group



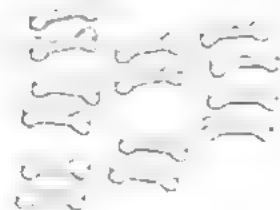
### Pop Quiz on Math

#### Read, think and solve.

A boy gives his dog 2 dog treats each day. He has 14 dog treats. How many days will the dog treats last ?



$\square \div \square = \square$  It will last for  $\square$  days.

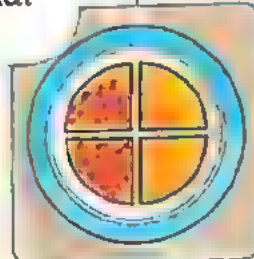


# Learn

★ Look and read.

نظر واقرأ.

## Name fraction



$$\frac{2}{4}$$

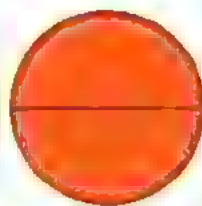
of equal parts  
have jam.

Two fourths of the biscuit  
has jam.

A fraction can name more than 1 equal part of a whole.

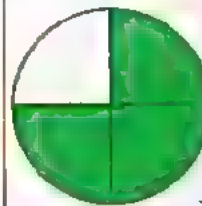


$$\frac{1}{2}$$
  
one  
half



$$\frac{2}{2}$$
  
two  
halves

(one whole)



$$\frac{3}{4}$$
  
three  
fourths



two  
thirds



## Pop Quiz on Math

- Circle the shape that shows the fraction.

$$\frac{2}{3}$$



$$\frac{3}{4}$$



### Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures and read.
- A fraction is a part of the whole.
  - 1 Numerator
  - 2 Denominator
- Ask your child to circle the shape that shows the fractions.
  - The numerator tells how many parts are being identified
  - The denominator tells the total number of equal parts in the whole.

ساعد طفلك في النظر إلى الصور والكتابة  
العدد 1 البسط  
العدد 2 المقام  
اسأل طفلك أن يضع دائرة حول الشكل المناسب للكسر  
العدد 1 هو عدد الأجزاء المحددة  
العدد 2 هو العدد الكلي في الواحد الصحيح

## Learn

### Fractions word problems

Maged had a bar of chocolate. He divided it into 4 equal parts, and ate one of them.

- What fraction of the chocolate did he eat?  $\frac{1}{4}$



Work area



$$\frac{1}{4}$$

Laila has 3 balloons. 2 of them are red and the rest is blue.

- What fraction of the balloons are blue?  $\frac{1}{3}$



Think :

There are 3 balloons in all.

2 of them are red.

$$3 - 2 = 1 \text{ blue}$$

So, the fraction is  $\frac{1}{3}$



## Pop Quiz on Math

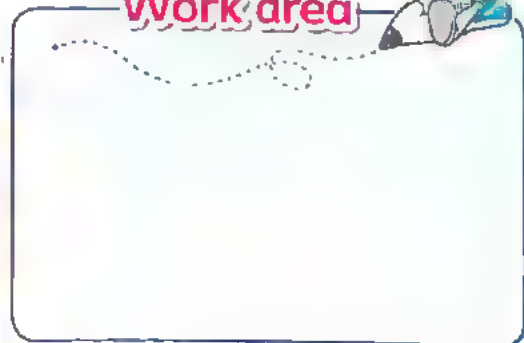
### Read, think and solve.

★ Yara has one apple. She chopped it into four equal pieces and ate three of them.

- What fraction of the apple did she eat?



Work area



\* Help your child learn about fractions to solve word problems involving fractions.

• ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الكسور لحل المسائل الكلامية التي تشمل الكسور.

\* Ask your child to draw a rectangle or a circle and divide it into equal parts to model each problem, that helps your child to solve easily.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يرسم مستطيل أو دائرة ويقسمها إلى أجزاء متساوية ليصمم كل مسألة لتساعده في حلها بسهولة.

# Lessons 5 & 6

- My city
- Writing



## Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

اسمع وكرر.

### Key vocabulary

port	ميناء	transportation	مواصلات (النقل)
neighborhood	حي	location	
smart growth	النمو الذكي	planners	

### Extra vocabulary

Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط	services	ات
industry	صناعة	Montaza Palace	المنزل
apartment	شقة	important	
parents	الوالدين	wherever	في أي مكان

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

##### Present

work	يعمل
enjoy	يستمتع
use	يستخدم
visit	يزور
protect	يحمي

##### Past

worked
enjoyed
used
visited
protected

#### Irregular

##### Present

have	يملك
buy	يشترى

##### Past

had
bought

### Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات وحروف جر هامة

- as you might know
- the second largest city

كما قد نعلم  
أبى أكبر مدينة

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• يمكنك أن تسمع إلى الكلمات وتكررها.



## Listen and read.

### Alexandria

I'm Dina and I'm going to tell you about myself today.

#### 1. My city



Dina

I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the **Mediterranean Sea**<sup>(1)</sup>.

As you might know, It's the second largest city in Egypt with a **population**<sup>(2)</sup> of more than

5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry here too.

#### Check Vocabulary

- سحر المتوسط
- تعداد سكاني (2)
- حي (3)
- سقه سكنيه
- خدمات (5)
- قصر المبره (6)

#### 2. My neighborhood

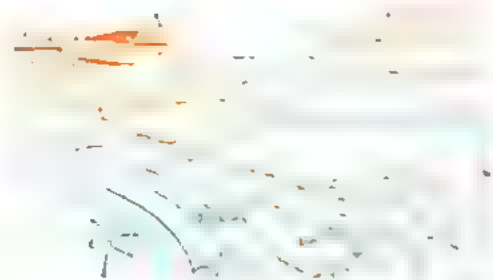
I live with my family in an apartment in a **neighborhood**<sup>(3)</sup> called Amrya.

There are 6 people in my family : my parents, my grandparents, my brother Magdy and me. Our **apartment**<sup>(4)</sup> isn't big, but it isn't small either.

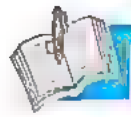


#### 3. What I like

I like my city because we have a lot of **services**<sup>(5)</sup>. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is **Montaza Palace**<sup>(6)</sup>. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit **with my family**. I love my city very much and I hope you visit Alexandria one day







## Writing skill

★ Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.

### How to write a clear paragraph

- 1 Use several short paragraphs instead of one or two long ones.  
استخدم فقرات قصيرة متعددة بدلاً من فقرة أو فقرتين طويلتين.
- 2 You can give each paragraph a heading.  
يمكنك إعطاء عنوان لكل فقرة.



### Pop Quiz on Writing skill

- Write a text about your city. اكتب نص عن مدينتك.

#### Fact file

##### My city

City : ..

Population : ..

Sites : ..

##### My neighborhood

Home : ..

Family : ..

##### What I like

Likes : ..

Favorite places : ..

Good services : ..

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child learn how to write a clear paragraph.
- Ask your child to write a fact file about his / her city.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب فقرة انشائية واضحة  
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب ملف حقائق عن مدينته / مدينتها

## What is Smart Growth ?

Smart growth<sup>(1)</sup> is a way to plan<sup>(2)</sup> new areas of a city. Smart growth planners<sup>(3)</sup> want to protect the environment<sup>(4)</sup> and improve<sup>(5)</sup> the lives of people living in them. Here are some of the ideas behind smart growth :

### Check Vocabulary

- (1) النمو الذكي
- (2) يصمم / يخطط
- (3) مخططين
- (4) بيئة
- (5) يحسن
- (6) مواصلات عامة
- (7) مكاتب الحكومة
- (8) مساحات خضراء

- People can walk to work or school.
- There's good public transportation<sup>(6)</sup> and no cars.
- People have all of the services that they need close to their homes: shops, markets, doctors , government offices<sup>(7)</sup> , etc.
- There are green spaces<sup>(8)</sup> for people to enjoy.

**Learn** 1. Smart growth ..... want to protect the environment.

- a. engineers b. teachers c. vets d. planners

**Read**  
and choose  
the correct  
answer :

**Practice** 2. People can ..... to school.

- a. walk b. cycle c. drive d. fly

3. There are ..... spaces for people to enjoy.

- a. blue b. green c. yellow d. red



\* Help your child read and learn about smart growth.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن النمو الذكي

ما هو النمو الذكي ؟ النمو الذكي هو طريقة لتصميم مناطق جديدة في مدينة بريد مخططين النمو الذكي أن يحموا البيئة ويحسبوا حياة الأشخاص الذين يعيشون فيها  
- يستطيع الناس أن يسبوا إلى العمل أو المدرسة  
- يوجد وسائل مواصلات عامة جيدة ولا يوجد سيارات  
- يوجد جميع الخدمات التي يحتاجها الناس أن تكون قريبة من مدرستهم المحلات ، الأسواق ، أطباء ، مكاتب حكومية ، إلخ .  
- يوجد مساحات خضراء للناس لكي يستمتعوا

# General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

- **1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Dina lives in  
a. Luxor                      b. Cairo                      c. Aswan                      d. Alexandria
2. Alexandria is a / an                      on the Mediterranean Sea.  
a. village                      b. city                      c. town                      d. oasis
3. Alexandria is the                      largest city in Egypt.  
a. first                      b. second                      c. third                      d. fourth
4. Alexandria has an important                      .  
a. port                      b. lake                      c. river                      d. ship

- **2 Listen and complete.**

1.                      growth is a way to plan new areas of a city.
2. Planners of smart growth want to protect the                      .
3. There is good                      transportation and no cars.
4. There are green                      for people to enjoy.

- **3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.**

Mediterranean – family – Alexandria – services

Nada : Hello ! My name's Nada.

Shorouk : Hello ! I'm Shorouk. Where do you live ?

Nada : I live in (1)

Shorouk : Oh ! It's a beautiful city on the (2)                      Sea.

Nada : That's right. I like my city because we have a lot  
of (3)

Shorouk : That sounds good.

## Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences with the correct words
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box

**4 Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1. six - in - There - my - family - are - people.
2. can - to - work - People - walk - school - or.
3. good - There's - transportation - my - in - village.

**5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

My name's Hossam. I live in Marsa Matruh. I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called Alexandria Street. There are six people in my family : My parents, my grandparents, my brother Ahmed and me. Our apartment isn't big, but it isn't small either. We can use the bus to go wherever we want.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We can buy anything we need from  
a. schools      b. hospitals      c. gardens      d. shops
2. We can use the      to go wherever we want.  
a. plane      b. bus      c. truck      d. van

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. How many members does Hossam's family have ?  
.....
4. Who does Hossam live with ?  
.....

<sup>4</sup> Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يترتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

<sup>5</sup> Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويحبب عن الأسئلة



# Test your skills

## Unit 4



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد فمزمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

### My Dictation

#### 1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ وأكتب المعنى.

A. congestion

sparse

dye

pedestrian

weave

B.

معزول

حرفيون

سجادة

خيوط / غزل

تعداد السكان

### My Language

#### 2 Correct the underlined words.

صحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. There are four girl.

2. When you help her, she doesn't help anyone.

3. As soon as they have a lot of money, they're still not happy.

### My Reading

#### 3 Read and tick (✓) for the correct answer.

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Cairo is a metropolitan area and ..... populated.

☐ densely

☐ sparsely

2. The ..... make the carpets while we watched them weave.

☐ doctors

☐ artisans

3. .... is a way to plan new areas of a city.

☐ Smart growth

☐ Transportation

4. Carpets are made from .....

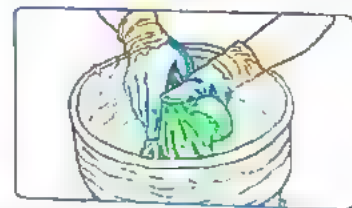
☐ cotton

☐ sheep's wool

### My Writing

#### 4 Write three(3) sentences under the picture.

اكتب ثلاث جمل تحت الصورة.



dye - carpet - artisans

---



---



---



---



---



---

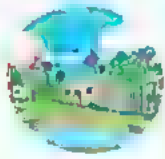




# Review on unit 4



city



village



densely

## — Multiplication —

$$5 \times 3 = 15$$

## — Division —

$$48 \div 6 = 8$$

## — Fraction —

$$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{2} = 1$$



sparsely  
populated



congestion



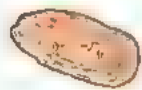
isolated



goose



sheep



date



donkey



buffalo



## The conjunctions

- We are quiet while the teacher is talking.
- I do my homework as soon as I get home from school
- I do well at school so that I understand what I learn.

- The warp is the structure of the carpet.
- They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton.
- Carpets are made from wool in workshops.
- They use natural vegetable dyes.

# Skills



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل  
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

## 1. Reading & writing skills

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Living in a city (urban places)	Cairo - live	I live in Greater Cairo.
	metropolitan	It's a metropolitan area.
	populated	It's densely populated.
	inhabitants	There are more than 20 million inhabitants.
	congestion	There is congestion.
Living in a village (rural places)	village	I live in a small village on the Nile.
	populated	It's sparsely populated.
	traditional	My family lives in a traditional home.
	animals	We have some animals.
	farmer - grow	My dad is a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates and onions
Smart growth	planners - protect	Smart growth planners protect the environment.
	improve	They want to improve the lives of people.
	walk	People can walk to work or school.
	transportation	There's good public transportation and no cars.
	services	People have all the services close to their homes.
A carpet workshop	green spaces	There are green spaces for people to enjoy.
	wool - sheep	They collect the wool from sheep.
	artisans - yarn	The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn.
	dye - boil	They dye the yarn. They boil the yarn with the dyes.
	cotton	They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton.
	loom	The artisans make the carpet by hand using a machine called a loom.
	beautiful	They make beautiful carpets.

## 2. How to make a sentence:

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة.

الجملة الخبرية

1. to – me – took – My grandma – workshop - a weaving.

2. Alexandria – in – I – live.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

الجملة الأمرية

1. me – your – Tell – village - about.

2. your – Do – homework.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. do – you – Where – live ?

2. is – city – your – in – What ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

• densely – or – Is – it – sparsely – populated ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
	Is			

### 3. Writing skill

١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

## City and country

### City

- I live in Alexandria / Luxor / Cairo / Aswan... etc.

### Location

1. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea.
2. It is in the east / west / north / south of Egypt.

### Neighborhood

I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called .....

### Services

1. I like my city because we have a lot of services.
2. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops.

### Transportation

1. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want.
2. We can use the underground.

### Likes about your area

1. My favorite place is .....
2. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family.

### Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

I am Hadeer and I am 13 years old. I like my school. We have a big classroom. There is a whiteboard. There are a lot of examples of technology. There is a 3D printer. We use it to print our homework. There are tablets which we use in our classroom. There is a laptop and it has a mouse. I have a mobile phone but I do not use it at the classroom. Technology makes our life easy. I sometimes play video games. I look at websites to get information, but I love nature more. I like being in the garden. I like walking and watching trees, animals and flowers. I use my mobile to take photos of nature and share it with my friends.

٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

### (1) An urban

I live in Greater Cairo.<sup>(1)</sup> It's an urban environment.<sup>(2)</sup> It's a metropolitan area and densely populated.<sup>(3)</sup> There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place.<sup>(4)</sup> There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion.<sup>(5)</sup> If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.<sup>(6)</sup>

### (2)

#### Village

My name's Amr.<sup>(7)</sup> I live in a small village on the Nile.<sup>(8)</sup> My dad is a farmer.<sup>(9)</sup> He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions.<sup>(10)</sup> We have some animals, too.<sup>(11)</sup> There are six sheep and two buffaloes.<sup>(12)</sup>

### (3)

#### Mountain

Cities develop in the mountains.<sup>(13)</sup> They are good places to start a city.<sup>(14)</sup> Historically they are easier to protect.<sup>(15)</sup> There are minerals and good water sources in some mountains.<sup>(16)</sup> Transportation is more difficult there.<sup>(17)</sup> It's an isolated place.<sup>(18)</sup>

### (4)

#### Alexandria

Alexandria is a beautiful city.<sup>(19)</sup> It's on the Mediterranean Sea.<sup>(20)</sup> It's the second largest city in Egypt.<sup>(21)</sup> There are more than million people live in Alexandria.<sup>(22)</sup> It has an important port.<sup>(23)</sup> There is a lot of industry in it.<sup>(24)</sup>



# Test 7 on Unit 4

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## A. Listening

- **1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dina has a big  
a. school      b. group      c. family      d. park
2. Dina is ..... years old.  
a. 12      b. 10      c. 11      d. 13
3. .... is Dina's favourite place.  
a. Alexandria Library      b. Egyptian Museum  
c. Montaza Palace      d. The Red Sea
4. Dina and her family visit Montaza Palace once a  
a. month      b. week      c. year      d. day

- **2** Listen and complete.

1. The ..... make the carpets.
2. They collect the ..... from sheep to make carpets.
3. They use natural vegetables ..... to color the yarn.
4. They spin the wool to make it into .....

## B. Reading

- **3** Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

inhabitants - city - sparsely - services

Hisham : Hi, Hala. Where do you live ?

Hala : I live in Alexandria.

Hisham : Is it (1) ..... or densely populated ?

Hala : It's the second largest (2) ..... in Egypt with population of more than 5 million.

Hisham : What (3) ..... are there ?

Hala : We have schools, hospitals and lots of shops.

Hisham : I hope I visit Alexandria one day.

Hala : Sure. It'll be interesting.

### Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.

2. Ask your child to listen and complete with the correct answer.

3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل بالإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بكلمات من المربع

**4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. The text is about

- a. a city where Fareeda lives
- b. a job that Fareeda works
- c. a club where Fareeda plays tennis
- d. a country where Fareeda travels

2. The population Greater Cairo is .....

- a. sparse
- b. dense
- c. isolated
- d. congestion

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What should you do when you walk in Cairo ?

4. Is Cairo, sparsely or densely populated ?

**5 The reader**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Grandpa designs, measures the patterns and chooses the colors.

☐ T ☐ F

2. Grandpa uses machines to do his work.

☐ ☐  
☐ ☐

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Grandpa's eyes are not ..... now.

- a. bad
- b. good
- c. sad
- d. happy

2. Zeinab asks her grandpa to ..... her how to sew.

- a. teach
- b. give
- c. let
- d. make

<sup>4</sup> Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions

<sup>5</sup> Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة  
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقاً لأحداث القصة

### C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Cats always try to catch many  
a. mice                      b. a sheep                      c. a goose                      d. a mouse
2. They wash the wool                      it becomes ready to use.  
a. although                      b. after                      c. so that                      d. before
3.                      she is very helpful, she doesn't have any friends.  
a. So                      b. Before                      c. While                      d. Although
4. How many                      are there in the park ?  
a. person                      b. woman                      c. child                      d. people

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. do - so that - I - understand - my homework - I - the lesson.
2. you - any - Do - have - brothers ?

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

City you live in

محاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

#### Guiding questions :

1. Where do you live ?
2. How many people live in your city ?
3. Is your city densely or sparsely populated ?
4. What about the services in your area ?
5. Why is your club important ?



#### Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

7. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly.

8. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding questions.

الطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.  
الطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يترتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.  
الطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالى (50) كلمة مستخدماً الأسئلة الإرشادية.

# Test 8 on Unit 4

اختبار مجمع من  
مختلف المحافظات

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Rahma lives in a ..... city.  
a. old                      b. big                      c. new                      d. far
- She lives in a/an ..... environment.  
a. urban                      b. rural                      c. unhealthy                      d. close
- It's not ..... to travel around her city.  
a. hard                      b. far                      c. important                      d. easy
- It's a/an ..... populated city.  
a. lightly                      b. densely                      c. easily                      d. sparsely

(Cairo - Sawsa Zainab 2022 / Ismailia - Fayid 2022)

2 Listen and complete.

- Food and ..... are main reasons to develop cities.
- A lot of cities are developed near bodies of .....
- Water is very ..... for cities.
- Rivers, lakes and oceans have animals like ..... and fish.

(Alexandria - El Agamy 2022 / Giza - Dokki 2022)

## B. Reading

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

artisans – crafts – yarn – wool

Last week, my dad took us to a spinning and weaving workshop so that we could learn about this craft. The owner of the workshop explained how the (1) ..... make the carpets while we watched them weave. First, they collect the (2) ..... from the sheep. They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it. The artisans spin the wool to make it into (3) .....

(Sharkia - Abo Hamad 2022 / Giza - Agouza 2022)

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل بالاجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بكلمات من المربع

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بكلمات من المربع



- **4** Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Adam. I live in Alexandria. I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Monataza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family. I love my city very much and I hope you visit Alexandria one day.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. The main idea of the text is about .....  
a. Alexandria    b. Montaza Palace    c. services    d. gardens
2. Adam lives in a/an ..... environment.  
a. rural    b. desert    c. urban    d. isolated

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What's Adam's favorite place ?
4. Why does Adam like his city ?

(Gharbia – West Ianta 2022 / Beni Suef – Beba 2022)

• **5** **The reader**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Grandpa loves his job.
2. Zeinab's friends don't like khaymeya.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

(Sohag – Dar El Salam 2022 / Beni Suef – Beba 2022)

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Grandpa was one of the .....  
a. Shoe makers    b. bus drivers    c. tent makers    d. dentists
2. Zeinab's ..... met her at the train station.  
a. uncles    b. grandparents    c. friends    d. cousins

(Fayoum – West Fayoum 2022 / Qalyoubia – Benha 2022)

**Notes for parents**

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.
5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويحيط عن الأسئلة  
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويحيط عن الأسئلة طبقاً للأحداث القصة



### C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- There are nine \_\_\_\_\_ on the farm. (Cairo - Abdeen 2022)  
a. goose      b. geese      c. geese      d. geeses
- He was busy \_\_\_\_\_ he couldn't come to the birthday party.  
a. although      b. while      c. so that      d. even though (Beheira - Damanhur 2022)
- She asked me to revise well \_\_\_\_\_ the exam.  
a. while      b. before      c. so that      d. after
- I have three cherries. \_\_\_\_\_ are very delicious. (Izra 2022)  
a. It      b. That      c. They      d. This

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

- grow - tomatoes - and - Farmers - onions.

(Alexandria - Borg El Arab 2022)

- use - They - to make - beautiful - plants - dyes.

(Minia - Beni Mazar 2022)

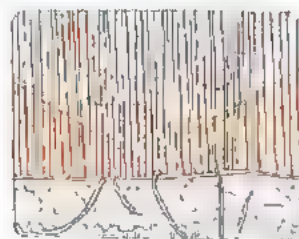
8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Carpet making

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding questions :

- How do they get wool ?
- How do they make yarn ?
- How do they make dyes ?
- What's the loom ?



(New valley - Dakhla 2022)

6 Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

7 Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly

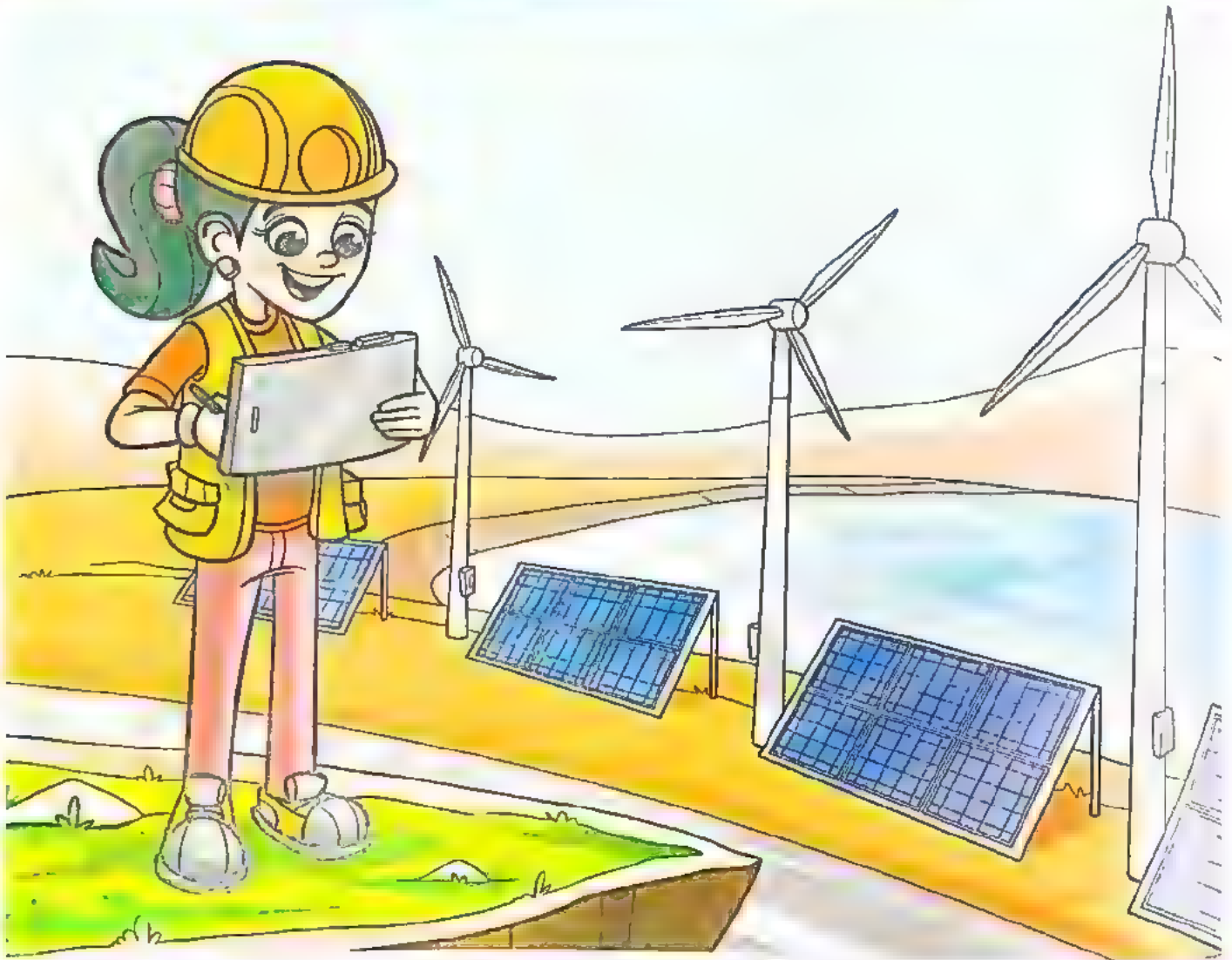
8 Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding elements.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة  
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يربط الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة  
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (50) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية

# 5

## Resources in our world

الموارد في عالمنا



• دراسة المعاصر التفاعلية  
• التقييمات الشهرية في الدراسة التفاعلية.

• استخدام كارت المعاصر للكتابة والكتابة.  
• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.  
• دراسة المعاصر للمهارات.

الهدف  
الوحدة

### Aims of Unit Five :

In this unit I will .....

- understand the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources.  
- افهم الفرق بين الموارد المتجددة وغير المتجددة.
- identify fossil fuels and the problems with them.  
- اتعرف على الوقود الحفري ومشاكله.
- use the correct form of third person present singular verbs.  
- استخدم الصيغة الصحيحة لشخصاء المخاطبة مع الأفعال المفردة في زمن المضارع.
- explain different types of renewable energy sources.  
- أوضح الأنواع المختلفة لمصادر الطاقة المتجددة.

### الاهداف العامة للوحدة الخامسة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف.....

- match and correctly use pronouns.  
- نس و استخدم الضمائر بشكل صحيح.
- recognize and use vocabulary related to jobs  
- تعرف و استخدم المصطلحات المتعلقة بالوظائف.
- understand how to be a good team member  
- كيف اكون عضو جيد في فريق.
- write an email to apply for a job.  
- كيف اكتب البريد الإلكتروني لتقديم لوظيفة.
- design a vehicle that runs on a renewable energy source.  
- تصميم سيارة تسير بمصدر طاقة متجددة.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

natural resources	موارد طبيعية	mineral	صُلب / معدن
renewable	متجدد	non-renewable	غير متجدد

Extra vocabulary

natural	طبيعي	wood	خشب
material	مادة خام	soil	تربة زراعية
purpose	غرض	stone	حجر
frame	إطار / هيكل	metal	معدن
gold	ذهب	petroleum	بتترول
silver	فضة	water	مياه
common	شائع	plastic	بلاستيك

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Irregular

Present

Past

Present

Past

construct	يبنى / ينشئ	constructed	يُجد	found
replace	يستبدل	replaced	يُحصل	got
raise	يربي	raised	يزرع	grew
guess	يُخمن	guessed		

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد من طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

The first windmills were used in western Asia almost 3,000 years ago to grind grain and pump water.

- أول طاحونات استخدمت في آسيا الغربية من حوالي ٣٠٠٠ عام مضى لطحن الحبوب وضخ الماء

# المواد الخام لها استخدامات مختلفة لأغراض مختلفة

عمرات وشوارع حرة هامة

for different purposes	لأغراض مختلفة	made from	مصنوع من (المادة الخام بعد التصنيع)
look around	بتحول	come from	يأتي من
made of		made up of	يتكون من
	مصنوع من (المادة الخام بعد التصنيع)	run out	استنفدت

## ★ Read and identify.

ويعرف

**Natural resources**  
المصادر الطبيعية



Are materials that we get from nature.  
مواد تأتي من الطبيعة.



**Renewable resources**  
المصادر المتجددة



The resources that can be replaced when they run out.  
المصادر التي يمكن استبدالها عندما تنفذ.



**Non-renewable resources**  
المصادر غير المتجددة



The resources that we can't get any more here on Earth.  
المصادر التي لا يمكن الحصول على المزيد منها على سطح الأرض.



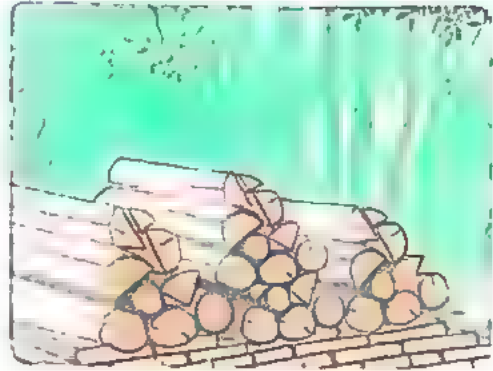
### Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify natural, renewable and non-renewable resources.



## Our Natural Resources مواردنا الطبيعية

Natural resources<sup>(1)</sup> are materials that we get from nature<sup>(2)</sup>. People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. What is your school made of? We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. What are you sitting on right now? Is it made of<sup>(3)</sup> wood? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. Is anything made of plastic in your classroom? Plastic is made from petroleum, which is ... that's right – a natural resource!



### Check Vocabulary

- (1) موارد طبيعية
- (2) الطبيعة
- (3) مصنوع من
- (4) معادن
- (5) مقبض الباب
- (6) ذهب
- (7) فضة
- (8) شائع

Can you find any minerals<sup>(4)</sup> in your classroom? What about the door handle<sup>(5)</sup>, the window frame, or the watch your teacher is wearing? Is part of your desk or chair metal? There are many different types of metal, which are types of minerals. Gold<sup>(6)</sup> and silver<sup>(7)</sup> are two common<sup>(8)</sup> ones. And they are all natural resources.

Read  
and tick (✓)  
or (x):

**Learn** 1. Natural resources are made by people.



**Practice** 2. Stone and wood are natural resources.



3. Gold and silver are types of stone.



\* Help your child listen and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص

- الموارد الطبيعية هي الخامات، التي نحصل عليها من الطبيعة. يستخدم الناس تلك الخامات لأغراض مختلفة. إذا نظرت حولك في فصلك الدراسي، سوف ترى حتماً أنواع مختلفة منهم. مما تصنع مدرستك؟ نحن نستخدم الحجارة لإنشاء المباني والكباري وأحياناً المدارس أيضاً. على ماذا تجلس الآن؟ هل هو مصنوع من الخشب؟ العاتق؟ والأختاب؟ التي نحصل عليها منها تعبیر مورد طبيعي هام آخر. هل يوجد أي شيء مصنوع من البلاستيك في فصلك الدراسي؟ تصنع البلاستيك من البترول، والذي هو هذا صحيح. مصدر طبيعي! هل يمكنك أن تجد أي معادن في حجرة الدراسة الخاصة بك؟ ماذا عن مقبض الباب (طدر الشباك أو ساعة اليد التي يرتديها معلمك؟ هل جزء من مكتبك أو الكرسي مصنوع من المعدن؟ يوجد العديد من الأنواع المختلفة من المعادن والتي تعبیر أشكال من المعادن: إن الذهب والفضة هي نوعان شائعين وجميعهم موارد طبيعية.



The water you drink at lunch is a natural resource. Where do the potatoes we eat come from ? They're grown in the ground, and this ground is made up of what we call soil<sup>(9)</sup>. So yes, soil too, is a natural resource. Some resources are what we call renewable<sup>(10)</sup>. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources. Then there are non-renewable<sup>(11)</sup> resources. These are things like metals and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

Check Vocabulary

تربة (9)

متجدد (10)

غير متجدد (11)

**Learn** 1. What are natural resources ?

These are resources we get from nature such as wood and water.

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

**Practice** 2. Why are potatoes a renewable resource ?

3. Explain the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources.

لقد كان الفضول قبله، فالتزمه القويان

احرص على اقتناء

EL-MONASSER

اللغة الإنجليزية

للف الرابع الابتدائي

**Connect Plus**

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

### Notes for parents

لماء الذي تشربه على الغذاء مصدر طبيعي هي أين تأتي البطاطس التي تتناولها؟ إنها تزرع في الأرض وهذه الأرض تتكون مما يدعوه تربة زراعية لذلك نعم، التربة الزراعية أيضاً مصدر طبيعي. بعض المصادر يطلق عليها متجددة فالمصادر المتجددة يمكن أن تستبدل بشكل طبيعي عندما تنفذ من الشمس والرياح والماء المتدفقة أمثلة على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة إذن يوجد مصادر غير متجددة وهذه أشياء مثل المعادن والبترول إذا استخدمنا حصصها، لا يمكننا سداد المزيد منها على كوكب الأرض

- Understand • Apply • Create

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Natural resources are materials that we get from  
a. forest      b. school      c. nature      d. people
- We use \_\_\_\_\_ to construct buildings and bridges.  
a. wood      b. stone      c. plastic      d. soil
- We get wood from \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. rivers      b. farms      c. deserts      d. forests
- \_\_\_\_\_ and silver are types of minerals.  
a. Gold      b. Wood      c. Stone      d. Bridge

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Meat – non-renewable – renewable – raise

Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ resource because we can grow more. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ is also a renewable resource because farmers can (3) \_\_\_\_\_ more animals for you to eat. Wood is a renewable resource, too.

### 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- natural – What – resources – are ?  
.....
- a – natural – Soil – resource – is.  
.....
- stone – buildings – to – use – construct – We.  
.....

- 1 Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.      - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.
- 2 Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box.      اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص من الكلمات المعطاة
- 3 Ask your child to order the words to make correct sentences.      اطلب من طفلك أن يربط الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

- **4** Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. What is your school made of? We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. What are you sitting on right now? Is it made of wood? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. Is anything made of plastic in your classroom? Plastic is made from petroleum.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The main idea of the text is about ..... .
  - a. renewable resources
  - b. non-renewable resources
  - c. natural resources
  - d. wind energy
2. We use ..... to construct buildings.
  - a. wood
  - b. food
  - c. plastic
  - d. stone

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What is plastic made from ?  
.....
4. Give two examples of natural resources.  
.....

- **5** Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Natural resources

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**Guiding words :**

- minerals
- nature
- made of
- materials



**Notes for parents**

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions. علب من طعلك أن يقر، النص ويحبب عن الأسئلة المعطاة.
5. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the given guiding elements. علب من طعلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (٥٠) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة.



## Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

## Key vocabulary

a crude oil well	بئر نفط خام	greenhouse gases	غازات محبسة
fossil	حفري	fossil fuels	وقود حفري
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	natural gas	غاز طبيعي
climate change	تغير المناخ	coal	فحم

## Extra Vocabulary

energy	طاقة	dishes	أطباق
geologist	عالم جيولوجي	heat	حرارة
dinosaur	ديناصور (حيوان منقرض)	power	قوة
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي	industry	صناعة
heating	التدفئة	deep	عميق
serious	جاد / خطير	petroleum	نفط
problem	مشكلة		

## تصريف الأفعال

## تصريف الأفعال

## Regular

## Irregular

## Present

## Past

relax	يسترخي	relaxed
create	يولد / ينتج	created
kiss	يُقبل	kissed
brush	ينظف بالفرشاة	brushed
dry	يجفف	dried
raise	يربي	raised
produce	ينتج	produced
generate	يولد	generated
process	يُعالج/يحول	processed

## Present

## Past

fly	يطير	flew
catch	يلحق	caught
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
do	يفعل	did
go	يذهب	went
burn	يحرق	burned / burnt
lie	يرقد	lay / lain

\* Help your child listen to the words and repeat them

. ساعد طفلك أن يسمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Today, around 80 % of the energy used around the world comes from fossil fuels

- اليوم، حوالي 80٪ من الطاقة المستخدمة حول العالم تأتي من الوقود الحفري

## تعابير وحروف جر هامة

turn into  
wake up for  
catch the bus  
make dinner

يتحول إلى  
يستيقظ لأجل  
يلحق بالذئبيس  
يعد وجبة العشاء

on Fridays  
a lot of  
raise his hand  
is taken out

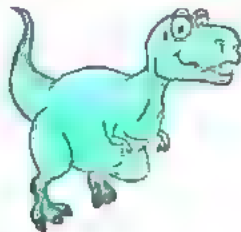
في أيام الجمعة  
الكثير من  
يرفع يده  
يُسَخَّرَج / يتم استخراجه



### Pop Quiz on

#### Look and write the missing letters.

1.



di \_ o \_ \_ r

2.



c \_ \_ l

3.



d \_ \_ \_

#### ★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

A fuel

is a material that we burn to produce power or heat.  
الوقود هو مادة نقوم بحرقها لإنتاج طاقة أو حرارة.

- is a non-renewable resource.

Fossil  
fuels

الوقود الحفري هو مورد غير متجدد.

- were plants and animals that lived before the dinosaurs.

الوقود الحفري هو النباتات والحيوانات التي عاشت قبل الديناصورات.

- is turned into petroleum. الزيت الخام يتحول إلى بترول.

Crude oil

- We get it from oil wells. حصل عليه من آبار البترول الخام.

- is taken out of the ground. لريت الخام يُستخرج من الأرض.

Coal and  
natural gas

are used in homes for heating and cooking

الحجم والغاز الطبيعي نستخدمه في المنازل في التدفئة والطهي.

#### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters.
- Help your child read and identify the words

من فضلك ان ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف المفقطة  
ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ ويحدد الكلمات



The global warming and climate change

are serious problems because of fossil fuels.

الاحتباس لحرارى وتغير المناخ مشكلات خطيرة بسبب الوقود الحفرى.

- are gases collected in the atmosphere.

غازات محتبسة هى غازات مجمعة فى الغلاف الجوى.

- are very bad for the environment.

Greenhouse gases

- help to create global warming.

هى تساعد على إحداث الاحتباس الحرارى.

- make the problems of climate change worse.

هى تجعل مشاكل تغير المناخ أسوأ.

★ Listen, read and learn.

تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع | Pop Quiz

### Fossil fuels الوقود الحفرى

Professor Kamal : For many years, people around the world have burned fossil fuels. There are different types of fossil fuels, but all of them are non-renewable resources. We all probably use at least one of them every day.

الأستاذ كمال : سنوات عديدة لقد أحرق الناس حول العالم الوقود الحفرى. هناك أنواع مختلفة من الوقود الحفرى، لكنها كلها موارد غير منجدة. ربما نستخدم جميعًا واحدًا منهم على الأقل كل يوم.

For example, oil wells take crude oil out of the ground, it is processed into petroleum, and then we use it in our cars, buses, and airplanes. Natural gas is also taken from inside the Earth and sent to some of our homes for cooking, and for heating homes in colder climates. Coal, this dark rock taken from mines deep inside the Earth,



\*Help child listen, read the text and learn about the fossil fuels.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ النص ويتعلم عن الوقود الحفرى.

is used in industry, to generate our electricity, and in some people's homes for heating and cooking.

يستخدم البترول في الصناعة لتوليد الكهرباء، وفي منازل بعض الناس للتدفئة والطهي. يستخدم البترول في المنازل في المواقد الباردة، الفحم، هذه الصخور الداكنة المأخوذة من المناجم الموجودة في الأرض، نستخدم في الصناعة لتوليد الكهرباء، وفي منازل بعض الناس للتدفئة والطهي.

But why do we call them fossil fuels ?

Maybe you have heard of the dinosaurs ?

Well, like the dinosaurs, fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived a very long time ago. It's hard to imagine just how long ago though because they actually lived before the dinosaurs did. Over time, these plants and animals were buried deep inside the earth and changed into fossil fuels.



نحن نطلق عليهم اسم الوقود الحفري؟ ربما سمعت عن الديناصورات؟ حسنًا، مثل الديناصورات، الوقود الحفري نباتات وحيوانات عاشت منذ زمن طويل جدًا. من الصعب تخيل المدة التي مرت بها الحس لأنهم عاشوا بالفعل قبل الديناصورات. بمرور الوقت، تم دفن هذه النباتات والحيوانات في أعماق الأرض وتحولها إلى وقود حفري.

It sounds like fossil fuels help us a lot, doesn't it ? Well, that is kind of true. Fossil fuels have helped us develop into modern nations with great technological advancements. We have built cities with hospitals and universities, and can easily travel through the desert in our cars and over the oceans in airplanes. But there is a serious problem. The problem with fossil fuels is that when they are burned, they produce greenhouse gases. These gases collect in the atmosphere and make the problems of global warming and climate change even worse.

يبدو أن الوقود الحفري يساعدنا كثيرًا، أليس كذلك؟ حسنًا، هذا نوعًا ما حقيقي. لقد ساعدنا الوقود الحفري على تطوير دول حديثة ذات تقنيات تكنولوجية كبيرة. لقد بنينا مدنًا بها مستشفيات وجامعات، ويمكننا السفر عبر الصحراء في سياراتنا وعبر المحيطات في الطائرات. لكن هناك مشكلة خطيرة. المشكلة مع الوقود الحفري هي أنه عندما يتم حرقه، فإنه ينتج غازات دفيئة. تتجمع هذه الغازات في الغلاف الجوي وتزيد من تفاقم مشاكل الاحتباس الحراري وتغير المناخ للأسوأ.

## The third person singular of the present simple.

استخدام الأفعال مع صمائر الفاعل الغائب المفردة في زمن المضارع البسيط.

### Affirmative statements : الجمل المثبتة :

#### Formation

لتصريف الأول للفعل مضافاً له "s" أو "es" أو "ies" :

He / She / It / + (inf.) + s → معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s)  
(All) اسم مفرد مصدر الفعل or  
es → أما التي تنتهي بـ (sh, ch, ss, x, o) يضاف لها (es)

ex. - Youssef's dad is a mechanic. He fixes cars.

- Our cat drinks a lot of water when it's hot out.

#### Spelling rules

① If the verb ends in a (consonant + y), we remove the (y) and add (ies).

★ الفعل المنتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (ies) مع حذف (y) :

ex. - The baby cries when she's hungry.

② If the verb ends in a (vowel + y), we add (s).

★ الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف له (s) :

ex. - He plays volleyball every Friday.

③ We do not add (s) to the verb (have), but with (He - She - It) we use "has".

★ الفعل (have) لا يضاف له (s) ولكن مع (He - She - It) نستخدم (has).

ex. - He has brown hair.

• your child identify and use the verbs in the present simple with singular pronouns.

• ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على ويستخدم الأفعال في زمن المضارع البسيط مع صمائر المفرد.

## ⊖ Negative statements :

**Formation**     **He/she/It** / اسم مذكر + **does not** ( **doesn't** ) + Inf...

ex. - He doesn't speak Italian.

### Usage

★ We use present simple to talk about facts & repeated actions :  
 نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن حقائق وأحداث متكررة.

ex. - The mechanic fixes cars.

- She visits her grandfather on Fridays.



## 1 Complete the sentences with the present simple form.

1. She always ..... (do) her homework.
2. Emy ..... (watch) TV every day.
3. Hamza often ..... (use) his laptop for his school project.
4. She ..... (brush) her teeth every day.
5. My grandpa ..... (live) in a two-bedroom apartment.

## 2 Choose the correct form.

1. My sister ride / rides a bicycle.
2. Our cat drinks / drink a lot of water when it's hot out.
3. Salma tidies / tidy her room every day.
4. My dad never do / does the shopping.
5. Malak watch / watches TV in the evening.

### Notes for parents

- 1 Ask your child to complete the sentences with the present simple form of the verbs in brackets.
- 2 Ask your child to choose the correct form.

Understand

Learn

Create

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Gameela wakes up for ..... at 7 o'clock.  
a. park                      b. hospital                      c. museum                      d. school
- She catches the ..... to go home.  
a. car                      b. bus                      c. van                      d. truck
- Gameela's ..... washes and dries the dishes.  
a. grandma                      b. mother                      c. sister                      d. brother
- Gameela's family watches a movie after .....  
a. lunch                      b. breakfast                      c. dinner                      d. snacks

### 2 Listen and complete.

- Fossil fuels are ..... resources.
- Crude oil is turned into .....
- Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived ..... the dinosaurs.
- There are ..... problems with fossil fuels : global warming and climate change.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- It often ..... in winter.  
a. rained                      b. raining                      c. rains                      d. rain
- Alia ..... the family car every week.  
a. washes                      b. washed                      c. wash                      d. washing
- He ..... to work every day.  
a. drove                      b. driving                      c. drive                      d. drives
- I ..... cereal in the morning.  
a. eat                      b. to eat                      c. eats                      d. eating

<sup>1</sup> Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.

<sup>2</sup> Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences

<sup>3</sup> Ask your child to choose the correct answer

- اطلب من طفلك ان يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- اطلب من طفلك ان يستمع ويكمل الجمل

- اطلب من طفلك ان يختار الإجابة الصحيحة



- **4** Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

animals – fossil fuels – natural gas – airplanes

Renad : Hello, Dalia. Our lesson today was about fossil fuels.

Dalia : That's great ! Can you give me examples of (1) ?

Renad : Of course. Oil, coal and (2) .

Dalia : Why do we call them fossil fuels ?

Renad : Because the plants and (3) lived a very long time ago.

Dalia : How can people use fewer fossil fuels ?

Renad : I think they can install solar panels on their roof at home so they can generate more renewable energy.

Dalia : It's fantastic.

- **5** Write a text of FIFTY (50) words by using the following guiding elements.

Your day

محب عنه فى نهاية الكتب

**Guiding words :**

- wake up
- brush teeth
- catch bus
- eat breakfast
- finish school
- go home



#### Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box.

5. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding words.

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (50) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية

# Reaching Renewable energy



## Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

الاستماع وردد.

### Key Vocabulary

wave power	طاقة الأمواج	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية
wind power	طاقة الرياح	tidal power	طاقة المد والجزر

### Other Vocabulary

road	طريق	solar panels	أنواح شمسية
rock	صخرة	trip	رحلة قصيرة
sunshine	شروق الشمس	excited	متحمس
different	مختلف	workers	عمال
electricity	كهرباء	engineer	مهندس
electrical energy	طاقة كهربائية	soon	قريباً
dusty	ملئ بالعبار	mechanical energy	طاقة ميكانيكية
renewable energy	طاقة محدودة	solar farm	محطة شمسية

### جاء في : ١٠٠ كلمة من كتاب

### تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

#### Irregular

##### Present

##### Past

turn	يحول	turned
destroy	يدمر	destroyed
transfer	يحول / ينقل	transferred

##### Present

##### Past

be	يكون	was - were
see	يرى	saw
build	بنى	built
burn	يحرق	burnt
tell	يخبر	told

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

## Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات وحروف جر هامة

most of the time معظم الوقت  
ask a question يسأل سؤال  
put hands up رفع اليد  
easy to look after سهل الاعتناء به  
turn into يتحول إلى

make electricity سح كهرباء  
to learn more about لتعلم أكثر عن  
the perfect place المكان المثالي  
change from one kind to another يتغير من نوع إلى آخر



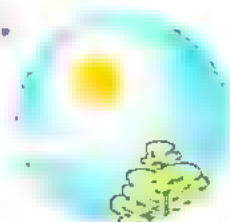
## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

### Look and write the words.

1.



2.



3.



4.



### ★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

## Solar panels in the Desert لواح شمسية في الصحراء

Seleem walks to school every day. The road is next to the desert<sup>(1)</sup>. It is usually hot, sunny and dusty<sup>(2)</sup> on the road. Last year, there was nothing in the desert. Sometimes Seleem saw a lizard<sup>(3)</sup>, but most of the time, he just saw rocks and sunshine<sup>(4)</sup>. Now things are different. He sees lots of workers<sup>(5)</sup> and trucks in the desert. They are building a solar farm. At school, Seleem's teacher asks the class a question. "What is renewable energy?"

### Check Vocabulary

- (1) صحراء
- (2) ملي بالغيبار
- (3) سحلية
- (4) ضوء الشمس
- (5) عمال

### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the words.
- Help your child look and read the text.

اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمات  
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويفهم النص  
خمس سليم إلى المدرسة كل يوم الطريق بجانب الصحراء. وعادة ما يكون الجو حار، مشمسًا ومليًا بالغيبار على الطريق. السنة الماضية لم يكن هناك شيء  
في الصحراء. أحيانًا يرى سحلية، ولكن في معظم الأوقات كان يرى فقط الصخور وضوء الشمس. لكن اختفت الأمور فهو يرى أكثر من العمال  
و شاحنات في الصحراء. هم يبنون محطة الطاقة الشمسية في المدرسة. يسأل مدرس سليم بفصل سؤال "ما هي الطاقة المتجددة؟"

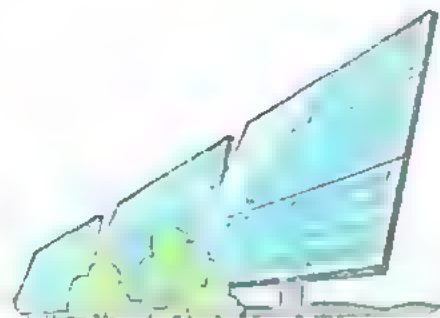
Seleem puts his hand up. "Renewable energy is from a resource that won't run out." he said.

"Very good," said Mr Ali. "We need to make electricity<sup>(6)</sup>. We can burn fossil fuels<sup>(7)</sup>

like oil and gas, but they will run out.

We can also make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water. Tomorrow we will go on

a short school trip to learn more about renewable energy here in Aswan".



#### Check Vocabulary

(6) كهرباء

(7) وقود حفرى

(8) مهندسين

The next day, Seleem and his class are very excited. Mr Ali takes them to the new solar farm. They meet the workers.

Some of the workers are putting solar panels in the desert.

Some workers are driving trucks. Some workers are engineers<sup>(8)</sup>.

One of the engineers tells the class, 'We will have more electricity in the city soon, and in your school too! We have so much sunshine in the desert, so it is the perfect place for a solar farm.

The solar panels collect energy from the sun and we can make that into electricity for our homes".

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

**Learn** 1. Why is the desert a good place for a solar farm ?  
Because there is so much sunshine in the desert.

**Practice** 2. How can we make electricity ?

يرفع سليم يديه "الطاقة المتجددة هي من مصدر لن ينضب" قال الأستاذ علي "جيد جدًا" قال الأستاذ علي "يحتاج أن ينتج الكهرباء بمكبس حرق الوقود لحرق من البرول والغاز، لكنهم سيقوموا بمكبس أيضا أن ينتج الكهرباء من مصادر متجددة مثل الرياح أمياه غذا سذهب إلى رحلة مدرسية قصيرة لتعلم عن الطاقة المتجددة هنا في أسوان" في اليوم التالي، سليم ورفيقوه محمسون جدًا بأحدهم الأستاذ علي إلى مرعة الرياح الجديدة ليقابلوا المعلم. بعض المعلم يصنعون ألواح شمسية في الصحراء، بعض المعلم يغودون الشجرات بعض المعلم من المهندسين. كان أحد المهندسين يحرق الفصل "سيكون لدينا الكثير من حرقه الكهرباء في المدينة قريبًا، وفي مدرستكم أيضا! لدينا الكثير من ضوء الشمس في الصحراء، لذا فهو مكان مثالي للمحطة الطاقة لشمسية تجمع الألواح الشمسية الطاقة من الشمس ويمكننا تحويلها إلى كهرباء لمنازلنا"

اقرأ ونعرف على الطاقة الشمسية. **Read and identify the solar energy.**

### Advantages

Solar panels are easy to look after.  
الألواح الشمسية سهلة العناية بها.



Electricity from solar power is cheap.  
الكهرباء من الطاقة الشمسية رخيصة الثمن.

### Disadvantages

Solar farms need a very big space.  
مزارع الطاقة الشمسية تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة جدًا.



Solar panels are expensive.  
الألواح الشمسية باهظة الثمن.



We can't make solar power on a rainy day.  
لا يمكننا أن نصنع الطاقة الشمسية في يوم ممطر.

استمع واقرأ. **Listen and read.**

We can't destroy<sup>(1)</sup> energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels<sup>(2)</sup> to collect sunlight<sup>(3)</sup>, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy<sup>(4)</sup> for a television, it is now mechanical energy<sup>(5)</sup>.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يدمر
- (2) ألواح شمسية
- (3) ضوء الشمس
- (4) طاقه كهربائية
- (5) طاقة ميكانيكية

Choose  
the correct  
answer :

**Learn** 1. We can't ..... energy.

- a. use
- b. cell
- c. destroy
- d. need

**Practice** 2. We use solar panels to collect

- a. water
- b. sunlight
- c. wave
- d. tidal

### Notes for parents

• Ask your child to read and identify the advantages and disadvantages of solar energy

• Help your child listen and read text

طلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويحدد على مميزات وعيوب الطاقة الشمسية

• تساعد طفلك على فهم النص  
• يمكن أن يكون هناك بعض تحويلات من أحد أنواع الطاقة إلى نوع آخر هذا يسمى تحويل الطاقة. عندما تستخدم الألواح الشمسية لتحويل ضوء الشمس إلى طاقة كهربائية، عندما تستخدم هذه الطاقة الكهربائية للسفر، هي الآن طاقة ميكانيكية



# Dictation



إتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

## Read and spell

wave power

wind power

solar panels

tidal

dusty

run out

rock

sunshine

electricity

excited

workers

destroy

burn

## Complete

w \_ ve p \_ \_ er

w \_ \_ d pow \_ \_

\_ \_ lar p \_ \_ els

t \_ d \_ l

du \_ \_ y

\_ u \_ o \_ t

ro \_ \_

sun \_ \_ in \_

\_ le \_ tric \_ \_ y

ex \_ \_ t \_ d

w \_ \_ ke \_ s

d \_ \_ tr \_ y

b \_ \_ n

## Write

# General Exercises

## on Lesson 3

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب.

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Wave power is when energy is captured from ...  
a. tidal                      b. sun                      c. waves                      d. water
- ..... power uses wind turbines to generate electricity.  
a. Wave                      b. Wind                      c. Solar                      d. Tidal
- Solar power uses light from the .....  
a. wind                      b. wave                      c. water                      d. sun
- We can generate ..... from the wind power.  
a. wave                      b. oil                      c. electricity                      d. water

### 2 Listen and complete.

- Solar panels are .....
- We can't make solar power on a ..... day.
- Solar farms need a very big .....
- Solar panels are ..... to look after.

### 3 Read and complete the text from the words in the box.

electrical – mechanical – sunlight – oil

When we change one kind of energy into another kind of energy it is called transfer of energy. Solar panels collect (1) .....  
The solar panels turn the solar energy into (2) ..... energy. When you use this energy to turn on a light, it becomes (3) ..... energy.

### 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- make - from - We - electricity - can - renewable resources.  
.....
- need - space - big - Solar farms - a very.  
.....

#### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
- Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.

- Ask your child to read and complete the text with the correct word from the box.

- Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجملة

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق

اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

# Lesson

## 4

مراجعة

مراجعة

### Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

الاستماع والتكرار.

#### Key Vocabulary

experience	خبرة	career	مسيره
talent	موهبة	promotion	ترقية
skill	مهاره	presentation	عرض تقديمي

#### Extra Vocabulary

project	مشروع	practice	ممارسة
nervous	عصبي / متوتر	knowledge	معرفة
twins	توائم	computer programming	برمجة الحاسب الآلي
ability	قدرة	wind farm	مزرعة رياح
training	تدريب	senior manager	مدير أول
wind turbine	توربينات (محركات الرياح)	university	جامعة
option	خيار	junior engineer	مهندس مبتدئ
calm	هادئ	interview	مقابلة شخصية
interviewer	مقابلة		

#### تصريف الأفعال

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

#### Irregular

##### Present

##### Past

present	يقدم	presented
practice	يمارس	practiced

##### Present

##### Past

forget	ينسى	forgot
hear	يسمع	heard
teach	يُدرس	taught

\* Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويكررها.

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

do a project on	يقوم بمشروع عن	do a job	يقوم بوظيفة
neither of	لا أحد من	do naturally	يقوم بأداء شيء بشكل طبيعي
each of	كلّ من	apply to	يقدم طلباً لـ
at the end of	في نهاية	train for	يتدرب لمدة

☆ Read and identify the definitions. اقرأ وتعرف على التعريفات.

Word	Definition
experience خبرة	knowledge or practice of doing something معرفة وممارسة لعمل شيء ما
skill مهارة	the ability to do something well after practice and training القدرة على فعل شيء ما بشكل جيد بعد التدريب والتمرين
talent موهبة	something that you do well naturally شيء ما تفعله بشكل جيد بالفطرة
career مهنة	all of the different jobs that a person does in their life الوظائف المختلفة التي يعملها الشخص في حياتهم
to train someone أن تدرب شخص ما	to teach someone how to do a job أن تعلم شخص ما كيف يؤدي وظيفة معينة
promotion ترقية	when you get a higher position where you work عندما تحصل على مكانة أعلى في المكان الذي تعمل به



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- Read and choose the correct word between brackets.
  1. Sandy would like to have a (talent - skill - career) in medicine.
  2. After two years, Amr got a / an (skill - experience - promotion) to senior manager.
  3. Huda's sister has three years' (experience - job - skill) as an accountant (محاسب).

### Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify the definitions.
- Ask your child to read and choose the correct word between brackets.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على التعريفات.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الكلمة الصحيحة مما بين الأقواس.

## Nouns and corresponding possessive adjectives

الأسماء وصفات الملكية المقابلة لها.

### 1 Pronouns

الضمائر

Subject Pronouns	Possessive Adjectives
I	my
He	his
She	her
It	its
We	our
You	your
They	their



She presented her project.

### 2 Rules of using nouns and possessive adjectives

- 1 When the noun is a boy (He) → we use (his)
- 2 When the noun is a girl (She) → we use (her)
- 3 When it isn't important, or we don't know if the noun is a boy or a girl (someone / no one / person) → we use (their)
- 4 When the noun is plural (They) → we use (their)

**Notice :** تعامل هذه الكلمات (Someone - Each - No one - Neither) معاملة المفرد والفعل الذي يليها يكون مفرد بينما الضمير الذي يعود عليها يكون جمع.

• Both → their • Neither of → their • Each of → their





## POP QUIZ ON LANGUAGE

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Neither of the boys has done \_\_\_\_\_ homework.  
a. their      b. his      c. ours      d. her
- Some of the children held \_\_\_\_\_ mother's hand.  
a. his      b. its      c. their      d. her
- The little boy who lives next door played with \_\_\_\_\_ toys.  
a. their      b. him      c. her      d. his

### 2 Complete by writing a pronoun that agrees with each subject.

- A person needs to see \_\_\_\_\_ dentist twice a year.
- He went to see \_\_\_\_\_ favorite basketball team.
- Sama drank \_\_\_\_\_ coffee.
- The boat lost \_\_\_\_\_ way in the storm.



## Listening

### ★ Listen, read and role-play.

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.



Hello, Mariam. Thank you for coming to this interview today.

مرحبًا يا مريم. شكرًا لـ قدومك إلى هذه المقابلة اليوم.



Hello.

مرحبًا.



First of all, do you have any experience for this job ?

أولًا قبل كل شيء، هل لديك أي خبرة في هذه الوظيفة ؟



Yes, I do. I studied engineering at Cairo University. And I worked at a wind farm in Kenya for 3 years.

نعم، لـ. درست الهندسة في جامعة القاهرة وعملت في محطة طاقة الرياح في كينيا لمدة ٣ سنوات.



### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
  - Ask your child to complete by writing a pronoun that agrees with each subject.
- Help your child listen to the dialogue and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.  
• اطلب من طفلك أن يكمل بكتابة الضمير المناسب لكل فاعل.  
• اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.



Oh, that's good. Do you have any special skills ?

آوه ! هذا جيد. هل لديك أي مهارات خاصة ؟



I think so. I am very good at problem solving. I like to think of different ways to solve a problem, and then decide on the best option with my team. I also have good computer programming skills. I learned them at college.

أعتقد ذلك. أنا جيدة جدًا في حل المشكلات. أحب التفكير في طرق مختلفة لحل مشكلة ما، ثم اتخاذ القرار بشأن الخيار الأفضل مع فريقى. أنا أيضًا لدي مهارات برمجة جيدة لقد تعلمتهم في الكلية.



And do you have any special talents ?

وهل لديك أي مواهب خاصة ؟



Well, I have always been a calm person. I was just born that way.

حسنًا، لقد كنت دائمًا شخصًا هادئًا. لقد نشأت بهذه الطريقة.



Why are you interested in working at the Ras Ghareb wind farm ?

لماذا يهمنى العمل في محطة رياح رأس غارب ؟



I want to continue my career as a wind turbine engineer. I've worked at a turbine factory in Spain, and as you know at a wind farm in Kenya, so this would be my third job. This job will help me build my career.

أريد أن أكمل مسيرتى المهنية كمهندسة لتوربينات الرياح. لقد عملت في مصنع توربينات في أسبانيا، وكما تعلم في محطة رياح كينيا، فهذه ستكون وظيفتى الثالثة. هذه الوظيفة ستساعدنى في بناء مسيرتى المهنية.



Excellent. Well, we have to train you first. That will take 1 month, and then you can start working. How does that sound ?

ممتاز. حسنًا، علينا أن ندربك أولًا. سيستغرق ذلك شهرًا واحدًا، وبعد ذلك يمكنك البدء في العمل. كيف يبدو هذا ؟



That sounds good.

هذا يبدو جيدًا.



Do you have any questions about the job ?

هل لديك أي أسئلة حول الوظيفة ؟



Yes, I do. Is there a possibility of a promotion ?

نعم، لدى. هل هناك إمكانية للترقية ؟



Yes, there is. You will start as a junior engineer. After two years, you can get a promotion and become a senior engineer.

نعم، هناك. سوف تبدأين كمهندسة مبتدئة، بعد عامين، يمكنك الحصول على ترقية وتصبحين مهندسة أولى.

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- Mariam studied ..... at Cairo University.  
a. farming      b. nursing      c. teaching      d. engineering
- Mariam worked at a ..... farm in Kenya.  
a. solar      b. wind      c. wave      d. animal
- Mariam is a ..... person.  
a. tired      b. angry      c. calm      d. nervous
- Mariam worked at a turbine factory in .....  
a. Spain      b. Cairo      c. Kenya      d. England

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- Yassin left ..... book on the desk.  
a. its      b. his      c. their      d. her
- The two dinosaurs looked at ..... food.  
a. her      b. their      c. they      d. his
- My mother ate ..... salad.  
a. she      b. theirs      c. him      d. her
- No one of the students go to ..... classes.  
a. them      b. they      c. his      d. their
- One of my uncles has changed ..... address.  
a. his      b. their      c. its      d. her
- Mr and Mrs Ali bought a plant for ..... house.  
a. they      b. their      c. his      d. her

### 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- their - to - They - project - presented - the class.
- train - month - will - for - Mariam - one.
- Ras Ghareb - farm - the - is - Where - wind ?

#### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer
- Ask your child to choose the correct word
- Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly

... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..

# Lessons 5 & 6

١٢٣٤٥٦٧٨٩١٠١١١٢



## Vocabulary



Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### Key Vocabulary

responsible	مسئول	supportive	مدعم / مؤيد
collaborate	يتعاون	flexible	مرن / قابل للتكيف
attitude	انحاح / تصرف / موقف	reliable	موثوق به / جدير بالثقة
application	طلب		

### Extra Vocabulary

sensitive	حساس	brainstorm	عصف ذهني
problem solver	حلل المشكلة	solution	حل
email	بريد إلكتروني	positive	إيجابي
sender	الراسل	teamwork	عمل جماعي
dear	عزيزي	imagination	خيال
signature	إمضاء / التوقيع	address	عنوان
conclusion	خاتمة	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
advertisement	إعلان	sincerely	بإخلاص
magazine	مجلة	section	قسم
individual	فردى	hiring engineers	توظيف مهندسين
contractions	الختصارات	designer	مصمم
spaceship	سفينة فضاء		

### Conjugation of Verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

##### Present

complete	يكمل
admit	يعترف
communicate	يتواصل
design	يصمم

##### Past

completed
admitted
communicated
designed

#### Irregular

##### Present

feel	يشعر
get	يحصل على
find	يجد
meet	يقابل

##### Past

felt
got
found
met

\* Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

\* ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات و يردد لهم



work in a team	يعمل فى فريق	agree on	يوافق على
share with	يشارك مع	get upset	يسرعء
rely on	يعتمد على / يثق فى	look forward to	يسطلع الى
listen to	يسسمع الى	apply for the job	يسقدم بطلب وظيفءة
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	run on	يعمل بواسطة
get worried about	يصبء قلقا بشأن		

★ Listen and read. اسسمع واقراء. | تءرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاسمعاع | Pop Quiz

### كيف تكون عضو جيد فى فريق How to Be a Good Team Member

Teamwork<sup>(1)</sup> is very important for the success<sup>(2)</sup> of a project. Here are 5 points to remember when you're working in a team.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عمل جماعى
- (2) نجاح
- (3) مشاعر
- (4) يعتمد على
- (5) عصف ذهنى
- (6) حلول

**1. Communicate** Share your ideas and feelings<sup>(3)</sup> with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. Remember to be sensitive to how others might feel. You should be polite too.

**2. Collaborate** Actively work together with your team members to get the best results. You might have a good idea, but make sure to listen to others' ideas too.

**3. Be responsible** Remember to complete your part of a project. Your team members are relying on<sup>(4)</sup> you to do your part. If you're finding your role difficult, ask for help.

**4. Solve problems** Instead of getting worried about problems, be a problem solver. Brainstorm<sup>(5)</sup> many different solutions<sup>(6)</sup> to the problems with your team members and agree on the best solution.

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك ان يسمع ويفهم النص

الهدف من هذه الصفحة هو مساعدة الوالدين على فهم النص الذي يقرأه طفلك. يرجى قراءة النص بعناية ومناقشة المعنى مع طفلك. يمكنك أيضًا مساعدة طفلك على فهم الكلمات الجديدة.

يمكنك أيضًا مساعدة طفلك على فهم الكلمات الجديدة. يمكنك أيضًا مساعدة طفلك على فهم الكلمات الجديدة.

يمكنك أيضًا مساعدة طفلك على فهم الكلمات الجديدة. يمكنك أيضًا مساعدة طفلك على فهم الكلمات الجديدة.



**5. Have a positive attitude** There might be some difficult times when working together. Stay calm and don't get upset. If you are positive, you'll help yourself and the other team members be more successful.

**Read**  
and tick (✓)  
or (x):

**Learn**

1. Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. ☒

**Practice**

2. Collaborate means to share ideas with others. ☐



## Writing Skill

### How to write an email to apply for a job.

- 1 Start with Dear, .....
- 2 Say what you want to write about in the main part.
- 3 Add the email address to the sender.
- 4 End your email with "Yours sincerely,"

### How to write an email

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Greeting and name : Dear اسم المرسل إليه

Introduction المقدمة

main part

الجزء الرئيسي

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

conclusion الخاتمة

ending Yours sincerely,

signature Adam Nader

\*Help your child identify how to write an email.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني

هـ يمكن لطفلك اتجاه إلكتروني قد يكون هناك بعض الأوقات العصيبة عند العمل معاً ابقى هادئاً وبعد بمرح إذا كنت إيجابياً فستساعد نفسك وأعضاء الفريق الآخرين أن يكتبوا أكثر نجاحاً

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف. Pop Quiz

## To apply for a job

message x

Secure https://yahoo.com

To: rashahesham@mail.com

Cc:

Subject: job application

Dear Ms. Rasha,

I am writing because I saw your advertisement for the Tidal Power Engineer in New Technologies magazine. I would be very interested in working for you as a tidal power engineer. I studied engineering at Cairo University and I am very interested in renewable energy sources.

I could travel to Giza for an interview or meet online at any time from Sunday to Thursday.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely, ending النهاية

Adam Nader signature الموقع

Greeting and name  
التحية والاسم

conclusion الخاتمة  
main part الجزء الاساسي

Choose  
the correct  
answer:

Learn

1. When writing the greeting, you say

a. Dear Rasha,

b. Ms. Rasha

Practice

2. Who is writing the email ?

a. Ms. Rasha

b. Adam Nader

### Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify a formal letter.

ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ ويتعرف على خطابات رسمية

عزيرى السيدة رشا اكتب لاسى رايت اعلان لوظيفة مهندس طاقة المد والجزر فى مجلة «نيو تكنولوجى» سوف اكون مهمتها جدا بالعمل معك كمهندس لطاقة المد والجزر بعد درسيب الهندسة فى جامعه القاهرة وانا مهتم جدا بمصادر الطاقة المتجددة يمكنى السفر إلى البحيرة لإجراء مقابلة أو لقاء عبر الإنترنت فى أى وقت من الأحد إلى الخميس انطلق إلى سماع الأخبار قريباً مع جالسى تعديري  
ادم نادر

• Understand • Apply • Create

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Amir finds it difficult to make .....  
a. design                      b. project                      c. work                      d. friends
- If things are difficult at work, he gets .....  
a. happy                      b. excited                      c. upset                      d. hungry
- He is not good at ..... to his team members' ideas.  
a. listening                      b. seeing                      c. touching                      d. walking
- He works for a design .....  
a. station                      b. company                      c. street                      d. hospital

### 2 Listen and complete.

- In a team, you need people who are .. .. .
- People need to ..... while working with other people.
- You should have a ..... attitude if things are difficult.
- You should communicate well with other team .. .. .

### 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- too – be – You – should – polite.
- and – Stay – get – upset – don't – calm.
- job – What – for – type – is – of – it ?

1 Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يسمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.  
2 Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences with the correct word. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل بالكلمة الصحيحة.  
3 Ask your child to read and order the words then write the sentences correctly. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويترتب الكلمات ثم يكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.

- **4** Read and complete the text with words from the box.

worried - Share - complete - successful

Teamwork is a very important skill for the success of any team. (1) \_\_\_\_\_ your ideas and feelings with the other team members. Remember to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ your part of a project well. Your team members are relying on you to do your part. Instead of getting (3) \_\_\_\_\_ about problems, be a problem solver.

- **5** Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

How to be a good team member

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

#### Guiding questions :

1. How can teamwork be important for success ?
2. What should you do in a teamwork ?



#### Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box.

5. Ask your child to write a text of (50) word about the given topic using the given guiding questions.

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص عن الموضوع المعطى له من خلال الإجابة على الأسئلة المغطاة له

# Test your skills



## Unit 5

If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

إذا حصل على ● فمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.



### My Dictation

#### 1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

- A. renewable  
resource  
fossil fuels  
experience  
promotion

B.

فحم  
تغير المناخ  
الطاقة الشمسية  
طاقة المد والجزر  
كهرباء

### My Language

#### 2 Read and circle the correct answer.

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Reem goes to ..... school every day.  
☐ she ☐ their ☐ her
- They have got a dog.  
..... name is Simba.  
☐ Her ☐ Its ☐ His
- He always ..... hard in his exams.  
☐ tries ☐ try ☐ tried
- She ..... many things to do.  
☐ having ☐ have ☐ has

### My Reading

#### 3 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

- ..... are materials that we get from nature.  
☐ Natural resources  
☐ Non-renewable resources
- Crude oil turned into .....  
☐ petroleum ☐ fuel
- Ahmed has applied for a ..... as an electrical engineer.  
☐ skill ☐ job
- You will have to ..... for two months to learn everything you need to know.  
☐ promotion ☐ train

### My Writing

#### 4 Write two advantages of solar energy.

اكتب ميزتين للطاقة الشمسية.

#### 5 How to be a good team member. Mention two.

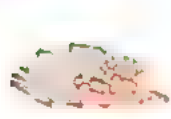
كيف تكون عضوًا جيدًا في الفريق. أذكر اثنين.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.





# Review on unit 5



wood



soil



stone



metal



petroleum



water



plastic



wind power



solar power



coal



fossil



- Amir presented his project.
- Both children presented their projects on Tuesday.
- A baby cries when she's hungry.
- Magdy finishes his homework.

- soil

- wood

- water

- plastic

- metal

- petroleum

There are 5 points to remember when you're working on a team.

1. Be responsible
2. Collaborate
3. Solve problems
4. Communicate
5. Have a positive attitude

## Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 5

# Skills



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بحمل  
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

## 1. Reading for understanding

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Natural resources	materials	Natural resources are materials that we get from nature
	renewable	Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out
	sun - wind	The sun, wind and falling water are renewable resources
	non-renewable	When we use all of non-renewable resources up, we can't get any more.
	metals	Metals and petroleum are non-renewable resources
Renewable energy	source - run out	Renewable energy is from a source that won't run out
	electricity - wind	We can make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water.
	solar farm	The desert is the perfect place for a solar farm
	solar panels	We use solar panels to collect sunlight
	electrical energy	The solar energy is turned into electrical energy
Teamwork	cheap	Electricity from solar power is cheap
	success	Teamwork is very important for the success of a project.
	share - ideas	Share your ideas and feelings with the other members.
	best results	Actively work with your team to get the best results.
	calm - upset	Stay calm and don't get upset.
My day	solver - solutions	Be a problem solver. Brainstorm many solutions.
	wake up	I wake up for school at 7 o'clock.
	face - breakfast	I wash my face. I eat my breakfast.
	school	I go to school at 7:30.
	bus - home	I catch the bus to go home.
	homework	I do my homework.
	movie	We watch a movie after dinner.

## 2. How to make a sentence

تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة

الجملة الخبرية

- oil – fuel – into – Crude – turned – is.
- are – types – metal – There – different – of .

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

الجملة الأمرية

- that – do – Don't.
- your – Build – career.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

- fossil – your family – fuels – Why – use – does ?
- are – resources – What – natural ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	باقى الجملة
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

- made – Is – of – wood – it ?
- in your classroom – find – Can – minerals – you – any ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1				
2				

### 3. Writing skills

١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

## Resources in our world

### Natural Resources

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature.

### Example

Wood, stone, soil, water, plastic, metal and petroleum are examples of natural resources.

### Uses

We use stone to construct buildings.  
We use water to drink.  
We use wood to make tables.

### Renewable

Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out.

### Non-renewable

These are things like plastic and metals. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more.

### Opinion

Natural resources are very important and we should use them in a good way.

### Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. Wood, stone, soil, water, plastic, metal and petroleum are examples of natural resources. We use stone to construct buildings and bridges. We use water to drink. We use wood to make tables and chairs. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. Non-renewable resources can not be replaced when they run out. Natural resources are very important and we should use them in a good way.

٢. تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1

### Solar panels

Solar panels are expensive.<sup>(1)</sup> We can't make solar power on a rainy day.<sup>(2)</sup> Solar panels collect sunlight.<sup>(3)</sup> Also, solar farms need a very big space.<sup>(4)</sup> However, solar panels are easy to look after them.<sup>(5)</sup> Electricity from solar power is cheap.<sup>(6)</sup>

2

### Fossil fuels

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources.<sup>(7)</sup> Oil, coal and natural gas are fossil fuels.<sup>(8)</sup> Crude oil is taken out of the ground.<sup>(9)</sup> It is processed into petroleum which we use in our cars, buses, and airplanes.<sup>(10)</sup> Coal is taken from deep inside the Earth<sup>(11)</sup>. It is used to generate electricity.<sup>(12)</sup> Coal and natural gas are used in our homes for heating and cooking.<sup>(13)</sup>

3

### Working in a team

Aya works for an engineering company.<sup>(14)</sup> She likes her job and her team members.<sup>(15)</sup> She's positive, helpful and kind to everyone.<sup>(16)</sup> She's always polite, too.<sup>(17)</sup> She works hard, but she often worries about problems that she can't solve.<sup>(18)</sup> Sometimes she doesn't finish her part of a project.<sup>(19)</sup>

4

### To apply for a job

To : Omarhossam@gmail.com

From : Dinaali83@yahoo.com

Subject : job application

Dear Mr Omar,

I am writing because I saw your advertisement for the Solar Panel Engineer on the Renewable Technologies Website.<sup>(20)</sup> I would be very interested in working for you as a solar panel engineer.<sup>(21)</sup> I studied engineering at Cairo University and I worked as a junior engineer on the Benban Solar Park for one year.<sup>(22)</sup> I could travel to Cairo for an interview or meet online at any time from Monday to Friday.<sup>(23)</sup> I look forward to hearing from you soon.<sup>(24)</sup>

Yours sincerely,

Dina Ali



## A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Renewable resources can be ..... when they run out.  
a. replaced      b. made      c. placed      d. raised
- Potatoes are a renewable resource because we can ..... more.  
a. grow      b. help      c. play      d. melt
- ..... is a renewable resource.  
a. Plastic      b. Metal      c. Petroleum      d. Meat
- Farmers can ..... more animals for us to eat.  
a. need      b. make      c. raise      d. help

2 Listen and complete.

- Some of the workers are putting solar ..... in the desert.
- Mr Ali takes Saleem and his class to the new solar .....
- Some workers are driving .....
- The desert is the ..... place for a solar farm.

## B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

renewable - non-renewable - plastic - petroleum

Nader : Good morning, Ghada.

Ghada : Good morning, Nader.

Nader : What are (1) ..... resources ?

Ghada : The resources that we can't get any more.

Nader : Is plastic non-renewable ?

Ghada : Yes, because plastic is made from (2) .....

Nader : How about wood ?

Ghada : No, wood is a (3) ..... resource.

1 Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.  
2 Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.

3 Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة  
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

- 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Nancy wakes up for school at 7 o'clock. First, she washes her face. Then she eats her breakfast and brushes her teeth. She goes to school at 7:30. School finishes at 2 o'clock. She catches the bus to go home. Then she does her homework. Sometimes she helps her mom make dinner. Her brother Younis washes and dries the dishes with his father. Her family watches a movie after dinner. Before going to bed, she kisses her mom and dad saying goodnight.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. This text is about ..
 

a. Nancy's father	b. Nancy's school
c. Nancy's mom	d. Nancy's day
2. Nancy catches the ..... to go home.
 

a. train	b. car	c. taxi	d. bus
----------	--------	---------	--------

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. When does Nancy wake up for school ?
4. What a good thing does Nancy do before going to bed ?

5 **The reader**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Zeinab's friends don't like Khayameya.
2. Lobna invents things all the time.

[ T ]

[ ]

[ ]

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Grandpa makes the patterns with three ..... of cotton.
 

a. floors	b. bags	c. layers	d. slices
-----------	---------	-----------	-----------
2. Doha makes amazing .....
 

a. art	b. math	c. Arabic	d. science
--------	---------	-----------	------------

**Notes for parents**

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions

5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.

طلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويحيط عن الأسئلة  
التي من طفلك أن يقرأ ويحيط عن الأسئلة طبقاً لأحداث القصة

### C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Both children did a good job in presentation.  
a. your                      b. their                      c. our                      d. her
2. Rana ..... up for school at 7 o'clock.  
a. wake                      b. wakes                      c. to wake                      d. have woken
3. Tamer did ..... science project on global warming.  
a. his                      b. her                      c. their                      d. our
4. My mom ..... to my grandparents on Saturdays.  
a. go                      b. going                      c. goes                      d. to go

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. her project - She - presented - class - to - the.
2. resources - are - natural - What ?

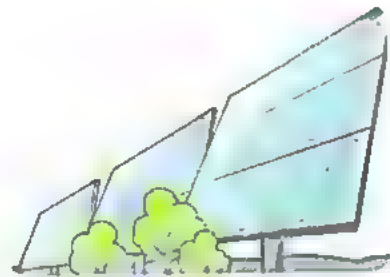
8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words by using the following guiding elements.

Advantages and disadvantages of solar energy

مُحَاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- expensive                      • big space
- electricity                      • easy



6 Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

7. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.

8 Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding words

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (50) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية.

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### A. Listening

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Teamwork is very important for the ..... of a project.  
a. interview      b. success      c. career      d. signature
- You should ..... your ideas with other team members.  
a. catch      b. communicate      c. share      d. train
- If you find your role ....., ask for help.  
a. easy      b. difficult      c. sensitive      d. flexible
- You should listen to other's .....  
a. resources      b. results      c. ideas      d. purposes

(Alexandria - El Gomrok 2022 / Asyut - )

2. Listen and complete.

- We can't ..... energy.
- We can ..... energy from one kind to another kind.
- We use ..... to collect sunlight.
- The solar energy is turned into ..... energy.

(Souhag - Tahta 2022 / Beni S - )

### B. Reading

3. Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

panels - electricity - perfect - solar

Mr Ali takes Seleem and his class to the new (1) ..... farm. They meet the workers. Some of the workers are putting solar panels in the desert. Some workers are driving trucks. Some workers are engineers. One of the engineers tells the class, "We will have more (2) ..... in the city soon, and in your school too" We have so much sunshine in the desert, so it is the (3) ..... place for a solar farm. The solar panels collect energy from the sun and we can make that into electricity for our homes".

(New valley - Kharga 2022)

#### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
- Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
- Ask your child to read and complete the text with words from the box.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة  
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمات الصحيحة من المربع

**Q** Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Amir works for a design company. It is a very busy office and he works hard. He is never late for work. He always finishes his part of a project. He has lots of ideas, but he isn't good at listening to his team members' ideas. Amir finds it difficult to make friends. He often gets upset when things are difficult at work.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. Amir work in a .....

- a. factory                      b. company      c. bank                      d. workshop

2. Amir finds it ..... to make friends.

- a. fun                      b. easy                      c. boring                      d. difficult

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. When does Amir get upset at work ?

4. Is Amir a good team member ?

.....

**5**

### The reader

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Zeinab's friend Rasha, is good at science.

☐ T      ☐ F

2. Grandpa welcomed people who wanted to learn.

☐ T      ☐ F

☐ T      ☐ F

(Sharqia - Abu kebir 2022/Beheira - Damanhur 2022)

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Khayameya school is travelling all .....

- a. summer                      b. winter                      c. autumn                      d. spring

2. Grandpa's ..... are not good to sew now.

- a. hands                      b. ears                      c. legs                      d. eyes

(Fayoum - Sinnuris 2022/Monufia - Monuf 2022)

4 Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة

5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقاً لأحداث القصة



## C. Writing

- 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I ..... up for school at 6 o'clock.  
a. wakes                      b. wake                      c. waking                      d. woke
2. My brother does ..... homework after school.  
a. his                          b. her                          c. she                          d. him
3. Tarek never ..... to school on foot.  
a. go                          b. goes                          c. went                          d. going
4. Omar and Ali bought a present for ..... mum.  
a. his                          b. her                          c. their                          d. them

(Aswan - Edfu 202)

(Sohag .....

(Suez - North Suez 20

- 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. buildings - use - We - stone - construct - to.

2. make - can - electricity - we - How ?

- 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words by using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Write an email to your friend Samar about "renewable energy". Your name is Sama and your email address is samasami@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is samarali@yahoo.com.

**Guiding words :**

source – electricity – solar farm – solar panels – cheap

To : .....

From : .....

Subject : .....

### Notes for parents

6 Ask your child to choose the correct answer

7 Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly

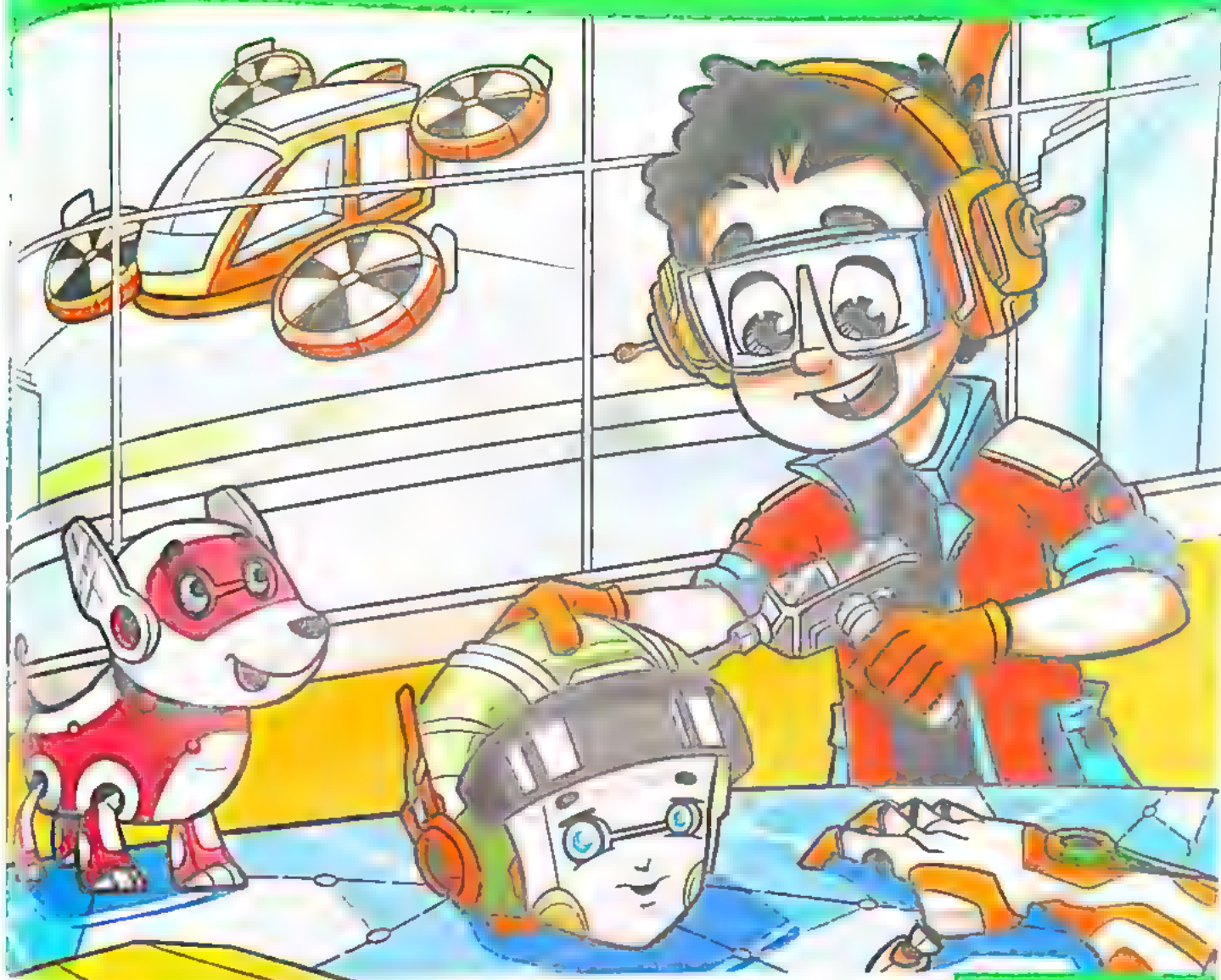
8 Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding words

التمس من طفلك ان يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (50) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية

# 6

## Let's work

### هيا نعمل



• دراسة المعاصر التفاعلية  
• التطبيقات التفاعلية في لدراسة التفاعلية

• استخدام خارب المعاصر للقراءة والكتابة  
• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة  
• دراسة المعاصر للمهارات

الهدف  
الوحدة

### Aims of unit six :

In this unit I will .....

- talk about different kinds of transportation  
تحدث عن الأنواع المختلفة لوسائل النقل
- make predictions about the future  
أوقع عن المستقبل
- understand future tech jobs  
أفهم الوظائف التكنولوجية في المستقبل
- use punctuation marks  
استخدم علامات الترقيم

### الاهداف العامة للوحدة السادسة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف.....

- learn to use search engines on the internet  
تعلم كيفية استخدام محركات البحث على الإنترنت
- create strong passwords and passphrases  
سواء كلمات مرور قوية و عبارات مرور
- write a well organized paragraph  
أكتب فقرة منظمة حسب تنظيم
- create a business plan  
سواء خطة عمل

# Lesson

## 1

## Transportation



### Vocabulary

☆ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### Key vocabulary

water	مياه	rail	دليل سكة حديد
road	طريق	air	هواء
pipe	ماسورة		

### Extra vocabulary

desert town	مدينة صحراوية	government	حكومة
The Suez Canal	قناة السويس	Ancient Egyptians	سكان مصر القديمة
suburb	ضاحية المدينة	deep	عميق
wide	عرض - عريض	comfortable	مريح
airplane	طائرة	goods	صانع
ship	سفينة	taxi	تاكسي
boat	قارب	bus	أوبوس / حافلة
river ferry	عبارات نهريّة	train	قطار
transportation	وسائل المواصلات	different	مختلف

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled
use	يستخدم	used
stop	يقف	stopped

#### Irregular

Present		Past
take	يستقل - يأخذ	took
sit	يجلس	sat
build	يبني	built
understand	يفهم	understood

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

Note : - The Suez Canal is now 193 kilometers long, 205 meters wide, and 24 meters deep. It was started in 1859 and it took ten years to finish it.

- The first train line in Egypt opened in 1854. It traveled from Cairo to Alexandria

إن قناة السويس اليوم أصبحت بطول ١٩٣ كيلو متر، وعرض ٢٠٥ متر، وعمق ٢٤ متر. إنها بدأت عام ١٨٥٩ وأخذت عشر سنوات حتى انتهت أول خط قطار في مصر ثم افتتحه عام ١٨٥٤ كان يمر من القاهرة حتى الإسكندرية

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get water from

يحصل على المياه من ...

be on a train / bus

يكون على متن القطار / الأتوبيس

travel on an airplane / a ship

يسافر في طائرة / سفينة

take a river ferry

يستقل / يركب معدية في النهر

kinds of

أنواع من

stop in ... for

يتوقف عن ... لـ



## Listening

★ Listen, read and role-play.

تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz



Adam

Check Vocabulary

(1) العاصمة

(2) بعيد جدًا

(3) صحراء

(4) في المستقبل

(5) يفهم



My uncle, aunt, and cousins all live in Algiers, the capital<sup>(1)</sup> of Algeria. We want to visit them this year, but it's very far away<sup>(2)</sup> from where we live in Cairo-about 3.000 kilometers. So, we'll take an airplane. It will be really fun ! I hope my parents let me sit by the window.

- عمى، عماتى وأبناء عمومى جميعهم فى الجزائر، عاصمة الجزائر. نحن نريد زيارتهم هذا العام. لا أنها بعيدة جدًا من حيث مكان معيشتنا فى القاهرة - حوالى ٣٠٠٠ كيلومتر. لذلك، نحن سنأخذ طائرة، وسوف يكون ممتعًا جدًا ! أمل أن يسمح لى والدى بالجوس بجانب النافذة.



Amira



Our teacher was telling us about the new cities that people are building in the desert<sup>(3)</sup>. She said that a lot of people will be able to live there very happily in the future<sup>(4)</sup>. We didn't understand<sup>(5)</sup> how the people can get water in the desert without an oasis.

- كان معلمنا يخبرنا عن المدن الجديدة التى يبنوها الناس فى الصحراء. قالت إن الكثير من الناس سيتمكنون من العيش هناك بسعادة كبيرة فى المستقبل. لم يفهم كيف يمكن للناس الحصول على الماء فى الصحراء بدون واحة.

• Help your child listen, read and role-play with his/her colleague.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ النص ويسادل الأدوار مع زميله/زميلته



Our teacher explained that the **government**<sup>(6)</sup> will send water from **Lake Nasser**<sup>(7)</sup> through a pipe in the desert, just like they send **oil**<sup>(8)</sup>. The people who live in the new towns will use the water for whatever they need !

أوضحت معلمتنا أن الحكومة سترسل المياه من بحيرة ناصر عبر أنبوب في الصحراء، مثلما يرسلون النفط، لناس الذين يعيشون في المدن الجديدة سيستخدمون الماء في كل ما يحتاجون إليه !

#### Check Vocabulary

- (6) حكومة
- (7) بحيرة ناصر
- (8) بترول
- (9) وسائل المواصلات
- (10) قطارات كهربائية
- (11) سفينة ملكية



#### Maged



I'm very excited about a new kind of **transportation**<sup>(9)</sup> in Egypt. And it's not a car, bus, or boat. It's the new **electric trains**<sup>(10)</sup>. The government will finish the new electric line in the future. Did you know that these trains can go 250 kilometers per hour ? That's pretty fast !

- أنا متحمس جدًا لنوع جديد من وسائل النقل في مصر. وهي ليست سيارة أو حافلة أو قارب. إنها القطارات الكهربائية الجديدة. ستنتهي الحكومة الخط الكهربائي الجديد في المستقبل. هل تعلم أن هذه القطارات يمكن أن تقطع مسافة ٢٥٠ كيلومترًا في الساعة ؟ هذا سريع جدًا !



#### Lamar



We're studying the Ancient Egyptians at school. We found out that people didn't travel over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for transportation. They moved their goods in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river. I'll show you a picture of Tutankhamun's **royal ship**<sup>(11)</sup> tomorrow.

- نحن ندرس عن القدماء المصريين في المدرسة. اكتشفنا أن الناس لم يسافروا برًا كثيرًا في مصر في ذلك الوقت. استخدم الجميع تقريبًا النهر للنقل. نقلوا بضائعهم في أنواع مختلفة من القوارب والسفن. كما سافر الناس صعودًا وهبوطًا في النهر. سأريك غدًا صورة لسفينة توت عنخ آمون الملكية.





Fares

Check Vocabulary

معابد (12)



Have you ever been to Luxor to visit the famous ancient temples<sup>(12)</sup> in the Valley of the Kings? I always wanted to go because I love archaeology. So, my dad said we could drive there in our new van for our vacation. It took us a whole day, but we stopped for lunch and dinner in different towns. It was really interesting!

- هل سبق لك أن زرت مدينة الأقصر لزيارة المعابد القديمة الشهيرة في وادي الملوك؟ كنت أرغب دائمًا في الذهاب لأنني أحب علم الآثار. لذلك قال والدي أنه يمكننا القيادة هناك في شاحنتنا الجديدة لقضاء إجازتنا. استغرق الأمر منا يومًا كاملًا. لكننا توقفنا لتناول طعام الغداء والعشاء في مدن مختلفة. كان مثيرًا للاهتمام حقًا!

## Language

### 1 The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Usage الاستخدام

★ To talk about experience.

★ للتحدث عن الخبرة.

Formation التكوين

A

Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

I / They / you / we / اسم جمع + have + التصريف الثالث P.P.  
He / she / It / اسم مفرد + has

ex. I have traveled to Spain.

B

Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

I / They / you / we / اسم جمع + have not (haven't) + التصريف الثالث P.P.  
He / she / It / اسم مفرد + has not (hasn't)

ex. He has not (hasn't) seen the coral reefs.

\* Help your child know how to use present perfect tense.

\* ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم زمن المضارع التام.

السؤال بـ "هل"

## Yes / No question



Have + subject الفاعل + p.p. التصريف الثالث  
Has

For short answer : للإجابة المختصرة

Affirmative : yes, الفاعل + have / has.

Negative : No, الفاعل + haven't / hasn't.

ex. Have you ever been to the desert ?

• Yes, I have.

• No, I haven't.

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Infinitive	Past Simple	Past participle
be	was / were	been
break	broke	broken
come	came	come
do	did	done
eat	ate	eaten
make	made	made
see	saw	seen
take	took	taken
write	wrote	written
go	went	gone

### Key words

★ غالبًا ما يأتي المضارع التام مع :

just	حاليًا/توًا	yet	حتى الآن
already	بالفعل	since	منذ
never	أبداً	for	لمدة
ever	من قبل		

## 2 Prepositions of transport

We use (by) with means of transportation. سنستخدم (by) مع وسائل لنقل.

- by bus
- by train
- by airplane

، لاحظ عدم وجود فاصل بين (by) ووسيلة المواصلات.

When there is (a , an or the) before the means of transportation, we use :

عندما توجد (a , an أو the) قبل وسيلة المواصلات نستخدم :

1 on with the means that we can stand in.

تستخدم "on" مع الوسائل التي يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها :

- on an airplane
- on a train
- on a bus

2 in with the means that we can't stand in.

تستخدم "in" مع الوسائل التي لا يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها :

- in a car
- in a taxi



### Pop Quiz on Prepositions

1 Read and tick (✓) for the correct answer.

1. you finished your homework ?  
☐ Has                      ☐ Have                      ☐ Does
2. I have ..... all of the apple juice.  
☐ finishing                      ☐ finish                      ☐ finished
3. He has ..... too hard today.  
☐ working                      ☐ worked                      ☐ work
4. That smells really good. Have you ..... this cake ?  
☐ bake                      ☐ baked                      ☐ baking

2 Read and complete the sentences with (by - on - in).

1. I walk to school, but if it's raining, I go ..... bus.
2. I travel to Alexandria ..... a car.
3. Do you travel ..... train or ..... a bus ?

\* Help your child identify the prepositions of transport

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات

1 Ask your child to read and tick (✓) for the correct answer

يسألك من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة

2 Ask your child to read and complete the sentences with the correct preposition

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل الجمل بحرف الجر الصحيح

# General Exercises

## on Lesson 1

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Everyone used the \_\_\_\_\_ for transportation.  
a. sea                      b. desert                      c. river                      d. ocean
- People moved their goods in boats and \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. trucks                      b. ships                      c. vans                      d. cars
- Tutankhamun had a royal \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. ship                      b. ferry                      c. boat                      d. yacht
- People didn't travel over \_\_\_\_\_ very much in Egypt.  
a. air                      b. land                      c. water                      d. rail

### 2 Listen and complete.

- There are ancient \_\_\_\_\_ in the Valley of the Kings.
- We could drive there in our new \_\_\_\_\_ for our vacation.
- We stopped for lunch and \_\_\_\_\_.
- I love \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

government - fast - train - travel

I'm very excited about a new kind of transportation in Egypt. And it's not a car, bus, or boat. It's the new electric (1). The (2) will finish the new electric line in the future. Did you know that these trains can go 250 kilometers per hour? That's pretty (3).

#### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
- Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences with the correct answer.  
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.
- Ask your child to read and complete the text with the correct word from the box.  
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل بالإجابة الصحيحة.  
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق.

#### 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. often - by train - don't - I - travel.
2. on - a bus - Have - ever - you - been ?

#### 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I travel to Alexandria ..... train.  
a. at                      b. by                      c. in                      d. on
2. Have you ever ..... in a car ? - Yes, I have.  
a. to be                      b. be                      c. been                      d. being
3. .... he slept in the class ?  
a. Have                      b. Has                      c. Did                      d. Does
4. The children have ..... to school.  
a. went                      b. gone                      c. go                      d. going

#### 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

##### Types of transportation

مجاوب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

##### Guiding words :

- |          |            |         |         |
|----------|------------|---------|---------|
| • travel | • airplane | • rail  | • road  |
| • air    | • pipe     | • train | • ferry |

4 Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يربط الكلمات ويكتب الجمال بطريقة صحيحة

5 Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

5 Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding words

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (50) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية



# Lesson

# 2

# Language



## Vocabulary



Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### Key vocabulary

robot	إنسان آلي	Mars	كوكب المريخ
future	مستقبل	vacation	إجازة

### Extra vocabulary

flying taxi	سيارة الأجرة الطائرة	bridge	جسر
podcast	ملف صوتي	roof	سقف
self-driving car	سيارة ذاتية القيادة	career	محنة
education	تعليم	humans	البشر
royal ship	سفينة ملكية	prepay	دفع مقدماً
preview	عرض مسبق	pre-school	ما قبل المدرسة
tech	تكنولوجيا	fuel	وقود
government	حكومة	host	مضيف

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

##### Present

travel ينتقل  
study يذاكر

##### Past

traveled  
studied

#### Irregular

##### Present

drive يقود  
buy يشتري  
fly يطير  
show يوضح

##### Past

drove  
bought  
flew  
showed / shown

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

travel to ..... for .....

- يسافر إلى ..... من أجل .....

by the window

- بجانب النافذة

travel in

on a ship

live on

- يسافر في

- على متن سفينة

- يعيش على

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات و يرددنها

## The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

### Usage

To make predictions about the future.

توقع تنبؤات عن المستقبل.

1

**Affirmative (positive) statements**

الجملة الخبرية  
المنبئة

**Subj. + will (II) + Inf.** باقي الجملة

ex. She will travel on a ship.



2

**Negative statements**

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

**Subj. + will not (won't) + Inf.** باقي الجملة

ex. Omar won't sit by the window.



3

**Interrogative**

صيغة الاستفهام

**A Yes / No question**

- السؤال بـ "هل"

**Will + subj. + Inf.** باقي الجملة ?

**For short answer :**

**Affirmative : yes + subj. + will.**

**Negative : NO + subj. + won't.**

ex. - Will they take a train to Aswan ?

\* Yes, they will.

\* No, they won't.

**B Wh- question :**

السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

**wh- word + will + subj. + Inf.** باقي الجملة ?

ex. - How will you travel to France ?

I will travel on an airplane.



\* Help your child use the future tense to make predictions

- ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن المستقبل في عمل تنبؤات

\* Help your child identify how to ask with Yes/No question or wh-question in the future tense

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف على كيفية السؤال بـ هل أو بكلمة استفهام في زمن المستقبل

## Key words

tomorrow	غداً	next ...	التالى ...
in the future	فى المستقبل	in 2025, 2026,	فى عام 2025, 2026.
on time	فى الوقت		

★ **Read and identify these contractions.** اقرأ و تعرف على تلك الاختصارات.

1. I will → I'll	4. We will → We'll
2. He will → He'll	5. They will → They'll
3. She will → She'll	6. You will not → You won't

This is called a contraction; two words are joined together and a letter, or some letters are dropped.

هذا ما يسمى بالاختصار وفيه يتم دمج كلمتين معاً مع حذف حرف أو بعض الحروف.

### Note :

يستخدم (How) للسؤال عن وسيلة المواصلات.

- How will you travel to Aswan ? - On a river ferry.

## How to make a sentence using the future tense

### 1 Statement :

1 Subj. I	2 Will / Won't will	3 inf. take	4 باقى الجملة a flying taxi to school.
-----------------	---------------------------	-------------------	--

### 2 Question :

1 Will Will	2 Subj. you	3 inf. travel	4 باقى السؤال to the Moon one day ?
-------------------	-------------------	---------------------	---

### Notes for parents

• Help your child learn how to make a sentence using the future tense. • ساعد طفلك أن يكون جملة مستخدماً زمن المستقبل



## Pop Quiz on

### 1 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. He won't **(do)** his homework today.
2. **(Do)** you get up early tomorrow morning? - Yes, I will.
3. A: "The phone's ringing". B: Ok, I will **(answer)** it.
4. Class 1A will **(have)** a test next Monday.
5. The doctor will **(be)** with you in a moment.

### 2 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. He ..... arrive on time.  
☐ will ☐ is
2. It's late. I think I ..... a taxi.  
☐ will take ☐ takes
3. It ..... tomorrow.  
☐ snows ☐ will snow
4. Will you ..... to the club on Saturday?  
☐ go ☐ going
5. People will ..... on the moon in the future.  
☐ lives ☐ live

### 3 Read and complete the sentences with the future simple form.

1. .... me do homework? **(you / help)**
2. I ..... on that swing. **(not / play)**
3. Perhaps we ..... Paris next month. **(visit)**
4. A: Will you visit your uncle? B: No, I ..... **(not / will)**

1 Ask your child to read and complete the sentences with the correct form.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة

2 Ask your child to read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع علامة (✓) للإجابة الصحيحة

3 Ask your child to read and complete the sentences with the future simple form.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل الجمل بصيغة المستقبل البسيط



## PUNCTUATION MARKS

### 1 The question mark (?) : علامة الاستفهام :



- When we write a question, we use (?) a question mark at the end of a question.

عندما نكتب سؤال، نضع علامة الاستفهام في نهاية السؤال.

- Are you OK ?
- What's your name ?

### 2 The exclamation point (!) : علامة التعجب :



- To show strong feelings or emotions.

نستخدم علامة التعجب (!) عند التعبير عن شعور قوي.

• I'm very excited !

- To express shock, surprise or anger.

للتعبير عن صدمة، مفاجأة أو غضب.

• Watch out !

• What a fantastic birthday gift !

- At the end of strong command. : نستخدم في نهاية أمر قوي :

• Shut up !

• Stop !

### 3 Apostrophe (') : فاصلة علوية :



- For contraction of a word.

ليختصار كلمة.

• She'll travel on a ship.

Contraction : Apostrophes show that a letter or more than one letter has been removed.

تظهر الفواصل العليا أنه تم إزالة حرف أو أكثر من حرف

#### Notes for parents

- Help your child identify how to use the punctuation marks

• اطلب من طفلك أن يحدد كيف يستخدم علامات الترقيم



#### 4 Comma (,) : الفاصلة السفلية :



- To join two ideas in a sentence.

نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية لربط فكرتين ببعضهم البعض في جملة.

- We want to visit Aswan this year, but it's very far away from where we live in Cairo.

#### 5 The period (.) : النقطة :



- We use it at the end of a sentence.

نستخدمها في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

- I like ice cream.
- He is young.

### Learn

We use "pre" at the start of words to mean "before". For example, predict means to say something before it happens.

pre-school      ما قبل المدرسة      prepay      يدفع مقدماً



### Pop Quiz on Writing

#### 1 What punctuation mark should end the following sentences with? Choose and write.

1. Wow ☐ You won a gold medal in the Olympics.  
a. (!) exclamation point      b. (?) question mark
2. The children were told to bring the following items : a pen, a pencil ☐ a ruler and an exercise book.  
a. (.) period      b. (,) comma

#### 2 Read and correct the punctuation marks.

1. Will you learn to drive a car !  
.....
2. The train is so fast ?  
.....

<sup>1</sup> Ask your child to choose the correct missing punctuations.

<sup>2</sup> Ask your child to read and correct the punctuation marks.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار علامات الترقيم الناقصة الصحيحة  
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصحح علامات الترقيم.

# General Exercises

## on Lesson 2

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I ..... you move your things tomorrow.  
a. helping      b. have helped      c. help      d. will help
2. The office will ..... you an email on Monday.  
a. sent      b. send      c. sends      d. sending
3. I ..... some new clothes this week.  
a. will get      b. had got      c. got      d. getting
4. Will my mom ..... some cookies for us later ?  
a. making      b. makes      c. made      d. make
5. He will ..... tomorrow.  
a. came      b. come      c. comes      d. to come
6. .... they finish their homework before six o'clock ?  
a. Won't      b. Won't be      c. Will be      d. Will
7. I will ..... the living room.  
a. clean      b. cleaned      c. cleaning      d. to clean
8. Will you see the movie tonight ? - Yes, I .....  
a. won't      b. will      c. won't be      d. will be

### 2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. on - an airplane - will - travel - I .

2. they - to Aswan - Will - take - a train ?

#### Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجملة بطريقة صحيحة.

Key vocabulary

tech = technology	تكنولوجيا	search engine	محرك البحث
link	رابط	ad (advertisement)	إعلان
browser	متصفح	option	خيارات
specific	محدد	search box	صندوق البحث

Extra vocabulary

automobile	دابة الحركة / سيارة	User Experience	خبرة المستخدم
experience	خبرة	high-speed train	القطار السريع
robotic engineer	مهندس روبوت	last	أخير
autonomous machine	آلة تعمل ذاتيًا	space craft	سفينة فضاء
developer	مُتَعَدِّد / مطور	safe	آمن
factory	مصنع	VR headset	جهاز الواقع الافتراضي
brainstorm	يقوم بالعصف لدهش	result	نتيجة
agriculture	زراعة	manufacturing	صناعة
excitement	إثارة	application	تطبيق

Abbreviations

اختصارات

• tech	→	technology	• VR	→	virtual reality
• UX	→	user experience	• ad	→	advertisement

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

### Regular

### Irregular

Present		Past	Present		Past
create	يبدع	created	do	يفعل	did
design	يصمم	designed	wear	يرتدى	wore
cover	يغطي	covered	see	يرى	saw
test	يختبر	tested			
try	يحاول	tried			

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• short for	- اختصار لـ ...	• much better	- أفضل كثيراً.
• in the middle	- في المنتصف	• look up	- بحث عن

★ Read the definitions. اقرأ التعريفات.

Word	Definition
<b>search engine (noun)</b> محرك البحث	is a website that helps you find web pages from other websites هو موقع إلكتروني يساعدك في العثور على صفحات إلكترونية من مواقع أخرى
<b>look up (verb)</b> يبحث عن كلمة في القاموس	search for يبحث عن
<b>link (noun)</b> رابط	a connection to a website or app online اتصال بموقع أو تطبيق عبر الإنترنت
<b>browser (noun)</b> متصفح	is a software application that you use to look at web pages on the internet هو تطبيق برمجى تستخدمه للنظر في الصفحات الإلكترونية عبر شبكة الاتصال العالمية
<b>ad (noun)</b> إعلان	short for advertisement اختصار للإعلان
<b>specific (adj)</b> محدد	particular to one thing خاص بشيء واحد

### Notes for parents

- Help your child read the given definitions.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ التعريفات المعطاة

- Note: There are more than a billion web pages on the internet. يوجد أكثر من بليون صفحة إلكترونية على الإنترنت



## Listening

Pop Quiz  
تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

اسمع واقرأ. Listen and read.



Hello and welcome to the **podcast**<sup>(1)</sup> **Life On Future Earth**. I'm your **host**<sup>(2)</sup>, Gameela Galal, and today we'll be talking about three techjobs that people will do in the future.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) نشرة صوتية
- (2) مصيف
- (3) مصمم كل ما يخص منتج معين
- (4) جهاز الواقع الافتراضي

أهلاً ومرحباً بكم فى النشرة الصوتية عن الحياة المستقبلية على الأرض. أنا مضيفتك، جميلة جلال. وسنتحدث اليوم عن ثلاث وظائف تقنية سيقوم بها الناس فى المستقبل.

The first job is a **UX Designer**<sup>(3)</sup>. UX is short for User Experience. User Experience Designers create a positive experience between you, the user, and the technology that you use, like web pages, apps, and machines like washing machines. UX Designers are interested in the experience that you have with technology. They make sure that it is safe, friendly, and useful for all users.

الوظيفة الأولى هى مصمم UX. UX اختصار لتجربة المستخدم. ينشئ مصممو تجربة المستخدم تجربة إيجابية بينك وبين المستخدم والتكنولوجيا التى تستخدمها، مثل صفحات الويب والتطبيقات والآلات مثل الغسالات. يهتم مصممو UX بالتجربة التى لديك مع التكنولوجيا. يتأكدون من أنه آمن وودى ومفيد لجميع المستخدمين.

Then we have VR developers. VR is short for Virtual Reality. Do you like playing video games ? Have you ever tried playing a virtual reality game ? To do this, you have to wear a special **VR headset**<sup>(4)</sup>. that you wear on your head. It covers your eyes like glasses. VR developers have to create the new world you see when you put on these headsets. They also create the experience you have when using VR. But there are more uses for VR than just exciting games. Museums will use them. And universities will teach future doctors and nurses with them too.

ثم لدينا مطورو VR. VR هو اختصار للواقع الافتراضى. هل تحب لعب ألعاب الفيديو ؟ هل سبق لك أن حاولت لعب لعبة على الواقع الافتراضى ؟ للقيام بذلك، عليك ارتداء سماعة رأس VR خاصة ترتديها على رأسك. تغطى عينيك مثل النظارات. يتعين على مطوري الواقع الافتراضى إنشاء العالم الجديد الذى نراه عندما نرتدى هذه السماعات. كما أنهم ينشئون التجربة التى تحصل عليها عند استخدام الواقع الافتراضى. ولكن هناك استخدامات للواقع الافتراضى أكثر من مجرد ألعاب مثيرة. المتاحف سوف تستخدمها وستقوم الجامعات بتعليم أطباء وممرضات المستقبل معهم أيضاً.

\* Help your child listen and read the podcast.

ساعد طفلك أن يسمع ويقرأ النشرة الصوتية



Robotics engineers are the people who design **autonomous machines** - that's just another word for robots. They also test the robots that they design to make sure that they are good at what they do. We will use these robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans to do. For example, we will use robots to build new automobiles or even high-speed trains. They will probably be used in agriculture and manufacturing too.

Check Vocabulary

أنت تعلم ذاتياً (1)

Well, that's all for today. Thank you for listening and remember to listen to our next show when I'll talk about the future of medicine.

تتحدث روبوتات هم أشخاص لديهم تصميمون آلات مستقلة وهي مجرد كلمة أخرى للروبوتات. نحن نحقق روبوتات التي تصميمونها للتأكد من أنها جيدة في ما يقومون به. سوف نستخدم روبوتات لتقديم توصيفات خطيرة أو صعبة على البشر القيام بها. على سبيل المثال، نستخدم روبوتات لبناء سيارات جديدة أو حتى قطارات عالية السرعة. من المحتمل أن نستخدم في الزراعة وصنع أيضاً. هذا كل شيء لهذا اليوم. شكراً لك على الاستماع وتذكر استماع إلى برنامجنا التالي عندما أتحدث عن مستقبل الطب.

**Read**  
and tick (✓)  
or (X):

**Learn 1.** UX is short for User Experience.

**Practice 2.** VR headsets are only used for playing games.

★ **Listen and read.** ندرج على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع استمع واقرأ. Po

**Narrator :**

Check Vocabulary

Do you ever use **search engines** to look up **information**<sup>(2)</sup> online? Most of us do. We sometimes think that these tools can find anything for us, but they work better when we help them. It's sometimes difficult to find the right information because there is so much information online and so many links. Here are some important things to keep in mind to help you search safely and successfully.

محرك البحث

معلومات (2)

مرحباً: هل سبق لك استخدام محركات البحث للبحث عن المعلومات عبر الإنترنت؟ معظمنا يفعل. نعتقد أحياناً أن هذه الأدوات يمكن أن تجد أي شيء لنا، لكنها تعمل بشكل أفضل عندما نساعدنا. يصعب أحياناً العثور على المعلومات الصحيحة نظراً لوجود الكثير من المعلومات على الإنترنت والعديد من الروابط. فيما يلي بعض الأشياء المهمة التي يجب وضعها في الاعتبار لمساعدتك في البحث بأمان ونجاح.

**Notes for parents**

• Help your child listen and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

First of all, use the safe search option in your browser<sup>(3)</sup>. Maybe an adult already did this for you. If not, you do it. It will protect you from information that is not safe. You can also use search engines that are made for children. They will help you find web pages that are the best ones for you.

#### Check Vocabulary

- (3) متصفح
- (4) أطفال
- (5) صفحات إلكترونية
- (6) إعلانات
- (7) الراعى
- (8) خيارات

أولاً قبل كل شيء، استخدم خيار البحث الآمن في متصفحك. ربما قام شخص بالغ بهذا بالفعل من أهلك. إذا لم يحدث، أنت تفعل ذلك. سيحميك من المعلومات غير الآمنة. يمكنك أيضاً استخدام محركات البحث المخصصة للأطفال. سوف يساعدونك في العثور على صفحات الويب الأفضل بالنسبة لك.

You can add the words for kids<sup>(4)</sup> to your search. This will make sure that you find web pages<sup>(5)</sup> that are the most interesting ones for you. For example, if you want to find out about high-speed trains, type in 'high-speed trains for kids'. You'll be surprised how great your results are !

يمكنك إضافة كلمات (معلومات للأطفال) لبحثك. سيؤدي هذا إلى التأكد من العثور على صفحات الويب التي هي الأكثر إثارة للاهتمام بالنسبة لك على سبيل المثال، إذا كنت تريد التعرف على القطارات عالية السرعة، فاكتب "القطارات عالية السرعة للأطفال". ستندهش من روعة نتائجك !

When the search engine shows you your results, you will probably see some ads<sup>(6)</sup> too. They are sometimes the first links at the top. They can also be on the right. These are not the links you're looking for, so ignore them. You might also see the word 'sponsor'<sup>(7)</sup>. This means that it is also an ad.

عندما يعرض لك محرك البحث نتائجك، من المحتمل أن ترى بعض الإعلانات أيضاً. هم في بعض الأحيان الروابط الأولى في الأعلى. يمكن أن يكونوا أيضاً على اليمين. هذه ليست الروابط التي تبحث عنها، لذا تجاهلها. قد ترى أيضاً كلمة "الراعى". هذا يعنى أنه إعلان أيضاً.

Make sure to read the options in the search box. For example, when you type in 'agriculture', the search box will show you a list of options<sup>(8)</sup> such as 'agriculture meaning, agriculture jobs, and agriculture Egypt'. Choose the option that you need, and not just the first one you see.

تأكد من قراءة الخيارات في مربع البحث. على سبيل المثال، عندما تكتب "الزراعة"، سيظهر لك مربع البحث قائمة بالخيارات مثل "معنى الزراعة، وظائف الزراعة، والزراعة مصر. اختر الخيار الذي تريده، وليس الخيار الأول الذي تراه فقط.

Finally, use **specific words**<sup>(9)</sup> for your searches. If you want to find out about how people use the desert for agriculture in Egypt, type in 'agriculture Egypt desert'. To make you search even more specific, you can use quotation marks around the words. The search engine will understand that you want very specific results.

Check Vocabulary  
كلمات محددة (9)

خيرًا، استخدم كلمات محددة في عمليات البحث الخاصة بك. إذا كنت تريد معرفة كيفية استخدام  
الصحراء في مصر للزراعة، فاكتب "زراعة صحراء مصر". لجعل البحث أكثر تحديدًا، يمكنك  
استخدام علامات الاقتباس حول الكلمات. سيُفهم محرك البحث أنك تريد نتائج محددة للغاية.

**Read**  
and choose  
the correct  
answer :

**Learn** 1. You should use the \_\_\_\_\_ search option in  
your browser.

a. child      b. school      c. safe      d. danger

**Practice** 2. To get the best search results, use \_\_\_\_\_ words.  
a. specific      b. short      c. long      d. tall

**مراجعة الفصل على أعلى الدرجات**

**EL-MONASSER** احرص على اقتناء

اللغة الإنجليزية  
للمف الرابع الابتدائي  
**Connect Plus**  
**المراجعة النهائية**

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



Notes for parents

Understand Apply Create

### 1 Listen and complete.

1. Robotic engineers are the people who **autonomous** machines.
2. Robotic engineers test the ..
3. We will use robots to build new ..
4. Robots will be used in .. and manufacturing.

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue with word from the box.

ads - specific - options - safe search

Ali : I'm doing some research for my science project about renewable energy and wind farms. And I can't find what I'm looking for. Can you help me ?

Mrs Dina : Yes, of course. First, are you using the (1) .. option ?

Ali : Yes, I always use that.

Mrs Dina : Well, use (2) .. words in your search.

Ali : OK... Yes, that's much better. That has brought up lots of different webpages.

Mrs Dina : Look at the first three options in the list. These are (3) .. So don't click on those. Choose the best option for you.

Ali : Thanks, Mrs Dina.

Mrs Dina : You're welcome.

1 Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.

2 Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box.

اطلب من طفلك أن يسمع ويكمل الجملة .  
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق .



• **3** Read the following text and answer the questions below.

- User Experience Designers create a positive experience between the user and the technology. They make sure that your websites, apps and smart machines are safe and easy to use.
- VR developers create a new visual world you see when you play a virtual reality game and wear a special headset. Museums will use these VR headsets so that you can experience walking around an ancient building or city.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. You probably see things as they were in the past when you wear ..  
a. robotic engineer                      b. UX Designer  
c. VR headset                              d. high-speed train
2. Designers make sure that our apps are safe and easy to ..  
a. create              b. start              c. walk              d. use

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Which places will start using VR headsets ?  
.....
4. Who makes sure apps and smart machines safe and easy to use ?  
.....

• **4** Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the best - the search box - option - Choose - in.  
.....
2. the - podcast - to - Welcome .  
.....

**Notes for parents**

3. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.

4. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويحجب عن الأسئلة

اطلب من طفلك أن يرنب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة



## Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

## Key vocabulary

password	كلمة مرور	passcode	سفرة المرور
passphrase	عبارة المرور	address	عنوان

## Extra vocabulary

personal	شخصي	safer	أكثر أمان
information	معلومات	stronger	أقوى
birthday	عيد ميلاد	capital letters	حروف كبيرة
obvious	ملحوظ	favorite	المفضل
series	تسلسل	beautiful	جميل
character = symbol	رمز	pet	حيوان اليف
account	حساب	regular	معتاد - عادي - منتظم
space	مساحة	password code	سفرة لكلمه المرور

## تعليمات المعلم

نصرف الأفعال

## Regular

## Present

add	يضيف
use	يستخدم
create	ينشئ
remember	يتذكر

## Past

added
used
created
remembered

## Irregular

## Present

think	يفكر
tell	يخبر
choose	يختار
make	يصنع

## Past

thought
told
chosen
made

## Important Expressions and Propositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

create strong password

ينشئ كلمة مرور قوية

first of all

قبل كل شيء

you like best

أكثر ما تحبه

mean something for you

لديها معنى بالنسبة لك

\* Help your child listen to the words and repeat them

ساعد طفلك أن يسمع إلى الكلمات ويردد هم

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ. تدريب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

## How to Create Strong Passwords and Passphrases ?

كيف ننشئ كلمات مرور وعبارات مرور قوية ؟

First of all ...

أولاً وقبل أي شيء ...

Check Vocabulary

- \* Don't use **personal**<sup>(1)</sup> information like names, birthdays, phone numbers, or addresses.

(1) شخصي

(2) ملحوظ

(3) تسلسل

(4) رموز

(5) حسابات

- لا تستخدم المعلومات الشخصية مثل الأسماء، أعياد الميلاد، أرقام الهواتف أو العناوين.

- \* Don't use easy or **obvious**<sup>(2)</sup> words, like Password or computer, or **series**<sup>(3)</sup> of numbers, like 1234.

- تستخدم كلمات سهلة أو واضحة مثل كلمة المرور، أو كمبيوتر أو سلسلة من الأرقام، مثل ١، ٢، ٣، ٤ ...

- \* Don't use less than 10 **characters**<sup>(4)</sup>.

- استخدم أقل من ١٠ رموز.

- \* Don't use the same password for different **accounts**<sup>(5)</sup>. And don't tell your friends your passwords.

- لا تستخدم نفس كلمة المرور لحسابات مختلفة. ولا تخبر أصدقائك بكلمات المرور الخاصة بك.

## Create a passphrase إنشاء عبارة مرور

(Passphrases are much safer than regular passwords.)

(تعد عبارات المرور أكثر أماناً من كلمات المرور العادية.)

1. Choose four different words that you can remember :  
mouseferryamazingfootball

١. اختر أربع كلمات مختلفه يمكن أن تتذكرها.

2. Add spaces to make it stronger : mouse ferry amazing football

٢. ضع مسافات لجعلها أقوى.

3. Use some capital letters : mouse FERRY amazing football

٣. استخدم بعض الحروف الكبيرة.

### Notes for parents

- Help your child look, listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يستمع ويقرأ النص

### Create a personal password code إنشاء رمز لكلمته المرور الشخصية

1. Think of your favorite color : green : فكر في لونك المفضل :
2. Add a number : green 87 : أضف رقم :
3. Add your favorite school subject : green 87 science : أضف المادة الدراسية المفضلة لك :
4. Add a symbol : green 87 \$ science : أضف رمز :

### Create a password sentence إنشاء جملة مرور

1. Think of a sentence that means something for you :  
My beautiful pet cat is named Bes : فكر في جملة تعني شيئاً ما بالنسبة لك .
2. Use the first letter of each word : MbpcinB : استخدم الحرف الأول من كل كلمة .
3. Add numbers and characters you can remember : MbpcinB\*49& : أضف أرقام وحروف يمكنك تذكرها .

**Learn** 1. Hat INSECT engine is .....

- a. a passphrase      b. a personal password code  
c. a password sentence

**Read**  
and Choose  
the correct  
answer :

**Practice** 2. IliahiC88& is .....

- a. a passphrase      b. a personal password code  
c. a password sentence

3. Tennis99@english is .....

- a. a passphrase      b. a personal password code  
c. a password sentence

\* Help your child know how to create a strong passwords to stay safe online.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يبتني كلمات مرور قوية ليبقى آمناً على الإنترنت

# General Exercises

on Lesson 4

موضوع  
استماع  
فهم  
كلمات

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## 1 Listen and complete.

1. Don't use ..... information like names.
2. Don't use easy or ..... words.
3. Don't use less than 10 .....
4. Don't ..... your friends your passwords.

## 2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. passwords – some – letters – Use – capital – for.
2. you – remember – numbers – Add – can.

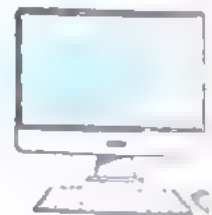
## 3 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

How to create strong passwords

محتاج عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- personal information
- characters
- friends
- serious numbers
- different account
- addresses



### Notes for parents

- 1 Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
- 2 Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly.

- 3 Ask your child to write text of (50) words using the given guiding words.

الأسئلة التي يجب أن تكون في ذهنك : (5) كلمة مستخدمة الكلمات الأرشادية

# Lessons 5&6

- Reading
- Writing
- Project



## Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### Key vocabulary

ship's captain	قبطان السفينة	container ship	سفينة حاويات
Suez Canal	قناة السويس	containers	حاويات

### Extra vocabulary

machinery	مجموعة آلات	items	عناصر / أشياء
facts	حقائق	available	متاح
land	الأرض / اليابسة	business	عمل تجارى / مؤسسة
entrepreneur	مبادر/رائد أعمال	form	شكل
economic	اقتصادي	product	منتج
freight train	قطار شحن	environmentally-friendly	صديق البيئة
classmate	زميل دراسي		

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular

##### Present

wave	يلوح
harm	يؤذي
wait	ينتظر
depend	يعتمد
answer	يجيب
laugh	يضحك
transport	ينتقل

##### Past

waved
harmed
waited
depended
answered
laughed
transported

#### Irregular

##### Present

come	يأتى
say	يقول
go	يذهب
has / have	يمتلك

##### Past

came
said
went
had

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

going along ..	على امتداد ..	travel across	ينتقل عبر
a relaxing job	وظيفة مريحة	came back onto	عاد إلى
for a long time	لمدة طويلة	come from	يأتى من
travel past	يمر بـ	depend on	يعتمد على

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها





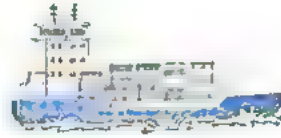
## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

### • Look and write the words.

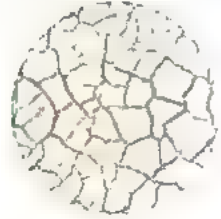
1.



2.



3.



انظر واكتب الكلمات.

### ★ Listen and read.

Pop Quiz  
تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

### A fun job !

Heba looked out of the window of her family's house at the ships going along the **Suez Canal**<sup>(1)</sup>. They were so big.

'It must be so fun to be a **ship's captain**<sup>(2)</sup>!' thought Heba. 'The ship moves so slowly. I think it's a relaxing job'.

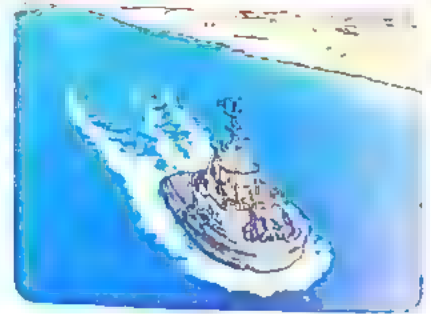
Heba loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ships came from.

One day, Heba's father said, "My friend, Amr, works on a **container ship**<sup>(3)</sup>. He will travel past our house today. Let's go and **wave**<sup>(4)</sup> at him".

Heba and her family went to the side of the Suez Canal and waited for Amr's ship. It was huge and had hundreds of containers on it.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) قناة السويس
- (2) قبطان السفينة
- (3) سفينة حاويات
- (4) يلوح بيده



### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the words.
- Help your child listen and read the story.

طلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمات  
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة

قطعة المصنوعة  
نظرت هبة خارج نافذة منزل عائلتها على السفينة الذهبية على امتداد قناة السويس كانت السفينة كبيرة جدًا «بالناكيد سيكون الأمر ممتعًا أن تكون قبطان سفينة»  
فكرت هبة «إن السفينة تتحرك ببطء» اعتقد أنها وضيعة مريحة أجبت هبة مشاهدة السفينة هي شاهدتهم عائلتها مع أصدقائها هي أحببت أن تفكر عن من أين  
أين السفينة في يوم ما قال والد هبة «صديق عمرو يعمل على سفينة حاويات هو سيعمر بجانب منزلنا اليوم لنذهب ونلوح له» ذهبت هبة وعائلتها إلى جانب قناة  
سويس واسطروا سفينة عمرو لقد كانت ضخمة وبها ألوانات من الحاويات عليها

"Where is the ship going ? 'asked Heba.  
 'You can ask Amr next week, answered her father. He will come and visit<sup>(5)</sup> us then."  
 When Amr came to visit Heba, she had a long list of questions to ask him. He laughed and agreed to answer them all.  
 'I was on the ship when it went through the canal,' he said. "Then I came back onto the land<sup>(6)</sup>, and the ship went to France. It came from China. There were lots of toys and clothes<sup>(7)</sup> in the containers".



#### Check Vocabulary

- (5) يزور  
 (6) يابسة  
 (7) ملابس  
 (8) ضخم  
 (9) عاصف

'Is it fun on the ship ?' asked Heba.  
 'It's very hard work !' answered Amr. 'The captain has to drive the huge<sup>(8)</sup> ship for a long time. The ship has to be straight. Sometimes it is very difficult when it is windy<sup>(9)</sup>.  
 Would you like to come and visit a ship one day ?  
 'Oh, yes please ! answered Heba.

**Answer**  
 the following  
 questions :

**Learn** 1. Where does Heba live ?

- She lives next to the Suez Canal.

**Practice** 2. What are in the containers on Amr's ship ?

### ★ Listen and read.

تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع **Pop Quiz**

### The Young Entrepreneurs

An entrepreneur is someone who starts a new business. In this project, you are going to work with a group of classmates and start your own business. First, you need to decide what goods you will sell, or what services you will offer. Then, you have to decide where you will sell your goods or offer your services. Finally, you will make a poster to help explain your business plan.

\* Help your child listen and read the text

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص

سألت هبة «حي أين تذهب السفينة ؟» «يمكنك أن تسألني عمرو الأسبوع القادم» أجاب الأب «هو سيأتي ويبرورنا جميعاً» عندما جاء عمرو للزيارة كان لونه خائمه طويلة من لاسعة يتي تسألته ضحك ووافق أن يحبهم كلهم «لقد كنت على السفينة عندما ذهبت عبر المضايق» هو قال «تم غلبت إلى النسيئة وذهبت السفينة إلى فرنسا لقد جئت من الصين كان زوجي يحب أن يسير السفينة بشكل مستقيم» أحببت يكون الأمر صعباً جداً عندما يكون الجو عاصف أتودد أن يأتي ويبروري سفينة في يوم من الأيام «أوه نعم من فضلك» أجاب هبة رواد الأعمال الشباب رائد الأعمال هو الشخص الذي يبدأ عمل جديد في هذا المشروع سيعمل مع مجموعة من زملاء الدراسة وتبدأ عملك الخاص أولاً عليك أن تقرر السلع التي سوف يبيعها و التجهيزات ستقدمها بعد ذلك عليك أن تقرر المكان الذي ستبيع فيه سلعك أو تقدم خدماتك أخيراً ستقوم بعمل ملصق للمساعدة في شرح خطة العمل



## Writing Skill

### How to write a paragraph كيفية كتابة فقرة إنشائية

- 1 Brainstorm some ideas. قم بعصف ذهني لبعض الأفكار.
- 2 Do research to find out facts about the topic. قم بعمل بحث لتكتشف حقائق عن الموضوع.
- 3 Put your ideas in order. ضع أفكارك منظمة / مرتبة.
- 4 Write an introduction sentence. اكتب جملة مقدمة.
- 5 Write the main information of the paragraph. اكتب المعلومات الرئيسية عن الفقرة الإنشائية.
- 6 Write a conclusion sentence. اكتب جملة ختامية.

### ★ Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.

1. Write an introduction sentence to start your paragraph. اكتب جملة بدائية لتبدأ فقرتك الإنشائية.
2. End your paragraph with a conclusion sentence. إنه فقرتك الإنشائية بالجملة الاستنتاجية.

## احرص على افتناء



EL-MOFASSER

كتاب

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للسف 4 الابتدائي

Connect Plus

المراجعة النهائية



أملج ثقتك لمن يستحق

### Notes for parents

- Help your child know how to write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يكتب فقرة إنشائية.

### 1 Listen and complete.

1. Heba loved watching the .....
2. She often ..... them with her friends.
3. She went with her father to the side of the Suez .....
4. The ships are .....

### 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances.

First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items such as automobiles and machinery.

Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.

Next, rail, road and pipelines are also used for transportation. Freight trains can travel across the country and trucks can travel from city to city. Pipelines are used for carrying natural resources such as oil, natural gas and water.

Finally, different forms of transportation are used for transporting different goods. The transportation we use depends on the product, the time available and the distance.

#### A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Trucks can travel from ..... to city.  
a. city      b. village      c. town      d. country
2. .... are used for carrying natural resources.  
a. Ships      b. Airplanes      c. Pipelines      d. Trains

#### B. Answer the following questions.

3. Are airplanes better for transporting than ships ? Why ?  
.....
4. Give two ways of transporting goods.  
.....

1 Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.  
2 Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل  
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويحبب عن الأسئلة



- **3** Read and complete the text from the words in the box.

windy - captain - ship - sunny

Working on a ship is a very hard work. The (1) has to drive the huge ship for a long time. The (2) has to be straight. Sometimes it is very difficult when it is (3).

- **4** Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the ship - going - Where - is ?
2. the window - looked out - of - She.

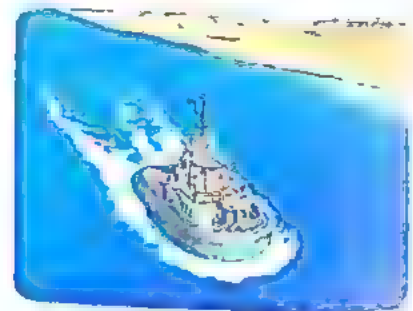
- **5** Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Suez Canal

Guiding words :

- ships
- container
- hard
- jobs
- captain
- straight

محاب عنه فى نهاية الكتب



#### Notes for parents

3. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the correct word from the box.
4. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly.
5. Ask your child to write a paragraph of (50) words using the given guiding words.



# Test your skills



## Unit 6



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

إذا حصل على ● فستحتاج إلى مراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

### My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

- A. river ferry  
robot  
government  
flight  
pipeline

- B. محرك البحث  
نشرة صوتية  
عبارة المرور  
حاوية  
قضيب سكة حديد

### My Language

2 Read and correct the underlined words. اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

- Will you goes to the party on Sunday ?
- It will snows tomorrow.
- Have you wins the race ?
- Yes, I haven't.
- Has you ever read this book ?
- Have you finish yet ?

### My Reading

3 Read the rules and circle the correct words.

اقرأ القواعد وضع دائره حول الكلمات الصحيحة.

When making a password

- (Use / Don't use) names, birthdays, phone numbers or addresses.
- (Use / Don't use) more than 8 characters.
- (Use / Don't use) easy words or numbers like password or 1234.
- (Tell / Don't tell) your friends your passwords.
- (Use / Don't use) different passwords for different accounts.

### My Writing

4 Punctuate the following sentence.

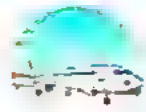
ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

i like singing but i don't like drawing

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.



# Review on unit 6



airplane



train



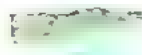
ship



river ferry



rail



river



water



pipe



road



boat

## How to create strong passwords:

1. Don't use personal information.
2. Don't use easy or obvious words.
3. Don't use less than 10 characters.
4. Don't use the same password for different accounts.
5. Don't tell your friends your password.



## (Future Simple Tense)

- People **will** travel to Mars in 2025.
- My parents **won't** buy a self-driving car next year.
- **Will** they **take** a train to Aswan ?

## (Present Perfect Tense)

- **Have** you ever been on a bus ?
- Yes, I have.
- No, I haven't

(,) joins two ideas in a sentence

(.) at the end of a sentence

(?) at the end of a question

(') for contraction of a word

(!) to show strong feelings or emotions

## Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 6



## 1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Tech jobs of the future	UX designer	UX designers are interested in the experience that you have with technology.
	safe – useful	They make sure that it is safe, friendly, and useful for all users.
	VR developer	VR developers create the experience you have when using VR.
	museums	Museums will use VR.
	universities	Universities will teach future doctors and nurses with VR.
	robotics engineers	Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines (robots).
	dangerous	We will use robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans.
Search safely	farms	People will use robots on farms, in factories and in schools.
	option - browser	Use the safe search option in your browser.
	kids - add	You can add the words for kids to your search.
	sponsor	The word sponsor means that it is an ad.
	read - sure	Make sure to read the option in the search box.
Passwords and passphrases	specific words	Use specific words for your searches.
	personal	Don't use personal information.
	easy - obvious	Don't use easy or obvious words.
	characters	Don't use less than 10 characters.
	same password	Don't use the same password for different accounts.
	friends	Don't tell your friends your passwords.
	passphrase	Passphrases are much safer than regular passwords.

## 2. How to make a sentence

٢٠١٢ كيف تكون وترتب جملة.

### ٢١ الجمل الخبرية

1. will – future – in the – solar energy – Airplanes – use.
2. so – That – fast – train – is.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

### ٢٢ الجمل الامرية

1. color – your – favorite - of – Think.
2. easy – obvious – Don't – or – use – words.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

### ٢٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال ب (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. passwords – do – use – When – you ?
2. you – did – Where – go ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1					
2					

1. travel – you – Will – to the – one day – Moon ? (ب) السؤال ب (هل .. ؟)
2. traveled – on a ship – Have – you – ever ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1				
2				

### 3. Writing skill

١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج

#### Let's work

##### Internet

We all use the internet and it is so important.  
The internet helps us study.

##### You should

You should use the safe search option in your browser.  
You should create strong passwords.

##### Share

Share useful things and ideas.

##### Safety

It is very important to stay safe online.

##### You should not

You should not tell your friends your passwords.  
You shouldn't talk to strangers.

##### Do not share

Do not share your personal information.

#### Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

We all use the internet and it is so important. The internet helps us study. It is very important to stay safe online. You should use the safe search option in your browser. You should create strong passwords. You should not tell your friends your passwords. Share useful things and ideas. Do not share your personal information. Don't talk to strangers.



٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

### 1 Transporting goods and products

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances.<sup>(1)</sup> First, we can transport goods long distances by water.<sup>(2)</sup> Ships move slowly, but they can carry large items such as automobiles and machinery.<sup>(3)</sup> Second, we can transport goods long distances by air.<sup>(4)</sup> Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.<sup>(5)</sup> Rail, road and pipelines are also used for transportation.<sup>(6)</sup>

### 2 How to look up information online

Use specific words in your search.<sup>(7)</sup> Put quotation marks around the words to make it more specific.<sup>(8)</sup> The search engine will understand that you want very specific results.<sup>(9)</sup> Add the words "for kids" to your search.<sup>(10)</sup> There are special search engines for children. This will bring up web pages that are suitable for you.<sup>(12)</sup>

### 3 How to create a personal password code

Creating a personal password code is important.<sup>(13)</sup> Think of your favorite color : green.<sup>(14)</sup> Add a number, green87.<sup>(15)</sup> Add your favorite school subject : green87 science.<sup>(16)</sup> Add a symbol : green87 \$ science.<sup>(18)</sup> Now write the full code.

### 4 Robotics engineers

Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines - that's just another word for robots.<sup>(19)</sup> They also test the robots that they design to make sure that they are good at what they do.<sup>(20)</sup> We will use these robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans to do.<sup>(21)</sup> For example, we will use robots to build new automobiles or even high-speed trains.<sup>(22)</sup> They will probably be used in agriculture and manufacturing, too.<sup>(23)</sup> Most families will have a personal robot at home.<sup>(24)</sup>

# Test 11 on Unit 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

قائمة  
المعاني  
المستخدمة  
في الاختبار

## A. Listening

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hend looked out of the  
a. car                      b. bus                      c. window                      d. taxi
2. Hend was in her .....  
a. grandpa's house                      b. family's house  
c. uncle's house                      d. aunt's house
3. The ships were so .....  
a. small                      b. big                      c. wide                      d. bad
4. Hend often watched the ships with her .....  
a. parents                      b. friends                      c. mom                      d. dad

- 2 Listen and complete.

1. You shouldn't use ..... information when you create passwords.
2. Don't use the same passwords for different .....
3. Don't use less than 10 .....
4. Don't use easy or ..... words.

## B. Reading

- 3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

taxi - comfortable - went - traveled

Zeinab : Hi, Malek. How are you ?

Malek : I'm fine ! Thanks.

Zeinab : Have you ever (1) ..... on a train ?

Malek : Yes, I have.

Zeinab : Where did you go ?

Malek : I (2) ..... to Aswan.

Zeinab : How was the train like ?

Malek : It was fast and (3) .....

1 Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer

2 Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences

3 Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box

1 اسأل طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

2 اسأل طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل

3 اسأل طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل الحوار بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

• 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Have you ever had an idea for a new video game ? Video games are not just for fun. They are big business. Creating one isn't simple. It can take years. It takes plenty of people, too! Some people work on programming the game. They build the game in a computer program. Others are artists. They draw the pictures for the game. But they don't use paper and pencil. They use a computer program. And there are people who work on the sounds you hear. It takes lots of teamwork!

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The passage is about .  
a. computer program                      b. teamwork  
c. programming                          d. video games
- Some people build the                      in a computer program.  
a. game                      b. room                      c. box                      d. container

B. Answer the following questions :

- How long does it take to create a game ?
- What do the artists use to draw the pictures for a game ?

• 5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- No one came to watch Grandpa and the girls.
- Zeinab's friends are clever.

T	

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A lot of people went to                      about Khayameya.  
a. see                      b. learn                      c. make                      d. teach
- Khayameya.                      is traveling all summer.  
a. club                      b. school                      c. park                      d. group

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions

5 Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.

طلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويحجب عن الأسئلة المعطاه  
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويحجب عن الأسئلة طبقاً لأحداث القصة

### C. Writing

**6** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. Dad ..... to England next week.  
a. travel                                      b. travels  
c. will travel                                d. are traveling
2. It rains outside. I ..... go to the club.  
a. am    b. 'll                                      c. won't                                      d. have
3. What will you ..... tomorrow?  
a. do    b. does                                      c. did                                      d. has
4. .... people use flying cars in the future?  
a. Have                                      b. Will                                      c. Does                                      d. Are

**7** Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. one day - the Moon - to - travel - Will - you ?
2. study - 'll - I - languages.

- **8** Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

## Tech jobs of the future

### محاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

### Guiding elements :

- create
- apps
- autonomous machines
- developers

# Test 12 on Unit 6

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

اختيار مجمع من  
مختلف المحافظات

بصوت  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## A. Listening

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We can ..... goods by water over long distances.  
a. help                      b. transport                      c. plan                      d. fill
- Ships move .....  
a. hard                      b. fast                      c. slowly                      d. high
- ..... can carry heavy items.  
a. Airplanes                      b. Bikes                      c. Planes                      d. Ships
- Airplanes are ..... than ships.  
a. slower                      b. heavier                      c. faster                      d. cheaper

(Suez - North Suez 2022 / Cairo - Heli)

- 2 Listen and complete.

- My uncle ..... in Algiers.
- Algiers is the ..... of Algeria.
- Algiers is ..... from Cairo.
- They will go to Algiers by .....

(Minia - El Idwa 2022 / Sharkia - Digiab A)

## B. Reading

- 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

transportation - travel - lands - goods

We're studying the Ancient Egyptians at school. We found out that people didn't (1) ..... over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for (2) ..... They moved their (3) ..... in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river.

(Behara - Rosetta)

### Notes for parents

- Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer
- Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences
- Ask your child to read and complete the text with the correct word from the box

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer  
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences  
3. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the correct word from the box



4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

VR is short for Virtual Reality. Do you like playing video games? Have you ever tried playing a virtual reality game? To do this, you have to wear a special VR headset that you wear on your head. It covers your eyes like glasses. VR developers have to create the new world you see when you put on these headsets. They also create the experience you have when using VR. But there are more uses for VR than just exciting games. Museums will use them. And universities will teach future doctors and nurses with them too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- VR headset covers your  
a. back                      b. face                      c. eyes                      d. body
- ..... will use VR headset in the future.  
a. Animals                      b. Parks                      c. Museums                      d. Forests

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What do you need to play a Virtual Reality game?

4. What is VR?

(Qalqubia - Khanka 2022 / Giza - Ossim 2022)

## 5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Grandpa makes the patterns with five layers of cotton. ☐ T ☐ F
- Rasha likes learning new things. ☐ ☐

(Cairo - Ain shams 2022 / Sohag Tema 2022)

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The picture of flowers is made of thousands of small .....  
a. patterns                      b. cotton                      c. stitches                      d. colors
- ..... flower is Grandpa's best sewing.  
a. Daisy                      b. Colored                      c. Lotus                      d. Sun

(Alexandria - Montazah 2022 / Fayoum - East Fayoum 2022)

4 Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاه  
5 Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقاً لأحداث القصة

## C. Writing

### 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I think it will ..... tomorrow. (Giza)  
 a. snows                      b. snow                      c. snowing                      d. to snow
2. .... you finished your project yet ? (Fayoum - El-Dokki)  
 a. Have                      b. Did                      c. Do                      d. Were
3. She ..... go to school on a bus tomorrow. (Giza)  
 a. hasn't                      b. won't                      c. isn't                      d. don't
4. A : How will you ..... to England next month ? B: By plane. (Sharga - El-Dokki)  
 a. traveling                      b. travels                      c. travel                      d. traveled

### 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - new - the - It - train - electric. (Giza - Omrania)
2. will - she - How - pass - exam - the ? (Ismailia - El-Qantara El-Sharqiya)

### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

"Search online safely"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- browser
- specific
- option
- sponsor

(Gharbia - Tanta 2022 / Sharkia - El Ibrahimia 2022)

#### Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
7. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly. (طلب من طفلك أن يحدد الإجابة الصحيحة)
8. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding words. (طلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة)

طلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من 50 كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية

## Review Topics

## Vocabulary



city



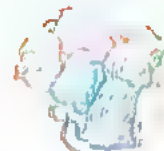
village



isolated



densely populated



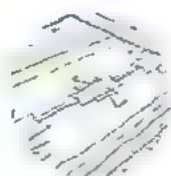
yarn



sparsely populated



congestion



carpet



warp



spin



dye

## Math

## • Multiplying numbers •

Multiplication tells us how many times we need to add a number to get the total.

Ex :  $5 \times 3 = 15$

## • Dividing numbers •

Divide means to separate some things in an equal group.

Ex :  $6 \div 3 = 2$

## Language

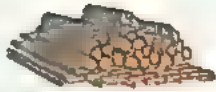
## The Conjunctions

- I do my homework **so that** I am ready for the exam.
- We keep quiet **while** the teacher is talking.

- I say thank you **after** someone helps me.
- They have to clean, wash and dry the wool **before** they use it.

## Review on Unit 5

### Vocabulary



wood



soil



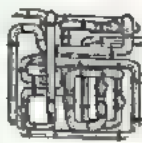
stone



mineral



forest



metal



wind power



plastic



bridge



solar panels

### Social studies

#### Renewable and non-renewable resources

##### Renewable resources

- meat - wood
- potatoes - soil
- stone - water

##### Non-renewable resources

- minerals
- petroleum
- plastic

### Language

#### The Present Simple Tense

- Mariam phones her grandma every weekend.
- Tamer studies languages twice a week.

#### Pronouns

- Mona presented her project.
- My father ate his salad for dinner.

## Review on Unit 6

### Vocabulary



train



airplane



bus



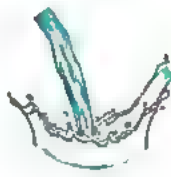
ferry



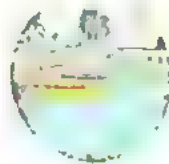
boat



robot



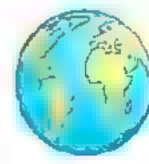
water



rail



captain



planet

### Punctuation marks

#### The question mark

- Are you OK ?

#### The exclamation point

- I'm very hungry !

#### Apostrophe

- She'll travel  
on a ship.

### Language

#### The Present Perfect Tense

- Have you ever traveled on a train ?
- Yes, I have.
- No, I haven't.

#### Future Simple Tense

- People will travel to Mars in 2052.
- Will airplanes use solar energy in the future ?



# Khayameya Summer

صيف الخيامية



BY MOIRA DUTTON

# Picture Dictionary



artisan حرفي



geometric pattern  
نمط هندسي



layer طبقة



lotus flower  
زهرة اللوتس



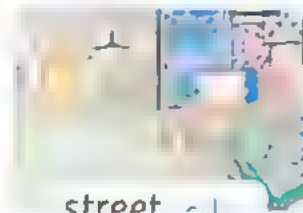
sew يخط



stitch غرزة



Tent Maker  
صانع الخيام



street سارح



measure يقيس



amazing مذهش



engineer مهندس



teacher معلم



artist رسام/فنان



art رسم



math رياضيات



Khayameya  
خيامة

## Read and identify.

artisan : Some artisans make tables and chairs from wood. - حرفي

geometric pattern : We can sometimes see it of colorful tiles - نمط هندسي

lotus flowers : grow on rivers and lakes - زهرة اللوتس

sew : to make your own clothes - يخط

stitch : to fix buttons - غرزة



# story map

خريطة القصة

## The characters

الشخصيات



Zeinab



Grandma



Mom



Grandpa



Doha



Engy



Rasha



Lobna



## The main idea

الفكرة الرئيسية للقصة

- It's interesting to learn something new. من المثير للاهتمام تعلم شيء جديد.
- The artisans are engineers, artists and good at math. الحرفيون مهندسون وفنانون جيدين في الرياضيات.

## Main characters

الشخصيات الرئيسية



Zeinab



Grandpa

### Notes for parents

- Help your child learn about the characters and the main idea.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الشخصيات والفكرة الرئيسية



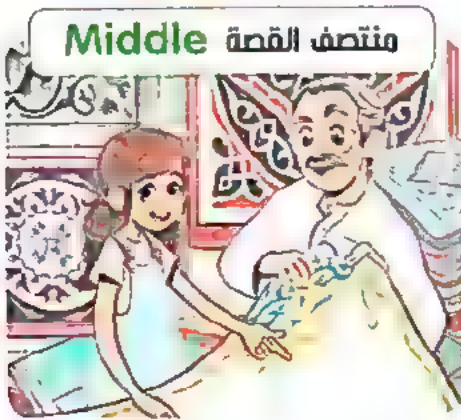
## المكان والزمان — The setting —



## حبكة القصة — Story plot —



- Zeinab was bored on the summer holiday.
- Zeinab wanted to visit her grandpa.
- Zeinab and her grandfather visited the shop.



- Grandfather likes sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns.
- Grandfather can teach Zeinab to sew Khayameya.
- Zeinab has an idea to call her friends to learn with her.



- Grandfather showed the girls how to sew Khayameya.
- Other people joined the grandfather and the girls.
- Khayameya school is traveling all summer.



- Zeinab was bored. It was the second week of the summer holiday. Zeinab said, "Let's go to visit Grandpa !" Her mother said, "Yes, he's sad at the moment. I think you can help him".

• كانت زينب تشعر بالملل. إنه الأسبوع الثاني في إجازة الصيف - قالت : زينب "هيا نذهب لزيارة جدي !" قالت والدتها : "نعم، إنه حزين الآن. اعتقد أنك تستطيعين مساعدته".

summer holiday

إجازة الصيف

bored

ممل

visit

يزور

at the moment

في الوقت الراهن

sad

حزين



★ Zeinab reached the train station!

وصلت زينب إلى محطة القطار !



- Zeinab got off the train. There was her grandfather and grandmother !  
Her grandparents were very pleased to see her.

• نزلت زينب من القطار. كان يوجد الجد والجدة ! كانوا اجدادها مسرورون لرؤيتها.



- After tea, Grandpa said 'My eyes are not very good now. It's difficult to work. I can't see to sew. I think I will have to stop making things.'

Grandpa was one of the Tent Makers. He was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street.

Zeinab said 'Oh no ! You can't stop ! You make such beautiful things !'.

• بعد تناول الشاي، قال الجد : "عيناي لم تعد بحالة جيدة الآن. من الصعب أن أعمل. لا أستطيع أن أرى لكي أقوم بالخياطة. اعتقد أنني مضطر للتوقف عن صنع الأشياء" كان الجد واحد من صناع الخيام، فهو واحد من أفضل الحرفيين في شارع الخيامية. قالت زينب "أوه لا" لا يمكنك أن تتوقف ! إنك تقوم بعمل الأشياء الجميلة !".

يتوقف stop يخطط sew صعب difficult حرفي artisan صناع الخيام Tent Makers

عيون eyes شاي tea جميل beautiful شارع الخيامية Khayameya Street



- Zeinab and her grandfather visited the shop.  
Zeinab said, 'Oh look ! I love this big picture with all the flowers !' Did you make it, Grandpa ?  
'Yes, it took me nearly four months. It's made of thousands and thousands of small stitches. I measured and cut all the pieces by hand,' said Grandpa.  
'All by hand ? That's amazing !'

• زارت زينب وجددها المحل. قالت زينب، "اوه انظر ! انسى أحب هذه اللوحة الكبيرة التى بها كل هذه الزهور"  
"هل قمت أنت بصنعها يا جدى ؟"

قال الجد : "نعم، لقد أخذت منى تقريباً أربعة أشهر. لقد صنعت من التلاف والتلاف من الغرر الصغيرة. لقد قمت بقياس وقص كل القطع باليد" كلها باليد ؟ هذا مدهش !

shop	محل	picture	لوحة/صورة	flowers	زهور	hand	يد
stitches	غرز	pieces	قطع	amazing			مدهش



★ Zeinab wanted to learn sewing.

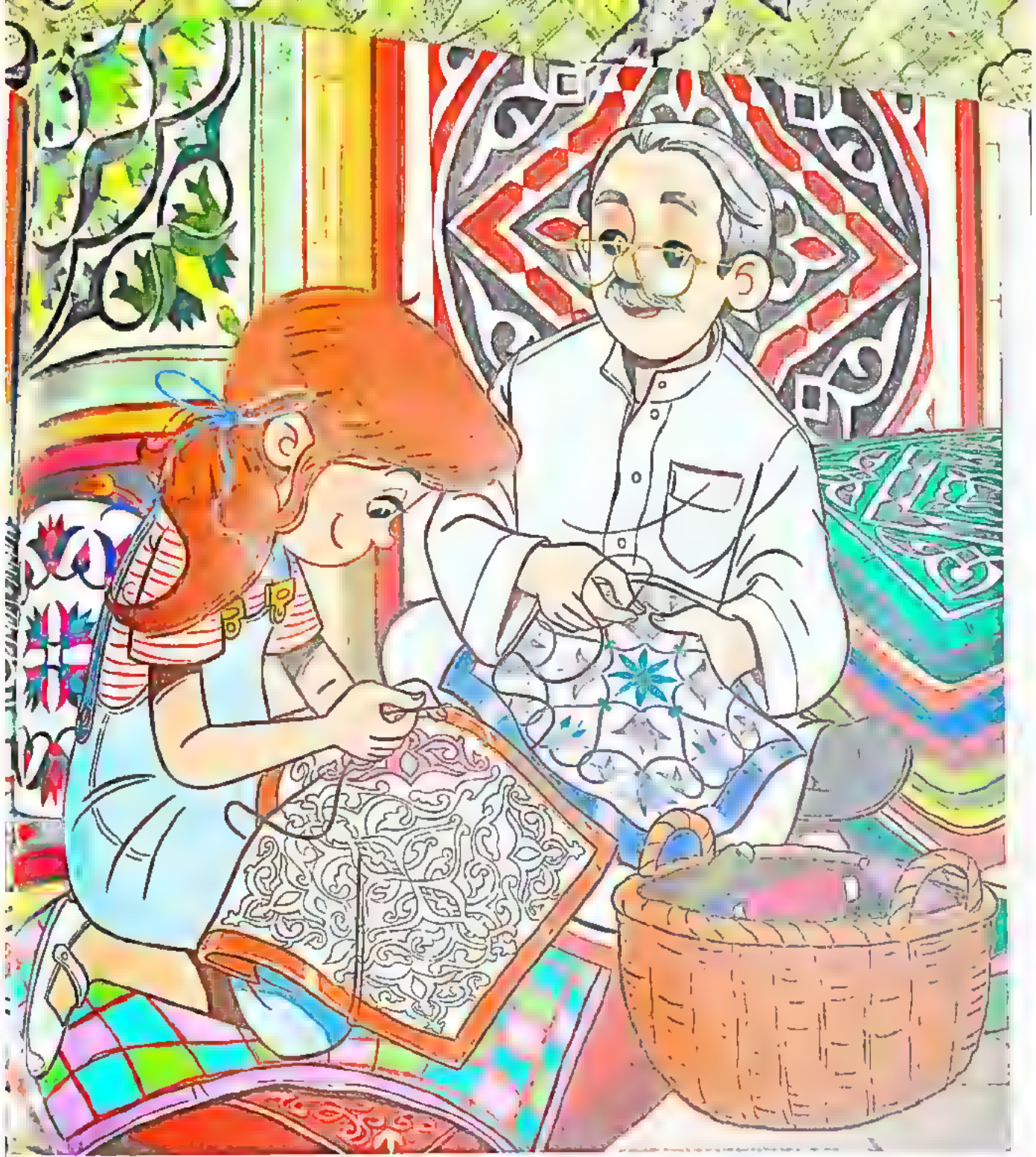
أرادت زينب تعلم الخياطة.



- 'What's your favorite design Grandpa?' asked Zeinab. 'I like sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns best, and I also like sewing birds. I used my best stitching on the patterns, but my eyes are not good now. It is sad for me.' 'I wish I could sew and help you,' said Zeinab. Her grandfather smiled. 'I can teach you. Do you want to learn?' 'Oh, yes please!' said Zeinab.

• "ما التصميم المفضل لك يا جدي؟" سألت زينب. "أنا أحب خياطة زهور اللوتس والأشكال الهندسية أكثر. وأحب أيضاً خياطة الطيور. لقد استخدمت أفضل خياطتي للأنماط ولكن عياني ليست بخير الآن. الأمر محزن بالنسبة لي." قالت زينب: "أيتنى أستطيع الخياطة ومساعدتك. انتسم جدها. أنا أستطيع أن أعلمك. هل تحب أن تتعلمين؟" "أوه، نعم من فضلك!" قالت زينب.

antism | نعلم | teach | يتعلم | learn | تصميم | design | مفضل | favorite  
زهور اللوتس | lotus flowers | طيور | birds | نمط | pattern | هندسي | geometric



• Zeinab asked, 'How did you learn to sew, Grandpa ?'

'My father taught me. When I was a child, I wanted to be an engineer or a teacher, but I changed my mind. My father taught me to sew. My grandfather taught my father before that ! I became a Khayameya artisan, and I love my job,' answered Grandpa. Zeinab said, 'You design and measure the patterns. You choose the colors. I think you are an engineer, an artist, and good at math ! And now you are my teacher, too.'

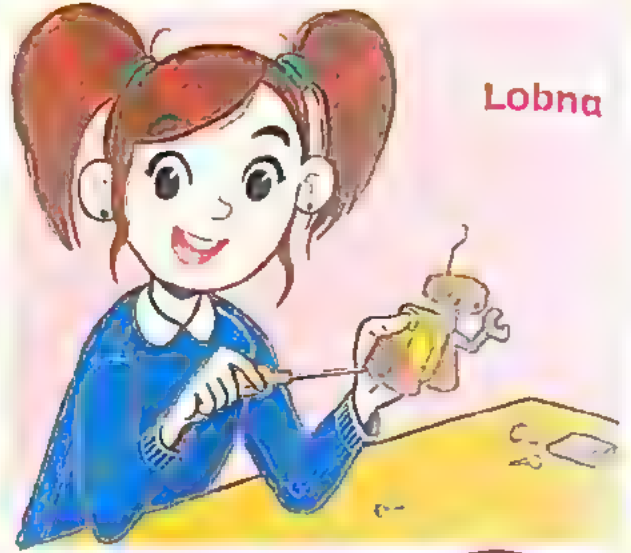
• سألت زينب، "كيف تعلمت الخياطة يا جدي؟"

أجاب الجد قائلا "قام أبي بتعليمي، فعندما كنت طفلاً، أردت أن أكون مهندساً أو معلماً، لكنني غيرت رأيي. علمني أبي الخياطة وقام جدي بتعليم أبي قبل ذلك ! فأصبحت حرفياً في الخيامية، وأحب وظيفتي." قالت زينب : "وانت تصمم وتنقيس الأنماط انت تختار الألوان. أعتقد أنك مهندس، وفنان وجيد في الرياضيات. و لكن انت معلم، ايضاً."

engineer	مهندس	love	يحب	job	وظيفة	choose	يختار	measure	يقيس
teacher	مدرس	artist	فنان	math	رياضيات	changed my mind	غيرت قراري		



★ Zeinab has an idea. زينب لديها فكرة.



- Zeinab said, 'Grandfather, I have an idea. My friends are very clever. I think they want to learn about Khayameya, too. Rasha is great at math and working out problems. Lobna invents things all the time and has good ideas. Doha makes amazing art and Engy can help you show us all how to sew. She makes beautiful things. Let's call them !'

• قالت زينب : "يا جدي لدي فكرة. أصدقائي ماهرون جدًا. اعتقد أنهم يريدون أن يتعلموا عن الخيامية، أيضًا. رشا رائعة في الرياضيات وتقوم بحل المشكلات. لديها أفكار جيدة. ضحى تصنع فن مدهش وانجي يمكنها أن تساعدك لتبين لنا كيف تقوم بالخياطة. إنها تصنع أشياء جميلة. هيا نتصل بهم!"

clever	ذكي / ماهر	work out	يحل	show	يوضح	great	رائع	invent	يخترع
call	يتصل / تليفونيًا	idea	فكرة	too	أيضًا	art	رسم / فن	problems	مشكلات

Zeinab's friends arrived

لقد وصلوا أصدقاء زينب



Zeinab's friends arrived. 'We're here ! Let's learn something new'.  
Grandfather said, 'Welcome girls. Thank you for coming ! We make the  
patterns with three layers of cotton and put them together like this...'

• لقد وصلوا أصدقاء زينب. "نحن هنا ! هيا نتعلم شيء جديد".  
قال الجد : "مرحبًا يا فتيات. شكرًا لكم على المجيء ! نحن نصنع الأنماط من ثلاثة طبقات من القطن  
ونضعهم معًا هكذا...."





- Grandfather said, 'Zeinab you have such clever friends ! What a good idea !'  
Rasha answered, 'We like learning new things, and we have a great teacher !'

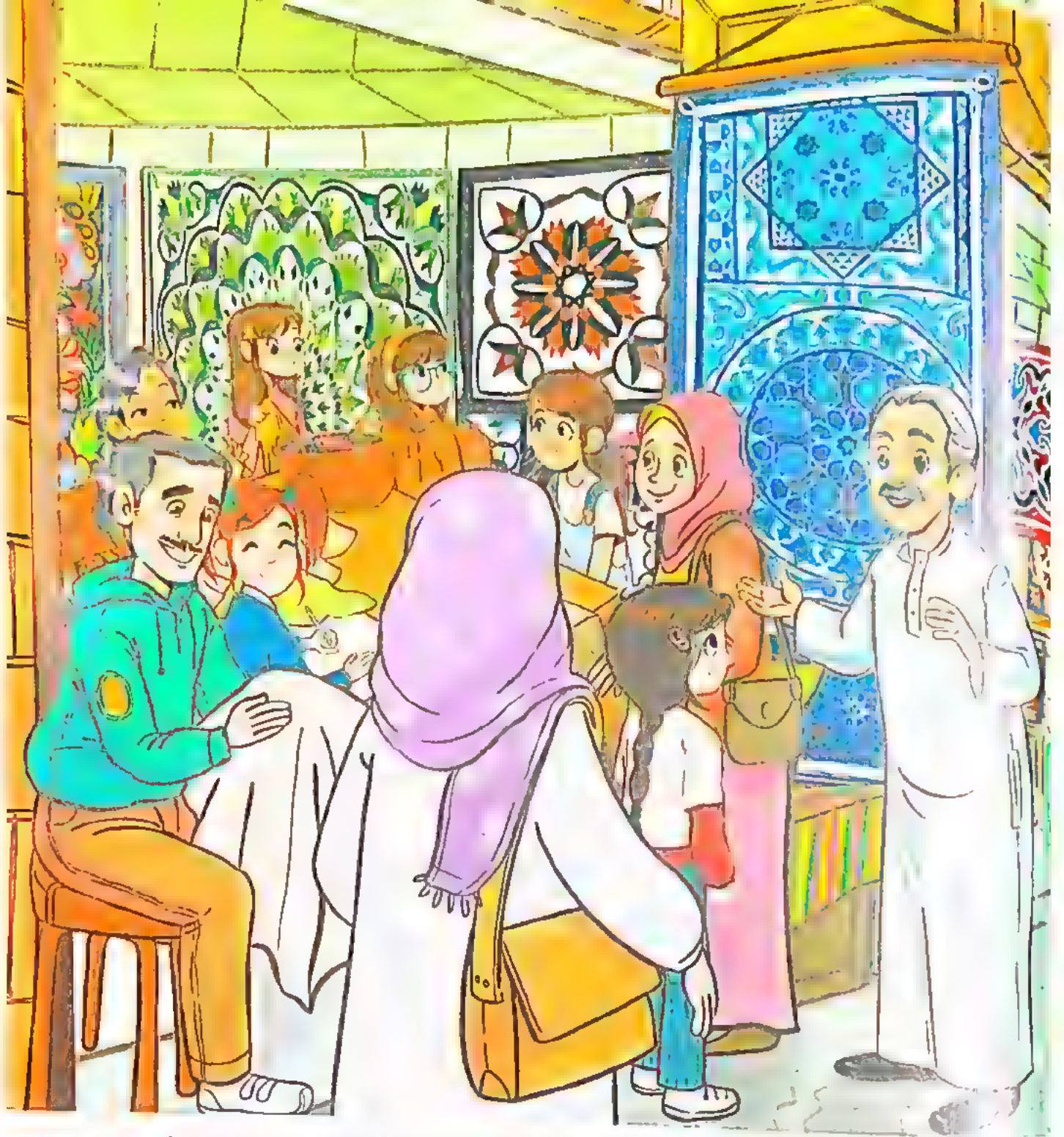
• قال الجد "يا زينب أنت لديك أصدقاء أذكاء ! ما لها من فكرة جيدة ! " أجابت رشا . "نحن نحب تعلم الأشياء جديدة ولدينا معلم رائع !"



- Other people came to watch. They said, 'That looks fun. Can we try?'. Zeinab's grandfather said, 'Welcome ! Come and join us !'

• جاء أشخاص آخريين ليشاهدوا. إنهم قالوا : "هذا يبدو ممتعاً. هل يمكننا أن نجرب ؟". قال جد زينب : "مرحباً !  
تعالوا وانضموا إلينا!"





- Grandpa said, 'Zeinab, look at all these people ! They all want to learn about Khayameya ! I'm so happy !'

• قال الجد: "انظري يا زينب إلى كل هؤلاء الأشخاص ! جميعهم يريدون أن يتعلموا عن الخيامية ! أنا سعيد جدًا!"





- Zeinab said, 'Lots more people want to learn too. People in many places all around Egypt want you to teach them. Khayameya School is traveling all summer ! Next, we are going to Ismailia, then Tanta and Marsa Matrouh ! What a wonderful summer holiday ! Thank you, Grandpa !' Grandpa laughed, 'No, thank you Zeinab !'

• قالت زينب، الكثير من الناس يريدون أن يتعلموا أيضًا. الناس في أماكن متعددة حول مصر يريدونك لتدرس لهم مدرسة الخيامية تسافر طوال الصيف ! ثم، سيذهب للإسماعيلية، ثم طنطا ومرسى مطروح ! يا لها من إجازة صيف رائعة ! شكرًا لك يا جدي ! ضحك الجد، " لا، شكرًا لك يا زينب "

## Learn

### 1 Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.



This woman is learning how to sew.



He's making a stitch with a needle and some cotton.



These tiles make a pretty geometric pattern.



This cake has three layers of cake and cream.



Youssef is a skilled artisan.



What color are these beautiful lotus flowers?

### 2 Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

1. The pattern on this shirt is made of very small stitches.

2. There are lots of beautiful geometric patterns inside the mosque.

3. My parents bought a portrait from an artisan in the market.

4. Can you see the pink lotus flowers on the river?

5. There's a layer of jam in the middle of this cake.

6. Grandma likes to sew flowers on her granddaughter's dresses.



#### Notes for parents

1. Help your child read the sentences and identify.
2. Help your child look at the pictures, read the sentences and learn.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويتعرف.  
• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ الجمل ويتعرف.

# General Exercises

on Story

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- |  | (T) | (F) |
|--|-----|-----|
| 1. Lots of people wanted to learn at Khayameya School.                           | ( ) | ( ) |
| 2. Zeinab's friends aren't clever to learn about Khayameya.                      | ( ) | ( ) |
| 3. Grandpa's father taught him how to sew.                                       | ( ) | ( ) |
| 4. Zeinab doesn't like to learn sewing.  | ( ) | ( ) |
| 5. Grandpa's eyes aren't good now.   | ( ) | ( ) |
| 6. Zeinab asked her mom to visit her friends.                                    | ( ) | ( ) |
| 7. Mom thinks that Zeinab can help her grandpa.                                  | ( ) | ( ) |
| 8. Grandpa can see well to sew now.  | ( ) | ( ) |
| 9. Grandpa was one of the teachers in Khayameya Street.                          | ( ) | ( ) |
| 10. Grandpa was one of the best artisans in sewing.                              | ( ) | ( ) |
| 11. Zeinab asked her Grandpa to stop sewing Khayameya.                           | ( ) | ( ) |
| 12. Zeinab visited her Grandpa's shop.   | ( ) | ( ) |
| 13. Zeinab loved the picture of flower best at the shop.                         | ( ) | ( ) |
| 14. Grandpa can't teach Zeinab.  | ( ) | ( ) |
| 15. Grandpa wanted to be a doctor when he was young.                             | ( ) | ( ) |
| 16. Grandpa designs and measures the patterns.                                   | ( ) | ( ) |
| 17. Grandpa doesn't like his job.  | ( ) | ( ) |
| 18. Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns best.              | ( ) | ( ) |
| 19. Zeinab's friend, Rasha, is good at math.                                     | ( ) | ( ) |
| 20. Grandpa makes the patterns with five layers of cotton.                       | ( ) | ( ) |
| 21. Zeinab had an idea that to call her friends so that they learn about sewing. | ( ) | ( ) |

1. Ask your child to read the sentences and write (T) for the correct sentences and (F) for the wrong sentences.  
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويكتب (T) للجمل الصحيحة و(F) للجمل الخاطئة

22. Rasha likes learning new things.



23. Grandpa welcomed people who wanted to learn.



24. Grandpa was sad when he taught people at Khayameya School.



**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Grandpa ..... and cut all the pieces by hand.

- a. visited      b. measured      c. put      d. had

2. Zeinab wishes to ..... and help her Grandpa.

- a. sew      b. saw      c. play      d. read

3. Khayameya School is traveling all .....

- a. winter      b. spring      c. fall      d. summer

4. Lots more people want to ..... sewing Khayameya.

- a. learn      b. write      c. read      d. travel

5. Zeinab had a good .....

- a. toy      b. flower      c. idea      d. pattern

6. Grandpa makes patterns with three .....

- a. layers      b. colors      c. flowers      d. birds

7. Grandpa likes sewing ..... patterns.

- a. science      b. geometric      c. English      d. art

8. Grandpa is sad because he can't ..... well.

- a. hear      b. taste      c. touch      d. see

9. Zeinab had ..... friends.

- a. tall      b. bad      c. naughty      d. clever

10. Zeinab loved a big ..... on the wall of the shop.

- a. table      b. picture      c. street      d. tree

**Notes for parents**

2. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة



11. Zeinab wanted to visit her  
a. Grandpa      b. friends      c. teachers      d. uncle
12. Zeinab was \_\_\_\_\_ at the second week of the summer holiday.  
a. happy      b. excited      c. bored      d. angry
13. Zeinab's mom thinks that \_\_\_\_\_ can help Grandpa.  
a. Zeinab      b. Rasha      c. Grandma      d. people
14. Zeinab and her mom went to her Grandparents by  
a. car      b. bus      c. train      d. plane
15. Grandpa is one of the best \_\_\_\_\_ in Khayameya Street.  
a. artisans      b. workers      c. helpers      d. engineers
16. It's difficult for Grandpa to work because of his  
a. hearing      b. taste      c. touch      d. sight
17. The picture of flowers is made of thousands of small  
a. patterns      b. cotton      c. stitches      d. colors
18. Grandpa measures and cuts all the pieces by  
a. scissors      b. knife      c. hand      d. machines
19. Doha made \_\_\_\_\_ art.  
a. amazing      b. boring      c. bad      d. wrong
20. \_\_\_\_\_ flower is Grandpa's best sewing.  
a. Daisy      b. Colored      c. Lotus      d. Sun
21. Grandpa can \_\_\_\_\_ Zeinab to learn sewing.  
a. give      b. punish      c. help      d. order
22. Grandpa's \_\_\_\_\_ are not good to sew now.  
a. hands      b. ears      c. legs      d. eyes
23. Grandpa wanted to be an \_\_\_\_\_ or a teacher when he was young.  
a. engineer      b. vet      c. police officer      d. actor



# Listening Texts

لصوص الاستماع الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

## Unit 1

### Lesson 1

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

#### • Listen and complete

Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body. These make us strong and protect our organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, and they lift and turn bones to make us move.

### Lesson 2

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin. Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

#### • Listen and complete

People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing well can learn sign language. This is a language where we use our hands, faces and bodies to communicate. Sign language is different in each country. People use sight instead of hearing to understand what people are saying.

### Lesson 3

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

It's Saturday, so there's no school. Mom wants to tidy the lounge. My

brother Adam wants to run and play in the park. I want to do something creative. I would like to draw or paint a picture.

### Lesson 4

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Paraspots is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions .

### Lessons 5 & 6

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

### Test 1 on Unit 1

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

Our skeleton is very important for all of us. It is made up of all the bones in our body. The bones make us strong. They protect our organs. Muscles are also very important. They are attached to our bones. They lift and turn our bones to make us move.

#### • Listen and complete :

We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these include nuts, oily fish, oil and butter. Carbohydrates like bread, rice, and pasta give us energy. Sugar

also gives us energy, but too much sugar isn't good for us. Sugar is in cakes, cookies, and candy, so try not to have too much of these. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

### Test 2 on Unit 1

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food then it goes to the stomach. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

#### • Listen and complete :

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language. It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish, and there are different versions of it around the world. Sign language in Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.

## Unit 2

### Lesson 2

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

In 2012, scientists discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just 30 millimeters long! But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua New Guinea. It's 7mm long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered.

### Lesson 3

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

Invertebrates are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for protection. Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid.

### Lesson 4

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects they carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.

#### • Listen and complete :

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prey that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

### Lessons 5 & 6

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

Most mammals live on land, but some mammals such as whales and dolphins live in the sea. However, bats are the only mammals that can fly. Bats live in groups in trees or caves. They sleep during the day and hunt for food at night. They can fly very fast at night because they can see using a special skill called echolocation.



- **Listen and complete :**

Zoos are places of scientific research. People can see and learn about wild animals in zoos. Zoos protect endangered animals. But I think animals are kept in the wrong habitats. Animals are separated from their family groups. Animals aren't free to live a natural life. Animals can become stressed and unhappy.

### Test 3 on Unit 2

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur, they have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.

- **Listen and complete :**

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded and they feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

### Test 4 on Unit 2

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

- **Listen and complete :**

In the natural world, there are some enormous animals, and some tiny ones! The biggest animal on land is a mammal. The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale. The whale shark is the biggest fish in the world. It's smaller than the blue whale, at about 12 meters long.

## Unit 3

### Lesson 1

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good citizenship. This means that you work hard to help other people, and behave in a kind and fair way. I am always polite and helpful at school.

### Lesson 2

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

How do we know so much about the history of Egypt? Egyptians at that time used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties. They wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds.



• **Listen and complete :**

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

**Lesson 3**

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

I'm Nadia, and I live in Aswan Governorate. It is a beautiful city. It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam. It is a very important project.

• **Listen and complete**

New Valley Governorate is 440,098 km<sup>2</sup> in size. It is a very large area but New Valley doesn't have a big population. The population is about 245,000. The capital of New Valley Governorate is Kharga. Kharga is an oasis town in the south of this region.

**Lessons 4 & 5**

• **Listen and choose the correct answer :**

Music was important in ancient Egypt. We know this because scribes made pictures of musicians playing instruments, and Ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.

• **Listen and complete**

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created khayameya to decorate huge tents for wedding and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully

designed using different colors. Today you can buy khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

**Test 5 on Unit 3**

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Carpet making is another Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for their complicated patterns in red and blue.

• **Listen and complete**

I'm Omar. I live in Alexandria Governorate. It is in the north of Egypt. It is important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

**Test 6 on Unit 3**

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins. Farther south is the home of Nubian music. The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and the rebaba.

• **Listen and complete :**

Braille is a code which uses combinations of dots to represent letters, number, punctuation marks or whole words. People who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use this to read. They use touch instead of sight.

## Unit 4

### Lesson 1

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Hi there. I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's sparsely populated - only about 700 people live here. It's also a very traditional place. It's in the desert so it's an isolated place, too. We have a lot of services close to my family's home though, like shops, workshops, and my school.

- **Listen and complete :**

My name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

### Lesson 3

- **Listen and complete :**

Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. The warp is the structure of the carpet. They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton. Later, they use the warp and the dyed wool to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

### Lessons 5&6

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Dina lives in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, It's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry there, too.

- **Listen and complete**

Smart growth is a way to plan new areas of a city. Smart growth planners want to protect the environment and improve the lives of people living in them. Here are some of the ideas behind smart growth. People can walk to work or school. There's good public transportation and no cars. There are green spaces for people to enjoy.

### Test 7 on Unit 4

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

My name's Dina. I'm eleven years old I live with my family. We are a big family. There are seven people in my family. We live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. We have a lot of services. My favorite place is Montaza Palace. I visit it with my family once a month.

- **Listen and complete**

I learn how the artisans make the carpets. First, they collect the wool from sheep. They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it. Artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn. Then, they need to dye the yarn-that is how it gets its color. The artisans only use natural vegetable dyes, although some other workshops use synthetic dyes.

### Test 8 on Unit 4

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

I'm Rahma. I live in a big city. It's an urban environment. Many people live in my city so it's densely populated. There are a lot of cars and buses so it is a very busy city. It takes a long time to go to school. It is not easy to travel around but I like my city.

### • Listen and complete

There are many reasons to develop cities where they do. One of the main reasons is for food and transportation. A lot of cities are developed near bodies of water. These can be rivers, lakes or oceans. Water is very important for cities. For one thing, they have animals in them, like fish and birds, which give people food to eat.

## Unit 5

### Lesson 1

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. There are many different types of metal, which are types of minerals. Gold and silver are two common ones and they are all natural resources.

### Lesson 2

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

Gameela wakes up for school at 7 o'clock. First, she washes her face and brushes her teeth. Then, she eats her breakfast. She goes to school at 7:30. School finishes at 2 o'clock. She catches the bus to go home. Then, she does her homework. Sometimes, she helps her mom make dinner. Her brother Younis washes and dries the dishes with his father. Her family watches a movie after dinner. Before going to bed, she kisses her mom and dad and says goodnight.

#### • Listen and complete :

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources. Crude oil is turned into petroleum. Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived before the dinosaurs. There are serious problems with fossil fuels : global warming and climate change.

### Lesson 3

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

Wave power is when energy is captured from waves. It can then generate electricity. Wind power uses wind turbines which turn the wind energy into electricity. Solar power uses light from the sun to generate electricity.

#### • Listen and complete :

Solar panels are expensive and we can't make solar power on a rainy day. Also, solar farms need a very big space. However, solar panels are easy to look after, and electricity from solar power is cheap.

### Lesson 4

#### • Listen and choose the correct answer :

Mariam studied engineering at Cairo University. She worked at a wind farm in Kenya for 3 years. She worked at a turbine factory in Spain. She is very good at problem solving. She has good computer programming skills. She has always been a calm person.

### Lessons 5 & 6

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

Amir works for a design company. It's a very busy office and he works hard. He is never late for work and he always finishes his part of a project. He has lots of ideas, but he isn't good at listening to his team members' ideas.



Amir finds it difficult to make friends and he often gets upset when things are difficult at work.

• **Listen and complete :**

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. In a team you need members who are responsible so they take the work seriously. They need to collaborate while working with other members to get the best results. They need to be problem solvers instead of getting worried about problems. They need to have a positive attitude if there are difficult times while working. They need to communicate well with other team members.

**Test 9 on Unit 5**

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Wood is renewable, too. Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, metals, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

• **Listen and complete :**

Mr Ali takes Saleem and his class to the new solar farm. They meet the workers there. Some of the workers are putting solar panels in the desert. Some workers are driving trucks. Some workers are engineers. One of the engineers tells the class more about electricity. We have so much sunshine in the desert, so it is the perfect place for a solar farm.

**Test 10 on Unit 5**

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. Remember to be sensitive to how others might feel. You should be polite too. You should listen to other's ideas. If you find your role difficult, ask for help.

• **Listen and complete :**

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy for a television it is now a mechanical energy.

**Unit 6**

**| Lesson 1**

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

We're studying the Ancient Egyptians history at school. We found out that people didn't travel over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for transportation. They moved their goods in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river. I'll show you a picture of Tutankhamun's royal ship tomorrow.

• **Listen and complete**

Have you ever been to Luxor to visit the famous ancient temples in the Valley of the Kings ? I always wanted to go because I love archaeology. So, my dad said we could drive there in our new van for our vacation. It took us a whole day.



but we stopped for lunch and dinner in different towns. It was really interesting!

### Lesson 3

#### • Listen and complete :

Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines - that's just another word for robots. They also test the robots that they design to make sure that they are good at what they do. We will use these robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans to do. For example, we will use robots to build new automobiles or even high-speed trains. They will probably be used in agriculture and manufacturing too.

### Lesson 4

#### • Listen and complete :

To create strong passwords, don't use personal information like names, birthdays, phone numbers, or addresses. Don't use easy or obvious words, like password or computer, or series of numbers, like 1234. Don't use less than 10 characters. Don't use the same password for different accounts and don't tell your friends your passwords.

### Lessons 5 & 6

#### • Listen and complete :

Heba loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ship came from. She went with her father to the side of the Suez Canal. The ships are huge. It was fun.

### Test 11 on Unit 6

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

Hend looked out of the window of her family's house. She looked at the ships

going along the Suez Canal. The ships were so big. The ships moved slowly. She wants to be a ship's captain. She thinks it's a relaxing job. Heba loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ships came from.

#### • Listen and complete :

To create strong passwords, you shouldn't use personal information like names, birthdays, phone numbers, or addresses. Don't use easy or obvious words, like password or computer, or series of numbers, like 1234. Don't use less than 10 characters. Don't use the same password for different accounts. You shouldn't tell your friends your password.

### Test 12 on Unit 6

#### • Listen and circle the correct answer :

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances. First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items. Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.

#### • Listen and complete :

My uncle, aunt, and cousins all live in Algiers, the capital of Algeria. We want to visit them this year, but it's very far away from where we live in Cairo-about 3.000 kilometers. So, we'll take an airplane. It will be really fun ! I hope my parents let me sit by the window.



# Answers of paragraphs

الاجابات الفقرات

## Unit 1

### Lesson 2

#### Our different senses

We have five senses. We use them to do many things. We can use our eyes to see. We can hear with our ears. We can smell with our nose. We can feel with our skin. We use our tongue to taste. All our senses are very important.

### Lesson 3

#### What I like to do at the weekend

At the weekend, I like to do many things. I'd like to go to the park. I can run and play there. I'd like to paint some pictures. I'd like to help mum tidy the room. I'd like to go to the club and practise football. Sometimes, I'd like to do creative things.

### Lesson 4

#### A swimming champion

Aya Ayman Abbas is one of the best swimmers. She is a swimming champion who has won a lot of medals. She has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won a lot of gold, silver and bronze medals in different competitions.

### Lessons 5 & 6

#### How to be healthy

It is important to stay healthy. There are many tips for a healthy life. We should eat the right food. We should eat all kinds of food, with lots of vitamins and minerals. We should eat fruit and

vegetables, too. We shouldn't eat too much sugar because it is unhealthy. We should do exercise and do any sport like football. It is important to sleep early and get up early.

### Test 1 on Unit 1

#### The Paralympic Games

The Paralympic Games is an international competition. It is for athletes with disabilities. It takes place every four years like the Olympics. It is held in a different country each time. There are many Egyptian Paralympic athletes. They have taken part in different competitions. They have won many gold, silver and bronze medals.

### Test 2 on Unit 1

#### Respiratory system

There are different systems in our body. The respiratory system is a very important system. It helps us to do many things. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We use our nose to breathe in the air, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

## Unit 2

### Lesson 2

#### Reptiles

Reptiles are cold - blooded. They have to spend some time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur. They have

scales. All reptiles lay eggs. Reptiles live in different places. Most of them live on land. Some reptiles live in rivers or sea such as turtles.

### Lesson 2

#### Animals in the world

There are many different animals in the world. Some of them are big. Others are small. The biggest animal on land is the elephant. The biggest animal in the world lives in the sea. It is the blue whale. The biggest fish in the world is the whale shark. The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird. The biggest bird is the ostrich. Ants are small, but they are much stronger than humans.

### Lesson 3

#### Insects and snails

Invertebrates are animals without a backbone. Some invertebrates have hard shells such as snails. Snails move very slowly. Insects are also invertebrates. They have six legs. Grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump very high. The spider is not an insect. It has eight legs. It is called an arachnid. Spiders can move very quickly.

### Lesson 4

#### The color wheel

There are many different colors in the color wheel. There are some colors called primary colors. There are colors called secondary colors. Some people describe colors as warm colors and cold colors. The warm colors are linked to joy, strength, power, energy and passion. The cold colors are linked to rest, quietness, sweetness and sadness. We can mix some colors together to get another color.

### Test 3 on Unit 2

#### Birds

Birds are warm - blooded, but they don't have fur. They don't have hair. All birds have feathers and they have wings, too. Most birds can fly well. They lay eggs. Their eggs are hard. Also, birds have beaks. These beaks are made of bones. The beaks are of different shapes because birds eat different food. Some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and others eat seeds.

### Test 4 on Unit 2

#### Having a pet

It's fun to watch pets. It's good to learn about how to look after them. You can learn about their species. Some animals such as dogs need to walk which is good exercise. They need a lot of care and attention. It can be expensive to have a pet. Animals can be noisy. Some animals can cause a mess. Some animals bite.

## Unit 3

### Lesson 1

#### My community

My community is a group of people who live and work together in our area. I live with my family in an apartment. There are many special things about my community. There are different places, ideas and activities. In our community, we can do many good things. We help each other and do many acts of kindness. We are polite and helpful.

### Lesson 2

#### Scribes

Scribes were very important in the history of Egypt. They were the people



who wrote down everything that happened in the past. They worked for the ruling families or who were called dynasties. They wrote in the ancient Egypt language, hieroglyphs. They drew pictures or symbols that meant one word. They wrote on stone or on paper called papyrus. Children learnt to become a scribe at school.

### Lessons 4 & 5

#### Music in Upper Egypt

Egypt has many different styles of music. It has also lots of traditional folk music. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins and the oboe. Singing and drumming are also famous there. In the farther south, there is the Nubian music. The Nubian music is now popular all over Egypt.

#### ( Test 5 on Unit 3 )

#### Folk dancing in Egypt

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. There are many forms of folk dancing. The most famous one is Nubian dancing. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. There is also Raqs Assaya. It is the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. In other forms of dancing, people wear special costumes.

#### ( Test 6 on Unit 3 )

#### Ancient Egypt

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. There were two separate areas, Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. One

pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile so boats could sail on it.

## Unit 4

### Lesson 2

#### My village life

I live in a nice village. It is by the Nile. It is sparsely populated. Only about 600 people live in my village. My father is a farmer. He grows crops. He also raises animals. There are many services. There are shops where we can buy our needs. There is also a club. We play football there. There is also a hospital with many clever doctors.

#### ( Test 7 on Unit 4 )

#### City you live in

I live in a big city. This city is called Alexandria. There are about 6 million people live in my city. It is densely populated. Although it is crowded and has many people, there are many services. There are clubs, gardens and beaches. People can enjoy all these services all the time. I enjoy going to the club to practice my favorite hobbies.

#### ( Test 8 on Unit 4 )

#### Carpet making

Carpet making is a traditional Egyptian craft. To make a carpet first, they collect the wool from sheep. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then they need to dye the yarn using vegetable dyes or synthetic dyes. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom.



## Unit 5

### Lesson 1

#### Natural resources

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. We use them for many different purposes. There are two main forms of natural resources. Some resources are called renewable. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of them. There are also non-renewable resources. They are things that we can't get any more once we have used them up.

### Lesson 2

#### My day

My day starts at 7 o'clock when I get up. I wash my face and brush my teeth. I have my breakfast with my family at home. I take the bus to my school. When I finish my school day, I go home at 3 o'clock. I have my lunch. At 4 o'clock, I do my homework. In the evening, I watch TV or play computer games. I go to bed at 9 o'clock.

### Lessons 5 & 6

#### How to be a good team member

There are many things you should do or have to be a good team member. Teamwork is very important for the success of any project. You should share ideas and feelings with other team members. You should be responsible and remember to complete your part of the project. If there is a problem or a difficult situation, stay calm and don't get upset. You should always be positive.

### Test 9 on Unit 5

#### Advantages and disadvantages of solar energy

Solar energy has become very important for some countries. It is the energy that we get from the sun using solar panels. It has some advantages and some disadvantages. Its advantages can be that solar panels are easy to look after. Also, the electricity from it is cheap. On the other hand, the disadvantages are that solar farms need a very big space. Solar panels are expensive and we can't make solar power on rainy days.

### Test 10 on Unit 5

To : samarali@yahoo.com

From : samasami@yahoo.com

Subject : renewable energy

Dear Samar

I am writing to you to tell you about renewable energy. Renewable energy is from resources that will not run out. We can make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water. We can also use sunshine in the desert to make electricity. The solar panels collect energy from the sun. We can use it to make electricity for our home because it is cheap. You can search for more information.

Yours,

Sama

## Unit 6

### Lesson 1

#### Types of transportation

There are many forms of transportation. They include planes, trains, ships, buses, cars and bikes. People use planes to travel from place to place when it is far. They use plane to transport goods too. They also use ships, but planes are faster and more comfortable. Now, there are electric trains and metros. People use cars, buses and taxis to travel around their cities.

### Lesson 4

#### How to create strong passwords

It is important to stay safe when we use the internet or go online. It is important to create a strong password. To do that there are many tips. Don't use your personal information like names, phone numbers or addresses. Don't use obvious words. You should use more than 10 characters. You shouldn't tell your friends your passwords. Don't use the same password for different accounts.

### Lessons 5 & 6

#### The Suez Canal

The Suez Canal is very important. There are many ships go through it every day. It links the whole world. In the Suez Canal, the ships move slowly. The ships have to be straight. There are many ships that carry huge containers. The captains of these ships must be clever. The Suez Canal is also important for the Egyptian people because it gives many jobs to them.

### Test 11 on Unit 6

#### "Tech jobs of the future"

One of the important tech jobs of the future is a UX Designer. User Experience Designers create a positive experience between the user and the technology that the one uses, like web pages, apps and machines like washing machines. Another important tech job is robotics engineers. They are the people who design autonomous machines. They also test the robots that they design.

### Test 12 on Unit 6

#### "Search online safely"

Here are some important things to keep in mind to help you search safely. Use the safe search option in your browser. When the search engine shows you your results, you will probably see some ads. You might also see the word sponsor, this means that it is also an ad. Finally use specific words for your searches.



EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

# MASTER YOUR SKILLS

By a group of specialists

Parents' Guide



CONNECT



الصف الرابع الابتدائي  
بمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لعام  
العصر المدرسي ٢٠٢٣

4 Primary  
2023  
FIRST TERM

Part

1

Language

3

Part

2

Writing skill

13

1. Punctuation marks
2. How to write
3. Writing skill

Part

3

The Four Basic skills

30





Part

1

Language



1

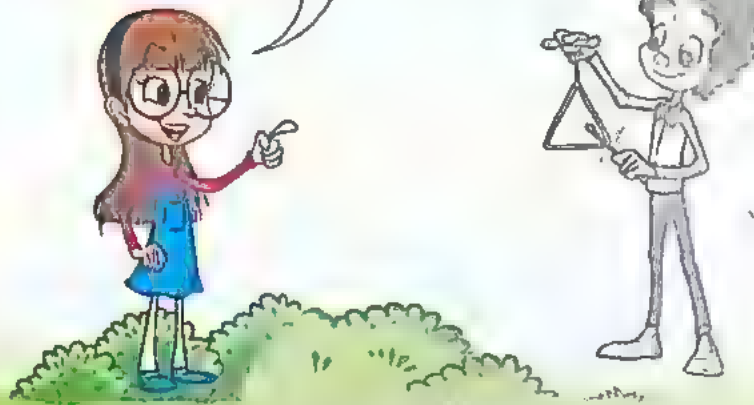
This is / These are

**A** This is ..singular noun ..

هذا يكون اسم مفرد ..

• تستخدم (This is) للإشارة للمفرد القريب.

This is my friend. هذا صديقي.



**B** These are ..plural noun ..

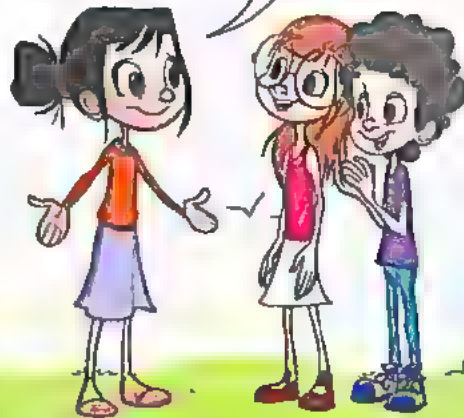
هؤلاء يكونوا اسم جمع ..

• لاحظ أنه عند جمع الاسم المفرد نضيف (S) في نهايته.

friend → friends

cousin → cousins

These are my friends. هؤلاء أصدقائي.



2

## Possessive adjectives

صفات الملكية

my ملكي

your ملكك

It's **my** watch.

إنها ساعتني.

They're **your** clothes.

إنهم ملابستك.



3

## To express possession

التعبير عن الملكية

A have

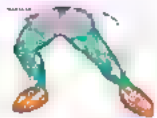
★ للتعبير عن ملكيتي أو عدم ملكيتي لشيء ما :

الإثبات Positive

I

have

two legs.



النفى Negative

I

don't have

a beak.

I **have** two arms.

أنا لذي ذراعين.

I **have** one head.

أنا لذي رأس واحدة.

**B** has

تستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية مع المفرد:



It (A camel)

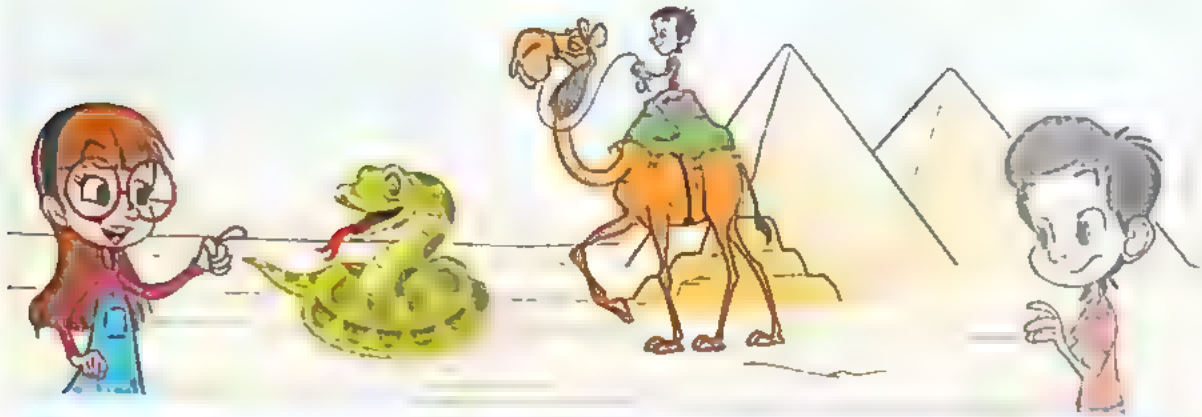
**has**



two eyes.

A snake **has** no legs.  
الثعبان ليس لديه أرجل.

A camel **has** four legs.  
الجمال لديه أربعة أرجل.



**4**

**Conjunction** is a word that joins words and sentences

٤. أداة الربط: هي كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل معًا.

**and**

(و)

**so**

(لذلك)

**but**

(لكن)

**A**

**To join ideas**

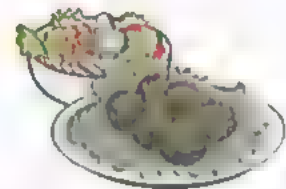
لربط أفكار متوافقة

**and**

(و)

☆ نستخدم (and) إذا كانت الجملتان متوافقتين:

They had falafel and salad for breakfast.





**B** To say a result لذكر النتيجة

نستخدم (so) عند ذكر النتيجة لفعل شيء ما :

**so**

(لذلك)

He's hungry so he gets some food.



**C** To show contrast لتوضيح التناقض

تستخدم (but) عند توضيح التناقض :

**but**

(لكن)

They wanted to paint pictures at the park, but it was raining.



**5**

**The Present Simple Tense**

٥. زمن المضارع البسيط

He , She , It , اسم مفرد + the main verb + (s) .....

- She gets up at 7 o'clock.

He , She , It , اسم مفرد + the main verb ending in

sh

ch

ss

x

o

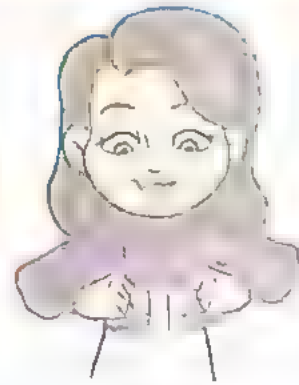
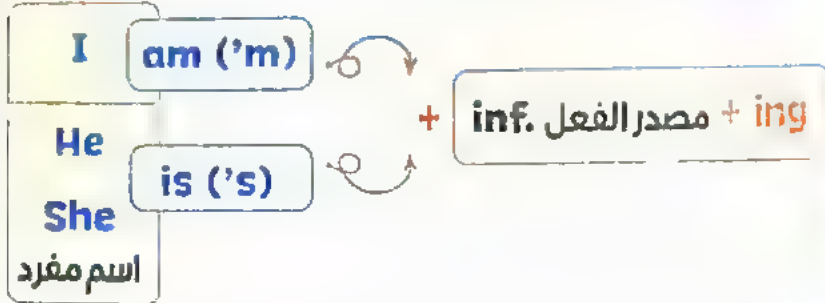
+ ( es ) .....

- He goes home at two thirty.

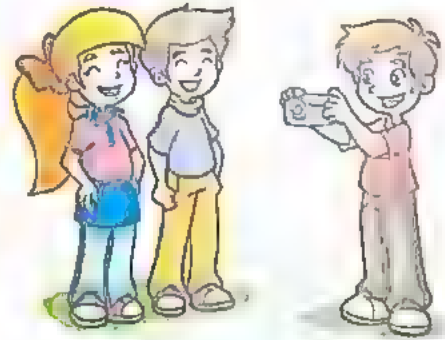
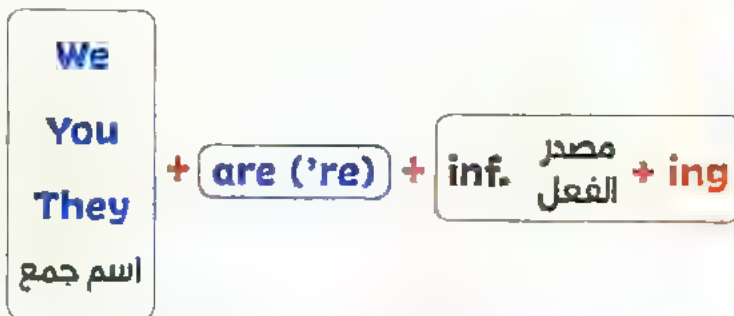
6

## The Present Continuous Tense

٦ زمن المضارع المستمر



She is collecting magnets.



They are taking photos.

7

## The Simple Past Tense

٧ زمن الماضي البسيط

## A Regular Verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

In the simple past tense, we change regular verbs by adding -ed or -d.

في زمن الماضي البسيط، نحول الفعل المنتظم بإضافة -ed أو -d.

I **cooked** dinner for my grandparents.

أنا طهييت العشاء لأجدادي.



## B Irregular Verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

There are many irregular verbs.

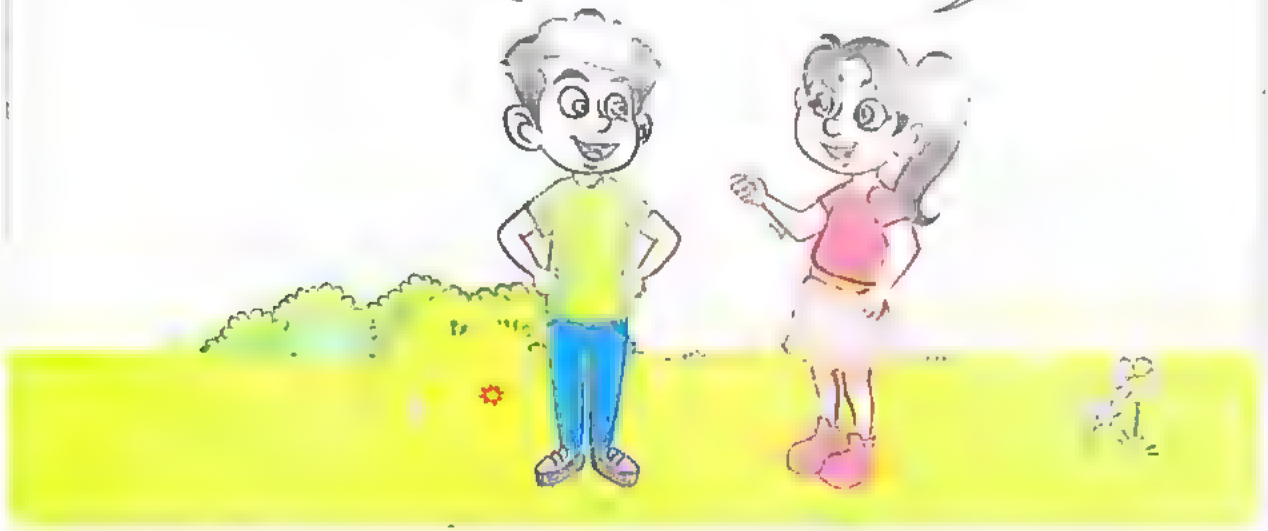
هناك العديد من الأفعال الغير منتظمة. تُحفظ كما هي.

I **had** a great day at the museum yesterday.

قضيت يوم رائع في المتحف أمس.

I **was** excited yesterday.

كنت متحمسة أمس.



## Conjugation of Verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

look

ينظر

Past ماضى

looked

Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

see

am / is

are

have / has

make

wear

يرى

يكون

يكونوا

يملك/لديه

يصنع

يرتدى

Past ماضى

saw

was

were

had

made

wore

8

## Ask and answer questions about objects

٨ السؤال والإجابة عن الأشياء

A We use (What is this ?) to ask about singular object.

- نستخدم ( What's this ? ) للسؤال عن شيء مفرد.

What's this ?

It's a jacket.

B We use (What are these ?) to ask about plural objects.

- نستخدم ( What are these ? ) للسؤال عن أشياء جمع.

What are these ?

They are mountains.

9

## To ask about and tell the time

٩ السؤال عن الوقت والإجابة عليه

★ What time is it ?

★ It's ...number... o'clock.

★ It's... الدقائق + الساعة ...



10

## When... متى... ؟؟

١٠ السؤال عن وقت حدوث شيء ما

When is Hamza's birthday ?

متى يكون عيد ميلاد حمزة؟



July

Hamza's birthday is on July 29th.

عيد ميلاد حمزة في ٢٩ من شهر يوليو.





## 11 Asking about places

(السؤال عن المكان)

Where is  ? She is in the .

Where is + (اسم مفرد) ؟

أين يكون / تكون ..... ؟

تستخدم (Where is ..... ?) للسؤال عن مكان شخص / شيء مفرد.

### ★ Prepositions of places :

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

in في

تحت below

على on

خلف behind

## 12 Asking about what someone did in the past

١٢. السؤال عن ما فعله شخص ما في الماضي نستخدم :

What did + **Subj.** + do ..... ?  
فاعل

**Subj.** + **verb in the past** + باقي الجملة.  
فاعل (الفعل في زمن الماضي)

- I visited my grandmother.

## 13 To ask about the country where someone is from

١٣. السؤال عن الدولة التي منها شخصًا ما



Where are you from ?

من أين أنت ؟



I'm from China.

أنا من الصين.

## 14 Asking about the price

سؤال عن السعر

**A** How much is اسم مفرد ?

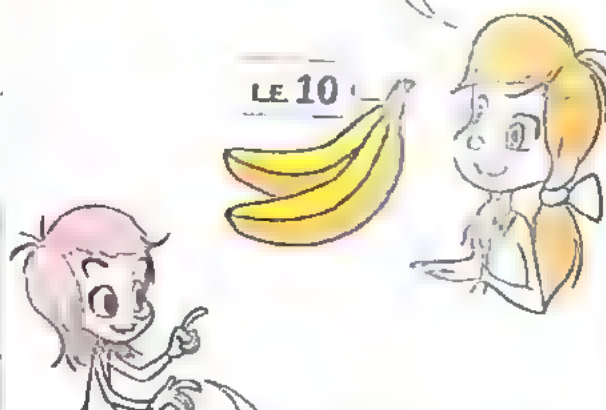
How much is **a mango** ?  
كم سعر ثمرة المانجو؟



it's **5 pounds**.  
إنها بخمسة جنيهات.

**B** How much are ..... ?

How much are **these** ?  
كم ثمنهم؟



They are **10 pounds**.  
إنهم بعشرة جنيهات.

## 15 How many

سؤال عن العدد

How many + plural noun + are there ?  
كم عدد ... ؟  
اسم جمع يعد

والإجابة نستخدم :

- There are + number + plural noun  
اسم جمع يعد + عدد + يوجد  
= There are + number.

When you offer something politely :: عندما تعرض شيء بطريقة مهذبة :

Would you like a / an ..... ?  
هل تود ..... ؟

- عند الإجابة بالموافقة نستخدم (Yes, please).

- عند الإجابة بعدم الموافقة نستخدم (No, thank you).

# Part 2

## Writing Skill

1. Write the following:

2. Write the following:

3. Write the following:



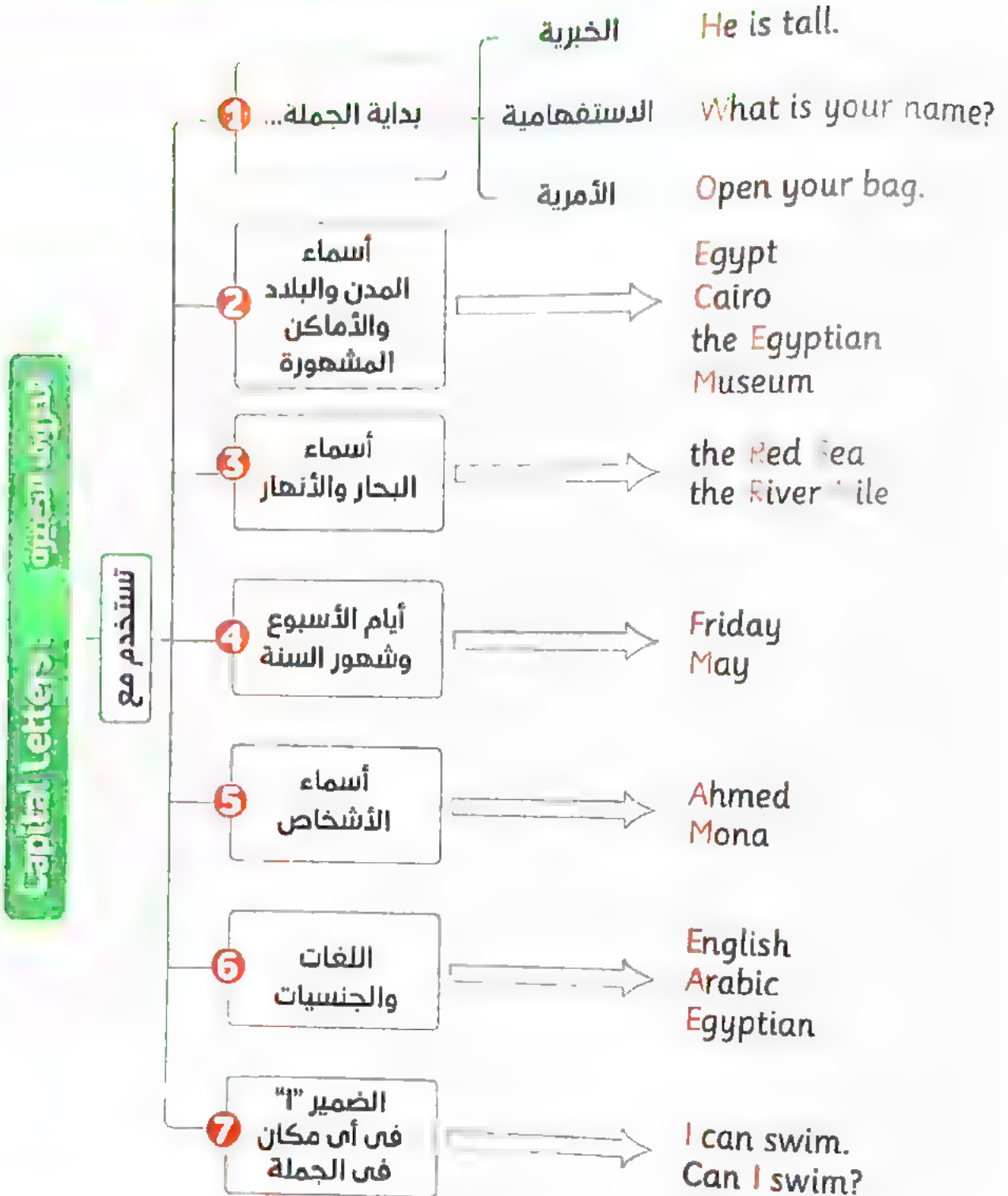
### \* Notes for parents:

- Help your child improve his / her writing skill.

• ساعد طفلك في تحسين مهارة الكتابة لديه / لديها.

# 1. Punctuation Marks

## ١. علامات الترقيم



### Notes for parents

- Help your child know how to use punctuation marks.

- وضع علامات الترقيم مثل ( . , - - - ) .

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم علامات الترقيم.

علامات الترقيم هي ( Capital Letters ) حروف كبيرة.

معرفة متى تستخدم الحروف الكبيرة ( Capital Letters ) .



### Full stop / period

توضع علامة الفاصلة في نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

- I am Kareem.
- Open the door, please.



### Question mark

توضع علامة الاستفهام في نهاية السؤال.

How are you ?



### Exclamation mark / point

تستخدم علامة التعجب في حالة الترحيب أو التعجب.

- Wow !
- Hello !
- Help !
- Don't run !
- Oh !
- Hi !



### Apostrophe

١. تستخدم الفاصلة العليا (') في الاختصارات مثل

(is = 's / are = 're / have = 've)

- It's a puppet.

٢. تستخدم مع (s) الملكية.

- That is Heba's car.



### Comma

١. تستخدم الفاصلة السفلية (,) بعد Yes أو No.

- Yes, I am.
- No, I am not.

٢. تستخدم للفصل بين مجموعة من الأشياء من نوع واحد.

- I met Samya, Heba and Nabila.

٣. توضع الفاصلة (,) بعد المخاطب في أول الجملة وقبل المخاطب في آخر الجملة.

- Come here, Noha.
- Noha, come here.

٤. توضع قبل كلمة (please) في آخر الكلام وبعد (please) أول الكلام.

- Please, keep quiet.
- Pass the cake, please.

٥. تستخدم مع الروابط الآتية عندما تأتي في أول الجملة فقط.

- as soon as, after, before, although, even though, while, ... etc.

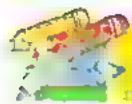
- After I get up, I will wash my face.

- Although he is strong, he can't lift the box.

أما عندما تكون الروابط في منتصف الجملة لا تستخدم الفاصلة السفلية.

- I will wash my face after I get up.
- He can't lift the box although he is strong.





## Activity

- 1 Choose the sentence that has the correct punctuation marks.**  
احتر الحملة التي بها علامات الترقيم الصحيحة.

1. a. louis braille invented the braille code  
b. Louis Braille invented the braille code.  
c. Louis Braille invented the Braille code.
2. a. Cairo, Alexandria, Giza and Port Said are the largest cities in Egypt.  
b. cairo, alexandria, giza and port said are the largest cities in egypt.  
c. Cairo, Alexandria, giza and Port Said are the largest cities in egypt.
3. a. What is your favorite food.  
b. What is your favorite food ?  
c. What is your favorite food !

- 2 Use the correct punctuation mark in the sentences.**  
استخدم علامة الترقيم الصحيحة في الجمل.

comma (,) - question mark (?) - full stop (.) -  
exclamation mark (!) - apostrophe (')

1. Mrs Azza reads Braille because she can't see well
2. Please ..... get out of the room.
3. My mother ..... s hat is red.
4. What a beautiful toy
5. I love to eat all fruits like apples ..... mangoes and pineapple.

## Unit 1

### 1 Rewrite the sentences with capital letters.

أعد كتابة الجمل بالحروف الكبيرة.

1. the english roses in london in august smelled sweet.  
.....
2. the pyramids are the most famous landmark in giza.  
.....
3. american sign language is different to spanish sign language.  
.....
4. we visited luxor in june and went to the karnak temple.  
.....

### 2 Correct the mistakes. Each sentence has one or two mistakes.

صحح الأخطاء. كل جملة بها خطأ واحد أو خطاين.

1. Mr and Mrs Bahgat stayed in Aswan at the Weekend.  
.....
2. Many Temples were built by King Ramses II.  
.....
3. Tamer went to Luxor in february to see his Grandparents.  
.....

## Unit 2

### 1 Read and write (.) or (?). اقرأ وأكتب (.) أو (?).

1. Which groups of vertebrates are cold-blooded
2. Giraffes are the tallest animals in the world
3. Are insects vertebrates or invertebrates
4. What are the three primary colors
5. A shark is a predator
6. If you add black to a color, it becomes darker

## Unit 3

### 1 Look and trace. انظر وتتبع.

1. Music was important in Ancient Egypt .
2. Where can you buy Khayameya .

### 2 Read and put correct punctuation marks in the correct places. اقرأ وضع علامات الترقيم في أماكنها الصحيحة.

! ? . , ' .

1. Music was important in Ancient Egypt .....
2. Where can you buy Khayameya .....
3. Those books belong to me and Layla. They ..... re ours.
4. What a beautiful community .....

## Unit 4

### 1 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1. this is a metropolitan area

.....

2. hello, I m waleed s dad.

.....

### 2 Trace and Color the comma (,). تتبع ولون الفاصلة السفلية (,).





# Unit 3

## 1 Look and trace. انظروا وتتبعوا

1. renewable energy is clean and it doesn't run out
2. who isn't a good problem solver

## 2 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل التالية

1. renewable energy is clean and it doesn't run out
2. who isn't a good problem solver

# Unit 3

## 1 Look and trace. انظروا وتتبعوا

1. renewable energy is clean and it doesn't run out
2. who isn't a good problem solver

## 2 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل التالية

1. read the options in the search box carefully
2. large ships and ferries can't travel far

## 2. How to write

٢ كيف نكتب

لا نعبر بمهارة الكتابة على استخدام القلم للكتابة في سطور فارغة ولكن مهارة الكتابة هي من التعبير عن الفهم .  
اجعل طفلك دائماً يستمتع بمهارة الكتابة ولا تجعلها ثقلًا عليه.

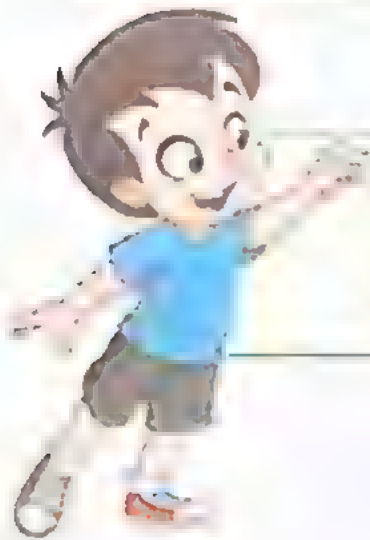
### الخطوات الخمسة للكتابة

#### اتبع الخطوات التالية :

- الخطوة الأولى : تهيئة الطالب للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة باستخدام المفردات والوظائف اللغوية لكل وحدة.
- الخطوة الثانية : التدريب على المفردات اللغوية للوحدة.
  - الخطوة الثالثة : التدريب على الوظائف اللغوية للوحدة.
  - الخطوة الرابعة : التدريب على كتابة جمل مرتبطة بالمفردات والوظائف اللغوية التي تم دراستها.

#### ٢ قيم نفسك :

- هل تتذكر المفردات اللغوية التي درستها في الوحدة؟
- هل تتذكر الوظائف اللغوية التي درستها في الوحدة؟
- هل لديك القدرة على كتابة وقراءة الكلمات والحمل الخاصة بالوحدة؟

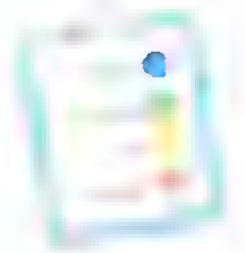


## Unit 1 Writing practice

### Activity 1

الخطوة الأولى: فهم الطالب الكلمات

يقوم الطالب بمراجعة هذه الدل التي تساعد على استرجاع ما درسه في الوحدة



When we swallow  
food, it goes to our  
stomach.



There are two halves  
or hemispheres in  
our brain.

## Unit 2 Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: تدريب الطالب على المفردات الخاصة بالوحدة

يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على المفردات الخاصة بالوحدة.

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

respiratory - skeleton - digestive



1. Our  is made up of  
all the bones in our body.



2. When we eat and drink, we  
use our  system.

## Unit 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: تدريب الطالب على القواعد الخاصة بالوحدة

يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على القواعد الخاصة بالوحدة.

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

climb - climbs - always

1. I  watch cartoons.

2. She sometimes  a tree.

## Unit 4 Writing practice

الخطوة الرابعة: تدريب الطالب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معا

يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معا

- Look and write a sentence : انظر واكتب جملة



مهم: نضع نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة

## Unit 2

### Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: مهارة الطالب الكتابية

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الدمل التي تساعد على استرجاع ما درسه في الوحدة



The biggest animal in the world lives on land.



Vertebrates are animals with a backbone.

### Step 2 Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرّب على المفردات اللغوية

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

gills - lungs - Amphibians



1. can live on land and in water.



2. Fish take in oxygen through their .

### Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرّب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

smaller - biggest - bigger

1. The horse is . . . . . than the chameleon.
2. The . . . . . bird in the world can't fly.

### Step 4 Writing practice

الخطوة الرابعة: ممارسة الكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معًا.

- Look and write a sentence : انظر واكتب جملة.



قم برفع يمينك بعنك بالعلامات الموضحة. ○○○○



## Unit 3

### Step 1 Warm Up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التي تساعد على استرجاع ما درسه في الوحدة.



A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area.



Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history.



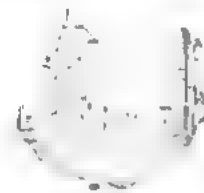
### Step 2 Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

Cairo - Alexandria - Hieroglyphs



- ..... are pictures or symbols that mean one word or many ideas.

- I'm Fares. I live in .....

### Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

This - These - was

- ..... is my school.

- Rania ..... at the zoo last week.

### Step 4 Writing practice

الخطوة الرابعة: ممارسة الكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معًا.

- Look and write a sentence : انظر واكتب جملة.



.....

.....

.....

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة. ○○○○

## UNIT 1

### 1. Reading practice

Read the text and answer the questions.



Greater Cairo  
is densely  
populated.



If you are a  
pedestrian, you have  
to be very careful.

### 2. Word practice

Choose the correct word.

Write the word in the space.

- Choose and write the word :  
countryside - sparsely - metropolitan



1. Greater Cairo is a  
area.



2. My village is  
populated.

### 3. Grammar practice

Choose the correct word.

Write the word in the space.

- Choose and write the word :  
child - children - After

- My aunt has four .
- . I return from my school, I will have lunch.

### 4. Writing practice

Write the sentence.

Look at the picture and write a sentence.



- Look and write a sentence :

## Unit 3



1

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.  
يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التي تساعد على استرجاع ما درسه في الوحدة



Renewable resources  
can be naturally  
replaced when they  
run out.



We use solar panels  
to collect sunlight.

2

### Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدريب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

Teamwork - solar panels - Wind power



1. \_\_\_\_\_ is a renewable  
source of energy.



2. \_\_\_\_\_ is very important for  
the success of a project.

3

### Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدريب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

Neither - don't - doesn't

1. Heba \_\_\_\_\_ speak French.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ of my friends will attend the party.

4

### Writing practice

الخطوة الرابعة: ممارسة الكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معًا.

- Look and write a sentence : انظر واكتب جملة



## Unit 6

### Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: نهضة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التي تساعد على استرجاع ما درسه في الوحدة.



Ahmed is the ship's captain. He has worked there for 10 years.



She will travel on a ship.

### Step 2 Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

Passphrases - farmer - entrepreneur



1. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is someone who starts a new business.



2. \_\_\_\_\_ are much safer than regular passwords.

### Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

Has - Have - will

1. I can smell delicious food. \_\_\_\_\_ you finished cooking ?
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ travel to Aswan by plane.

### Step 4 Writing practice

الخطوة الرابعة: ممارسة الكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معًا.

- Look and write a sentence : انظر واكتب جملة.



\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة. ○○○○



## 3. Writing Skill

### ٣. مهارات الكتابة

#### ١. How to write a paragraph

١. كيفية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية

#### القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

١. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريباً ١ سم) في السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
٢. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
٣. أن تضع (.) واضحة في نهاية كل جملة.
٤. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
٥. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوع بدايات الجمل.
٦. استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذي تكتبه.
٧. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
٨. اجتهد في تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
٩. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words :

#### Birds

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bones. Their beaks are in different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

#### Video games

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

## Folk dancing

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns.

### 2. How to write an email

البريد الإلكتروني

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you.

موضوع الرسالة

Yours,

اسم الراسل

### Write an email of FIFTY (50) words :

1

To : noura@yahoo.com

From : aya@yahoo.com

Subject : My visit to Alexandria

Dear Noura,

How is your family? I want to tell you about my visit to Alexandria. Last Friday, we went to Alexandria by train. We stayed at a hotel. The hotel was near the beach. We went to the beach at 2 p.m. We had a nice time in Alexandria.

Yours,

Aya

2

To : ali@gmail.com  
From : amr@gmail.com  
Subject : My school library

Dear Ali,

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you. I want to tell you about my school library. It is big. It is beside my class. It has a lot of books. I like to read at break. Tell me about your school library.

Yours,

Amr

3

To : mohamed@yahoo.com  
From : mazen@yahoo.com  
Subject : Ice cream

Dear Mohamed,

How are you ? I like ice cream. It's my favorite dessert. My favorite flavor is chocolate. It's delicious. There's an ice cream shop near my house. I eat ice cream once a week because I know it is unhealthy. I eat a lot of fruits every day.

Yours,

Mazen

# The Four Basic Skills

الكتابة  
الاستماع

الاستماع  
الكتابة



## • Notes for parents :

- Help your child identify the skills of English language.

"ساعد طفلك في التعرف على المهارات الأساسية للغة الإنجليزية (مهارات الاستماع - النحدث - القراءة - الكتابة)



## Vocabulary



digestive system



respiratory system



skeleton



heart



stomach



muscle



swallow



hearing



tongue



Braille



Braille



gold medal



bronze medal



silver medal



Paralympic Games



exercise

## Language

### Present simple

I always exercise.



### زمن المضارع البسيط

He lives in a flat.



Bats are mammals.



He has a car.



## Listening

☆ Listen and tick (✓). استمع و ضع علامة (✓).

1.



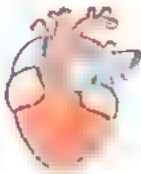
- heart ☐
- skeleton ☐

2.



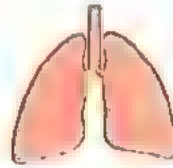
- muscles ☐
- hair ☐

3.



- heart ☐
- blood ☐

4.



- lungs ☐
- stomach ☐

## Speaking

☆ Talking about your activities at the weekend.

التحدث عن الأنشطة الخاصة بك في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

What would you like to do  
at the weekend ?

ماذا تحب أن تفعل في عطلة  
نهاية الأسبوع ؟



I would like to draw or  
paint a picture.

أحب أن أرسم أو ألون صورة.



## Reading

★ Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Yesterday, I watched a program on TV. It was about how to keep our bodies healthy. Water is very important to our bodies. We should drink plenty of water every day. Exercise keeps you fit and healthy. Eat fresh fruit and vegetables that have a lot of fiber and vitamins. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. Don't eat too many sweets. It's unhealthy. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about  
a. How to keep our bodies healthy  
b. How to keep our environment clean  
c. Unhealthy food  
d. Exercise
2. We can get vitamins from .....  
a. sweets                      b. water                      c. vegetables                      d. salt

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Is too much sugar good for us ?
4. Why do we need vitamins ?

## Writing

★ Look and write a sentence under each picture :

use - respiratory



pump - blood



# Unit 2

## Vocabulary



vertebrates



invertebrates



cold-blooded



mammals



coral reefs



reptiles



scales



chameleon



bee hummingbird



warm-blooded



backbone



amphibians



fur

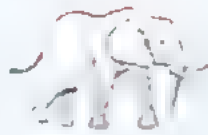


water lily

## Language

### Comparative

The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.



### Superlative

The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird.



The turtle is the slowest animal.





## Listening

★ Listen and tick (✓). استمع وضع علامة (✓).

1.



- reptiles ☐
- amphibians ☐

2.



- fur ☐
- gills ☐

3.



- cold-blooded ☐
- warm-blooded ☐

4.



- muscle ☐
- backbone ☐

## Speaking

★ Quiz about animals.

- Which are larger, leopards or cheetahs ?

Leopards are larger than cheetahs.



- Which are the heaviest snakes in the world ?

Green anacondas.



## Reading

★ Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about .....  
a. birds                      b. mammals                      c. reptiles                      d. fish
2. Birds lay eggs which are .....  
a. hot                      b. hard                      c. soft                      d. warm

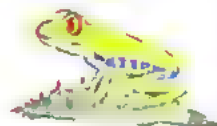
B. Answer the following questions.

3. Can all birds fly ?
4. Why are birds' beaks different ?

## Writing

★ Look and write a sentence under each picture :

Amphibians -  
cold-blooded



birds - wings



## Vocabulary

community

neighborhood

colorful

scribe

pharaoh

hieroglyphs

governorate

string  
instruments

wind  
instruments

village

sports club

## Language

### Demonstrative pronouns

• This is a toy. (near)

• That is a toy. (far)

• These are books. (near)

• Those are books. (far)



### Possessive pronouns

• This is mine.

• That car is hers.

• Those are ours.

### Past simple tense

Salma was at the cinema.

## Listening

★ Listen and tick (✓). الستمع و ضع علامة (✓).

1.



- community ☐
- neighborhood ☐

2.



- governorate ☐
- lungs ☐

3.



- hieroglyphs ☐
- pharaohs ☐

4.



- rebaba ☐
- drum ☐

## Speaking

★ Quiz about My world.

- Where do you live ?  
- I live in Aswan.
- What part of Egypt was Upper Egypt ?  
- The South.
- How many governorates are there in Egypt ?  
- 27 governorates.
- What type of instruments is the shabbaba ?  
- It is a wind instrument.





## Reading

★ Read the following text and answer the questions below :

How do we know so much about the history of Egypt ? Egyptians at that time used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties. They wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures of symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The text is about .....
  - a. Ancient Egyptians
  - b. Modern dynasties
  - c. Alexandria Library
  - d. Hurghada
2. In Ancient Egypt, ..... wrote everything that happened.
  - a. doctors
  - b. farmers
  - c. engineers
  - d. scribes

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What language did the Ancient Egyptians write in ?

.....

4. What did scribes write the symbols ?

.....

## Writing

★ Look and write a sentence under each picture :

scribes - wrote down




---

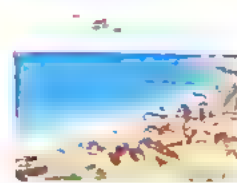


---



---

The Red Sea  
governorate -  
scuba diving




---



---



---

## Vocabulary



city



village



densely populated



isolated



congestion



sparsely populated



yarn



inhabitant



goose



date



donkey



buffalo



sheep



geometric patterns



dye



artisans

## Language

### Conjunctions

- When the yarn is dry, the artisans can weave a carpet.



- Malak and Youssef ran inside as soon as it started raining.



☆ Listen and ... استمع و ضع علامة (✓).

1.



- densely populated ☐
- sparse populated ☐

2.



- isolated ☐
- metropolitan ☐

3.



- dye ☐
- spin ☐



- a tomato ☐
- tomatoes ☐

Speaking

☆ Quiz about city and country.

- Is your house traditional or modern ?

- It is modern.



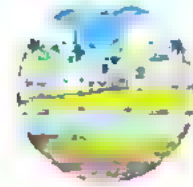
- Do you live in a sparsely populated area or a densely populated one ?

- I live in a densely populated area.



- Do you live in a rural or an urban environment ?

- I live in a rural environment.



## Reading

★ Read the following text and answer the questions below :

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese on the river.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The text is about where Waleed .....

- a. lives                      b. drinks                      c. drives                      d. rides

2. You can see ..... in the street in Waleed's village.

- a. cattle                      b. cars                      c. cats                      d. dogs

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What animals do they have ?

.....

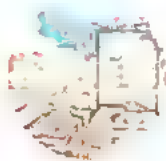
4. How many sheep does Waleed's dad have ?

.....

## Writing

★ Look and write a sentence under each picture :

Great Cairo - busy




---

---

---

---

These - geese




---

---

---

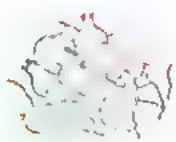
---



# Unit 5



renewable  
resources



non-renewable  
resources



coal



engineer



rock / stone



wind power



solar panels



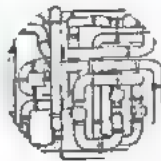
solar power



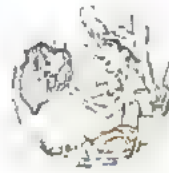
teamwork



wood



metal



fossils



petroleum

## Language

### Present simple Tense

- The mechanic fixes cars.
- He visits his uncle every month.

### Nouns and their pronouns

- He presented his project.
- Both children presented their projects.

## Listening

☆ Listen and tick (✓). استمع و ضع علامة (✓).

1.



- gold
- silver

☐

2.



- crude oil well
- water

☐

3.



- wood
- coal

☐

4.



- renewable
- non-renewable

☐

## Speaking

☆ Quiz about city and country.

- What are natural resources ?
  - They're materials that we get from nature.
- Is renewable energy clean ?
  - Yes, it is.
- Where do wave power and tidal power work ?
  - They only work in the sea or ocean.

## Reading

★ Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Seleem walks to school every day. The road is next to the desert. It is usually hot, sunny and dusty on the road. Last year, there was nothing in the desert. Sometimes Seleem saw a lizard, but most of the time, he just saw rocks and sunshine. Now things are different. He sees lots of workers and trucks in the desert. They are building a solar farm. At school, Seleem's teacher asks the class a question "What is renewable energy?" Seleem puts his hand up "Renewable energy is from a resource that won't run out" he said.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Seleem saw rocks and ..... most of the time.

- a. weather      b. sunshine      c. farms      d. questions

2. The road is ..... the desert.

- a. next to      b. in front of      c. above      d. under

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What are they building in the desert ?

.....

4. What is renewable energy ?

.....

## Writing

★ Look and write a sentence under each picture :

solar panels -  
sunshine




---

---

---

teamwork -  
success




---

---

---

### Vocabulary



airplane



train



ship



boat



rail



river



pipe



road



robot



ship's  
captain



container  
ship

### Language

#### The Present Perfect Tense.

Have you ever traveled on a train ?

هل سافرت بالقطار من قبل ؟

Yes, I have.

نعم، لقد سافرت به.



#### The Future Simple Tense.

He will travel by train.





## Listening

☆ Listen and tick (✓) . (استمع وضع علامة ✓)

1.



• airplane ☐

• train ☐



• container ship ☐

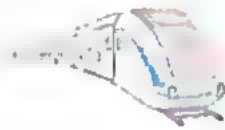
• ferry ☐

3.



• robot ☐

• farmer ☐



• high - speed train ☐

• bus ☐

## Speaking

☆ Ask about past experience

• Have you ever traveled on an airplane ?

- Yes, I have



• How will you travel to Alexandria ?

- By train.



## Reading

★ Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Heba looked out of the window of her family's house at the ships going along the Suez Canal. They were so big. 'It must be so fun to be a ship's captain !' thought Heba. 'The ship moves so slowly. I think it's a relaxing job. Heba loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ships came from. One day, Heba's father said, "My friend, Amr, works on a container ship. He will travel past our house today. Let's go and wave at him". Heba and her family went to the side of the Suez Canal and waited for Amr's ship. It was huge and had hundreds of containers on it.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Heba thought it must be fun to be a ...  
a. ship's engineer      b. ship's captain  
c. farmer      d. doctor
2. Amr works on a .....  
a. container ship      b. boat      c. ferry      d. train

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What did Heba see when she looked out of the house window ?
- .....
4. What did Heba love ?

## Writing

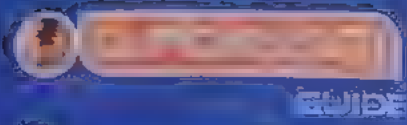
★ Look and write a sentence under each picture :

This - container  
ship



Hany - robotic engineer





# Interactive Notebook

By a group of supervisors

Primary 2023



CONNECT



الصف الرابع الابتدائي  
للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لعام  
العصر الحادي والعشرون

4 Primary  
2023  
FIRST TERM

# Contents

Part

1

\* Review on units and the Reader Khayameya summer story.

\* مراجعة عامة علي الوحدات والقصة المقررة.

Part

2

\* Monthly Assessments

\* تقييمات شهرية

Part

3

\* 10 Sample Tests

\* ١٠ نماذج اختبارات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات علي المنهج  
بالكامل طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣.





Part

1

# "That's enough"

It's enough behind the scenes.

مروا على السطح بالحدود

الحدود الحدية والحدود



# Review on unit 1



## General Revision on Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الهامة (الأساسية التي يجب ان يتقنها ويحفظها الطفل طبقاً لنواتج التعلم)

### Lesson 1

digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي	heart	قلب
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسي	chew	يمضغ
muscles	عضلات	swallow	يسلع
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	bones	عظام
stomach	معدة	blood	دم
special liquid	سائل خاص	attached to	مرتبط بـ / متصل بـ
energy	طاقة	lungs	الرئتين
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	oxygen	أكسجين
organ	عضو (في الجسم)	body	جسم

### Lesson 2

senses	الحواس	smell	حاسة الشم - يشم
taste	حاسة التذوق - يذوق	sweet	حلو المذاق
touch	حاسة اللمس - يلمس	information	معلومات
sight	حاسة الإبصار	savory	مالح
hearing	حاسة السمع	combination	خليط / مزيج
tongue	لسان	deaf	أصم
skin	جلد / بشرة	version	إصدار
sign language	لغة الإشارة	Braille	طريقة برايل (للمكفوفين)
communicate	يتصل / يتواصل	blind	كفيف / فاقد للبصر
fireworks	ألعاب نارية	code	شعرة / رمز

### Lesson 3

lounge	غرفة الجلوس	disappointed	جانب الأمل / مُحبط
cookery	فن الطبخ	left hemisphere	النشق الأيسر
brain	مخ	right hemisphere	النشق الأيمن
creative	مُبدع	memory	ذاكرة - ذاكرة
paper	ورق	choices	اختيارات
math	الرياضيات	main areas	مناطق رئيسية
science	العلوم	cerebrum	منطقة المخ
art	التربية الفنية	cerebellum	منطقة المخخ
solving problems	حل المشاكل	brain stem	السحاع (حذع المح)
tired	متعب	movement	حركه
thoughts	أفكار	balance	توازن

### Lesson 4

international	دولى	gold medal	الميدالية الذهبية
competition	مسابقة	silver medal	الميدالية الفضية
champion	بطل	bronze medal	الميدالية البرونزية
Paralympic Games	دورة الألعاب البارالمبية (لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة)	Parasports	الآلعاب الرياضية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
disabilities	ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة	race	سباق
Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية	national team	الفريق العومى
World Championship	بطولة العالم	dedication	تفانى / إخلاص
female	أنثى	hard work	عمل جاد
World Cup	كأس العالم	opportunities	فرص
swimmer	سباح	level	مستوى
runner	عداء - لاعب جرى	sitting volleyball	كره الطائرة على الكراسى المتحركة

## Part 1

### Lessons 5 & 6

exercise	تدرب / يدرّب	unhealthy habits	عادات غير صحية
healthy diet	نظام غذائي صحي	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
mental	عقلي	physical	جسمي
routine	نظام يومي	vitamins	فيتامينات
hard	صعب	minerals	معادن
idea	فكرة	tips	إرشادات
range	سلسلة / مجموعة	summarize	تلخيص / يوجز
develop	حسن / تحسّن	fats	دهون

### Important expressions and prepositions

#### Lesson 1

change the food into	تحوّل / يتحوّل	pumps this blood around our body	ضخ هذا الدم حول جسمنا
is made up of	يكون / يتألف من		
breathe in air	يستنشق الهواء	through the nose	خلال الأنف
attached to	مرتبط / متصل بـ	make us strong	جعلنا أقوياء

#### Lesson 2

think about	تفكر / يفكر	different to	مختلف عن
all the time	طوال الوقت	have difficulty	واجه صعوبة
take in a lot of information		find out	اكتشف
	يستوعب الكثير من المعلومات	(be) called	يسمى / تسمى
look at	ينظر إلى		

#### Lesson 3

at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	Let's go to...	
What's the matter ?	ما الأمر ؟	do drawing	
paint a picture		play tennis	
control the right/left side		on Mondays	

**Lesson 4**

take place = happen	يحدث	have fun = enjoy	يسمتع
take part in	يشارك في	from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
held in a different country	تقام في دولة مختلفة	take years of dedication	يستغرق سنوات من التفرغ
in the same place	في نفس المكان	do a sport	يمارس رياضة
athletes with disabilities	الرياضيون ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة	the 2016 Rio Paralympics	دوره الألعاب البارالمبية ريو ٢٠١٦
get to	يصل إلى	400-meter races	سباقات ٤٠٠ متر

**Lessons 5 & 6**

It is a good idea to	إنها فكرة جيدة أن	as well	أيضا
try to	يحاول أن	It is important to	إنه من المهم أن
do some exercises	يعوم ببعض التمارين الرياضية	have for lunch	يسول في وجبة لعداء
on hot days	في الأيام الحارة	play on the computer	يلعب على الحاسوب
easy for	سهل لـ	a mixture of	خليط من
It's easier if you find a sport	إنه من الأسهل لو تجد رياضة	sitting still for a long time	الجلوس بلا حراك لفترة طويلة
It's fun to	إنه من الممتع أن	choose a title for	يختار عنوان لـ
plan activities for	يخطط أنشطة لـ	learn new skills	يتعلم مهارات جديدة
play video games	يلعب ألعاب فيديو	make friends	يكون صداقات
It's good to be active	إنه من الجيد أن تصبح نشيطا	aged	ذو عمر / سن
		have fun	يسمتع

**Conjugation of verbs** **مصرفات الأفعال**

**Regular**

Present	Past
lift	lifted
invent	invented
practice	practiced
control	controlled
join	joined

**Irregular**

Present	Past
understand	understood
smell	smelt
feel	felt
speak	spoke
draw	drew
hold	held





## General Exercises on Vocabulary

★ Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

1

blood - lungs - heart - nose

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our (1) . . . . In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the (2) . . . . Our (3) . . . . pumps this blood around our body.

2

chew - stomach - mouth - liquid

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We (1) . . . . and swallow food, then it goes to our (2) . . . . In the stomach, a special (3) . . . . changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

3

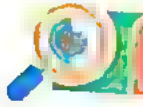
Muscles - skeleton - bones - move

Our skeleton is made up of all the (1) . . . . in our body. These make us strong and protect our organs. (2) . . . . are attached to our bones, and they lift and turn bones to make us (3) . . . .

4

hear - tongue - smell - information

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to (1) . . . . We smell with our nose, taste with our (2) . . . . , and we can feel with our skin. Think about where you are now. What can you see? What can you hear? Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of (3) . . . .



## General Revision on Language

### 1 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط



I / You / We /

They / اسم جمع

+ التصريف الأول للفعل

- ex. - I **know** what I want to do.  
- We **play** tennis after school.

He / She / It + (inf.) + or + (s) → معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s)  
/ (All) اسم مفرد مصدر الفعل (es) → أما التي تنتهي بـ (s, sh, ch, ss, x, o) يضاف لها (es)

- ex. - Adam **goes** to the park every week.  
- Karima always **does** drawing.

### Notes :

☆ الفعل المنتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (ies) مع حذف (y) :

- ex. - She **carries** a bag.

☆ الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف له (s) :

- ex. - He **plays** volleyball every Friday.

### Usage

☆ يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

- ex. - He **likes** reading books on holidays.  
- The sun **rises** in the east.

**2**  
**Negative statements**  
الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

He / She / It / **doesn't** + (Inf.)  
I / You / We / They / **don't** + مصدر الفعل

- ex. - I don't have sisters.  
- He doesn't play tennis.

**3**  
**Interrogative**  
صيغة  
الاستفهام

**A Yes / No Question** السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟

**Do** + I / you / we / they / **Does** + he / she / it / **inf.** + باقي السؤال ؟  
اسم جمع اسم مفرد مصدر الفعل

- ex. Do you like milk ?  
- Yes, I do.  
- No, I don't.

- ex. Does she like milk ?  
- Yes, she does.  
- No, she doesn't.

**B Wh - question** السؤال الذي يبدأ بكلمة استفهام.

**Question word** + **do** + you / we / they / **does** + he / she / it / **inf.** + مصدر الفعل ؟  
اسم جمع اسم مفرد

- ex. When do you get up every day ?  
- I get up at 6 o'clock.

## 2 Auxiliary verbs ٢ الافعال المساعدة

### 1 V. to be فعل "يكون"

He	→	is	I	→	am	We	→	are
She	→	isn't		→	'm not	You	→	aren't
It						They		

– She **is** hungry.

– They **are** tired.

### 2 V. to have فعل "يملك"

He	→	has	I	→	have
She	→	doesn't have	We	→	don't have
It			You		
			They		

– Tarek **has** two sisters.

– I **have** one brother.

### 3 V. to do فعل "يفعل"

He	→	does	I	→	do
She	→	doesn't	We	→	don't
It			You		
			They		

– Hana **does** art class.

– We **do** cookery class.



## General Exercises on Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

### 1 The present simple

1. I ..... to the club every day.  
a. going      b. goes      c. go      d. went
2. Noura ..... volleyball on Mondays.  
a. plays      b. played      c. playing      d. play
3. Our heart ..... the blood around our body.  
a. pump      b. pumping      c. pumped      d. pumps
4. I ..... in Cairo.  
a. to live      b. lives      c. live      d. living
5. Fatma ..... go to the museum.  
a. aren't      b. doesn't      c. don't      d. am not
6. He doesn't ..... Spanish.  
a. speak      b. speaks      c. spoke      d. speaking
7. Hamza ..... to the park every week.  
a. go      b. went      c. goes      d. going
8. An adult brain ..... about three pounds.  
a. weighs      b. weigh      c. to weigh      d. weighed
9. Your brain ..... to grow until you're about 18 years old.  
a. to continue      b. continued      c. continues      d. continue
10. Information ..... from your body to your brain at 240 - 420 kilometers per hour.  
a. traveled      b. travels      c. travel      d. traveling
11. Your brain ..... about 20% of the oxygen and blood in your body.  
a. uses      b. use      c. used      d. using



12. He ..... football every day.  
 a. practice      b. practiced      c. practices      d. to practice
13. Every minute about one liter of blood ..... through the brain.  
 a. flows      b. flow      c. flowing      d. to flow
14. While you are sleeping, your brain ..... through all the memories of the day.  
 a. going      b. go      c. goes      d. went

## 2 Auxiliary verbs

15. She ..... three sisters.  
 a. have      b. has      c. is      d. does
16. They ..... good friends.  
 a. are      b. do      c. has      d. did
17. We always ..... cookery class.  
 a. doing      b. does      c. to do      d. do
18. The brain ..... the most important organ of the body.  
 a. have      b. are      c. is      d. am
19. About 75% of the brain ..... made up of water.  
 a. am      b. is      c. are      d. does
20. The average brain ..... 12.000 to 60.000 thoughts a day !  
 a. is      b. does      c. have      d. has
21. What ..... we doing today, Mom ?  
 a. are      b. is      c. do      d. have
22. Today ..... Friday, so there's no school.  
 a. am      b. is      c. are      d. do

# Review on unit 2



## General Revision on Vocabulary

### Lesson 1

vertebrate	العقاريات	reptiles	الزواحف
mammals	الثدييات	amphibians	البرمائيات
backbone	العمود الفقري	cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	humans	البشر
survive	ينجو	gills	خياشيم
fins	زعانف	land	الأرض / اليابسة
hair	شعر	wing	جناح
beak	منقار	moist	رطب
fur	فراء	wetlands	أراضي رطبة
smooth	ناعم	seeds	بذور

### Lesson 2

enormous	ضخم	blue whale	الحوت الأزرق
tiny	ضئيل - قليل الحجم	natural world	العالم الطبيعي
Earth	كوكب الأرض	whale shark	فرش الحوت
chameleon	حرباء	leopard	فهد
scientist	عالم	strong	قوي
ostrich	نعامة	bee hummingbird	طائر النحلة الطنان

### Lesson 3

invertebrates	اللافقاريات	protection	حماية
snail	الحلزون	squid	حبار السمك
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	octopus	أخطبوط
crab	كابوريا	dragonfly	يعسوب
hard shell	صدفة صلبة	insects	حشرات
soft	ناعم	grasshoppers	جراد
arachnid	فصيلة العناكب	hide	يختبئ

#### Lesson 4

primary colors	الألوان الأساسية	secondary colors	ألوان ثانوية
red	لون أحمر	purple	بنفسج
yellow	لون أصفر	green	لون أخضر
blue	لون أزرق	orange	لون برتقالي

#### Lesson 5

water lily	النبات المائي	disadvantages	عيوب
advantages	مميزات	on one hand	من ناحية
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	stem	ساق نبات
soil	ترية زراعته	bottom	قاع
flat leaf	ورقه شجر مسطحة	roots	حدود
surface	سطح	pretty	جميل
area	مساحة / منطقة	in addition	بالإضافة

### Important expressions and prepositions

#### Lesson 1

have hair/fur on their bodies	لديهم شعر / فراء على أجسامهم	feed their babies with milk	نطعم صغارها اللبن
animals with a backbone	حيوانات لديها عمود فقري	take in oxygen through their skin	يتمص / تستنشق الأكسجين عبر جلدها
give birth to	تلد (تضع مولود)	use fins to move	يستخدم الزعانف لتحرك
keep warm	يحتفظ دافئ	lay eggs	تضع بيض
come onto land	يصعد على اليابسة	live on land	تعيش على الأرض

#### Lesson 2

It can be up to 30 meters long.	قد يصل طوله إلى ٣٠ متر	at about 12 meters long	بطول ١٢ متر تقريباً
at just 30 mm long	بطول ٣٠ ملم فقط		

## Lesson 3

write about invertebrates	يكتب عن اللافقاريات	have soft bodies	لها أحسام لينة
more than 90%	أكثر من ٩٠٪	move slowly	يتحرك ببطء
find out information	يكتشف معلومات	Well done !	أحسنت !
good idea	فكرة جيدة	Can I have my cell phone back now, please ?	هل يمكن استعادة تليفوني المحمول الآن من فضلك ؟
have a hard shell	لها قوقعة صلبة		

## Lesson 4

an underwater scene	منظر تحت المياه	come in many different colors	يوجد منها ألوان مختلفة
all shades in between	كل درجات اللون التي بينهم	make green darker	يجعل اللون الأخضر داكن أكثر
brightly colored	ملونة بألوان زاهية / لامعة	hide from	يختبئ من
can be a warning	قد يكون تحذيرًا		

## Lessons 5 &amp; 6

the surface of the water	سطح المياه	make it difficult for	يجعلها / يجعل الأمر صعبا علي
reaches down to	يصل لأسفل إلى	look pretty	يبدو جميلاً
the bottom of the lake	قاع البحيرة	brightly colored	ذو ألوان زاهية

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular

Present	Past
survive ينجو - يبقى حيًا	survived
discover يكتشف	discovered
hunt يصطاد	hunted
attract يجذب	attracted
reproduce ينتج - يتكاثر	reproduced
float يطفو	floated

## Irregular

Present	Past
lay يبض	laid
spend يقضي	spent
find out يكتشف	found out
hide يختبئ	hid
spread ينتشر	spread
make يصنع - يجعل	made



## General Exercises on Vocabulary

★ Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

1

feed - lay - land - warm

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded and they (1) ..... their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't (2) ..... eggs. Most mammals live on (3) ....., but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

2

lands - eggs - habitats - scales

Fish are vertebrates. They live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay (1) ..... They also have (2) ..... and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water (3) .....; saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

3

long - mammal - land - sea

In the natural world, there are some enormous animals, and some tiny ones! The biggest animal on (1) ..... is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant. The biggest animal in the world is also a (2) ....., but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters (3) ..... In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!





## General Revision on Language

### 1 Comparative : (شخصين / شئين)

عند المقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الآخر في نفس الصفة القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد نستخدم:

(short adj. + er) + than

☆ يضاف للصفات القصيرة (er) وبعدها (than):

- old → older

- fast → faster

☆ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتهية بحرف (ساكن) مسبوق بحرف (متحرك) يضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم تضاف (er):

- big → bigger

- hot → hotter

☆ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتهية بحرف (y) تحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (-er):

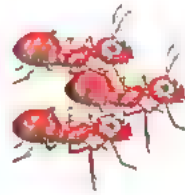
- happy → happier

- heavy → heavier

☆ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتهية بحرف (e) نضيف (-r) فقط للصفة.

- nice → nicer

Ants are stronger than humans.



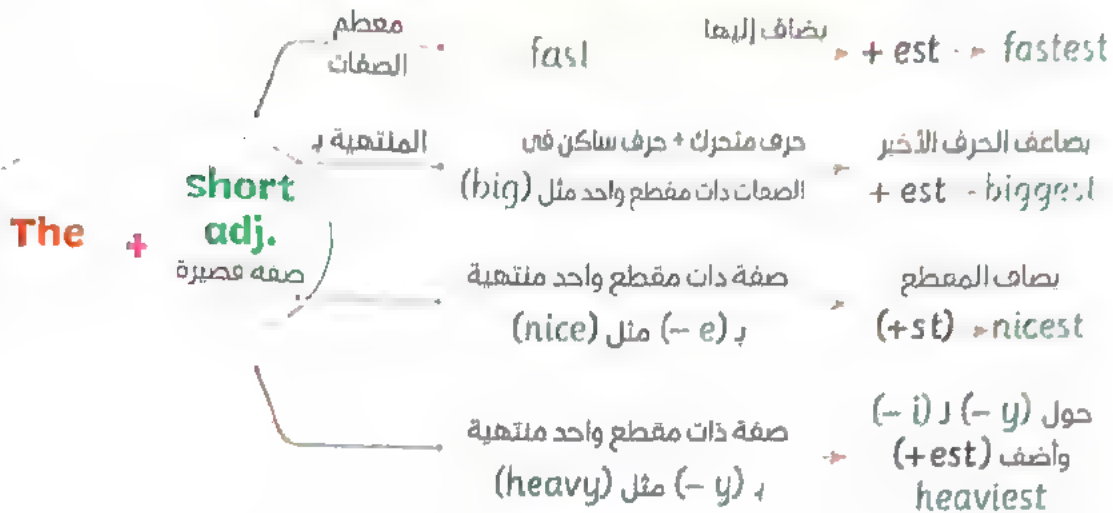
The horse is bigger than the chameleon.



## 2 Superlative (المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة في صفة)

عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (واحد ومجموعة في صفة ذات مقطع واحد) ضع the قبل الصفة ونضيف للصفة (est):

(the + short adj. + est) صفة قصيرة



The African elephant is **the biggest** animal on land.



The **smallest** bird is the bee hummingbird.



The **biggest** bird in the world can't fly.

## 3 Adverbs of manner (ظروف الحال) (الكيفية)

★ الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده و يتكون من إضافة (يا) إلى الصفة المنتظمة. والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

**adjective** الصفة  
Doctors help **sick** people.  
**Rodina** is happy.

الصفة تصف الاسم و تأتي قبله أو بعد (verb to be)

**adverb** الظرف  
Snails move **slowly**.  
الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده.

## Formation

لتكوين الظرف نضيف (ly) للصفة المنتظمة.

slow → slowly      quick → quickly

أما الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (y -) تستبدل بـ (i) و نضيف (ly).

happy → happily      noisy → noisily      easy → easily

هناك صفات غير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي لا يضاف إليها (ly-) عند تحويلها إلى ظرف.

good → well

هناك صفات تبقى كما هي عند تحويلها إلى ظرف (حال).

fast → fast      hard → hard      right → right      late → late

## Usage

يستخدم الظرف بعد الفعل ليصفه.

- Some spiders can hide very well.

يستخدم الظرف لوصف حدث / فعل (الطريقة التي يؤدي بها شخص ما شيئاً ما).

- Some invertebrates can swim very slowly.

### Regular المنتظم

Adjective	Adverb
bad سيء	badly بطريقة سيئة
quiet هادئ	quietly بهدوء
loud عالٍ	loudly بصوت عالٍ
quick سريع	quickly بسرعة
slow بطيء	slowly ببطء
happy سعيد	happily بسعادة
sad حزين	sadly بحزن
soft ناعم / لين / هادئ	softly بلين / بهدوء

### Irregular غير المنتظم

Adjective	Adverb
good جيد	well جيدًا
fast سريع	fast بسرعة
hard صعب	hard بصعوبة
right صحيح	right بطريقة صحيحة
wrong خطأ	wrongly بطريقة خاطئة
late متاخر	late متأخرًا

## General Exercises on Comparison

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

### 1 Comparative adjectives

1. The ostrich can run \_\_\_\_\_ than the leopards.  
a. faster      b. fast      c. fastest      d. the fastest
2. The blue whale is bigger \_\_\_\_\_ the whale shark.  
a. that      b. than      c. then      d. the
3. The whale shark is \_\_\_\_\_ than the blue whale.  
a. small      b. the smallest      c. smaller      d. smallest
4. The African elephant is \_\_\_\_\_ than the Asian one.  
a. the biggest      b. big      c. biggest      d. bigger
5. Ants are much \_\_\_\_\_ than humans.  
a. strong      b. stronger      c. strongest      d. the strong

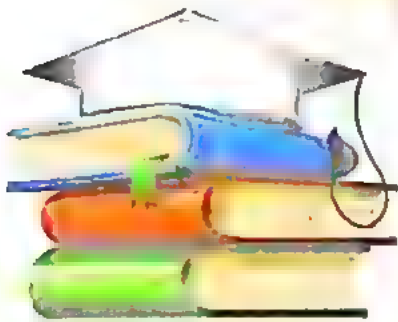
### 2 Superlative adjectives

6. Chameleon is the \_\_\_\_\_ reptile in the world.  
a. smallest      b. small      c. smaller      d. smaller than
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ bird is the ostrich.  
a. big      b. bigger      c. biggest      d. bigger than
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ bird is the bee hummingbird.  
a. smaller than      b. smallest  
c. small      d. smaller
9. The frog is \_\_\_\_\_ smallest vertebrate.  
a. than      b. there      c. then      d. the
10. The blue whale is the \_\_\_\_\_ animal in the world.  
a. biggest      b. bigger than      c. big      d. bigger
11. \_\_\_\_\_ biggest animal on land is a mammal; the African elephant.  
a. The      b. There      c. Those      d. These

### 3 Adverb of manner

12. Insects live in rainforests because they can find food .  
 a. easy      b. easily      c. easier      d. easiest
13. Some spiders can hide very .....  
 a. well      b. wrong      c. good      d. slow
14. Salma walks ..... She is tired.  
 a. slow      b. slowly      c. quick      d. quickly
15. Roqaya is ..... She has a new dress.  
 a. happy      b. happily      c. sad      d. sadly
16. He calls me .....  
 a. sad      b. right      c. loud      d. loudly
17. Snails move very .....  
 a. slow      b. slowly      c. slower      d. slowest

احرص على اقتناء



EL-MONASSER كتاب

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للسف 4 الابتدائي

Connect Plus

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



# Review on unit 3



## General Revision on Vocabulary

### Lesson 1

community	مجتمع	sports club	نادي رياضي
neighborhood	حي (مكان الإقامة)	citizenship	المواطنة
neighbors	جيران	work hard	يعمل بجد
mixture	مزيج (خليط)	behave	يسصرف
activities	أنشطة	kind	عطوف / طيب
society	مجتمع	fair way	طريقة عادلة
ideas	أفكار	civilization	حضارة
village	قرية	street	شارع
polite	معتدب	weather	الطقس
helpful	متعاون - مفيد	games	ألعاب
bike	دراجة	together	معًا - سوياً

### Lesson 2

history	تاريخ	Lower Egypt	الوجه البحري
ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلي
the Nile	نهر النيل	scribes	الكتبة
tombs	مقابر	hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية
dynasties	سلالات	papyrus reeds	أعواد البردي
interesting	ممتع / شيق	sail	بحر
separate	مفصل	powerful	قوي
area	منطقة / مساحة	Old Kingdom	مملكة قديمة
desert	صحراء	Middle Kingdom	مملكة وسطى
pharaoh	فرعون	New Kingdom	مملكة حديثة
unite	يوجد	Ptolemy dynasty	سلالة البطالمة
symbols	رموز	join	يصم / يتصل

## Lesson 3

Cairo	القاهرة	New Valley	الوادي الجديد
Giza	الجيزة	Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Alexandria	الإسكندرية	Damietta	دمياط
Gharbia	الغربية	Kafr El Sheikh	كفر الشيخ
map	خريطة	natural	طبيعي
large cities	مدن كبرى	place	مكان / موقع
capital	عاصمة	popular	محبوب / مشهور
the countryside	الريف	water sports	رياضات مائية
finish	ينهى	the High Dam	السد العالي
governorate	محافظة	features	سمات / ملامح

## Lesson 4

ney	ناي	drum	طبل
qanun	قانون	oboe	أوبوا (آلة موسيقية تشبه المزمار)
rebaba	ربابة	violin	آلة الكمان
oud	عود	key	أساسي / جوهري
traditional	تقليدي	type	نوع
folk music	موسيقى شعبية	string instrument	آلة موسيقية وترية
style	أسلوب	wind instrument	آلة نفخ
musician	موسيقيار - موسيقي	Nubian music	موسيقى نوبية
Saidi music	موسيقى صعيدى	clapping	التصفيق
drumming	الطبل	singing	اغناء
jazz	موسيقى الجاز	Modern music	موسيقى حديثة
culture	ثقافة	Bedouin music	موسيقى بدوية

## Lesson 5

folk dancing	الرقص الشعبي	costumes	أزياء خاصة
Nubian dancing	الرقص النوبي	simsimeya	آلة السمسميه
Raqs Assaya	الرقص بالعصا	Tahtib	التحطيب
colorful	ملون	patterns	أنماط
rhythm	قفية	fighting	قتال
famous	مشهور	wear	يرتدى
dancer	راقص	plain	سادة
stick	عصا	bright-colored	ذات ألوان زاهية
international	عالمي	Bedouin	بدوئي
carefully	بعناية	description	وصف

## Lesson 6

location	موقع	culture	ثقافة
geography	الجغرافيا	exhibition	معرض
history	التاريخ	tourist guide	مرشد / دليل سياحي
attractions	عناصر جذب	section	جزء - فقرة
entertainment	تسلية	brochure	كتيب / نشرة
mountain	جبل	traditional music	موسيقى تقليدية
market	سوق	heading	عنوان رئيسي
port	ميناء	Montazah Palace	قصر المنتزه
illustrate	يوضح / يبين	coastline	الخط الساحلي
Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط	environment	البيئة

## Important expressions and prepositions

### Lesson 1

in the same area	في نفس المنطقة	act in a way ...	يتصرف بطريقة ...
more than	أكثر من	good for	جيد بالنسبة لـ
for me	بالنسبة لي	close to	بالقرب من
part of	جزء من	look after	يرعى
What is special about ... ?	ما المميز عن ... ؟	from different parts of	من أجزاء مختلفة من

### Lesson 2

At first	في البداية	write down	يدون
the Pyramid of Djoser	الهرم المدرج للملك زوسر	work for the ruling dynasties	يعمل لدى السلالات المالكة
in about	في حوالي	write on stone	ينقش على الحجر
as far as	بقدر ما	made from	مصنوع من
rule for many years	يحكم لعدة سنوات	(be) died in ...	توفي في ..
flow through	يمر / يتدفق من خلال	live near the Nile	يعيش بالقرب من النيل
know so much about	يعرف الكثير عن	become powerful	يصبح ذو نفوذ/سلطة
at the time	في عصر/وقت	flow out to sea	تساب/تتدفق إلى مياه البحر

### Lesson 3

look at	ينظر إلى	find places on the map	يجد أماكن على الخريطة
next to the sea	بجانب / بجوار البحر	lots of = a lot of	الكثير من
go in = enter	يدخل		
go out	يخرج		

### Lesson 4

talk about	يتحدث عن	mixed with	مختلطا مع
such as	مثل	put ..... into .....	يضع بداخل
farther south	أقصى الجنوب	from other cultures	من ثقافات أخرى
the home of...	موطن لـ...		

### Lesson 5

It is linked to ....	إنه مرتبط بـ	look like	يشبه
in special patterns	في أنماط خاصة		

### Lesson 6

in the past	في الماضي	in the north of	في شمال
play traditional music on	يعزف موسيقى تقليدية على	make paper from	يصنع ورق من

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular

Present	Past
believe يؤمن/يصدق	believed
share يشارك	shared
act يؤدي/يفعل	acted
include يشمل/يتضمن	included
start يبدأ	started
flow يتدفق	flowed
rule يحكم	ruled
control يتحكم	controlled
sail يبحر	sailed
join ينضم/يتصل	joined
die يموت	died
step يخطو	stepped
perform يؤدي عرض	performed
link يربط	linked
happen يحدث	happened

### Irregular

Present	Past
think يعتقد/يفكر	thought
become يصبح	became
build يبني	built
be يكون	was/were
wear يرتدي	wore
make يصنع	made





## General Exercises on Vocabulary

★ Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1

neighborhood - community - club - mixture

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your (1) . . . . . A community is a (2) . . . . . of people, places, activities, and ideas. My (3) . . . . . includes my family, my friends, and my school.

2

museums - Scribes - hieroglyphs - dynasties

Egyptians in ancient Egypt used scribes to write down everything that happened. (1) . . . . . were very important people. They worked for the ruling (2) . . . . . They wrote in (3) . . . . . , which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas.

3

port - place - capital - Governorate

I'm Hamza. I live in the Alexandria (1) . . . . . It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of its (2) . . . . . The city of Alexandria used to be the (3) . . . . . city of Egypt.

4

violins - Saidi - oboe - drum

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. There are different styles from different parts of the country. Folk music from Upper Egypt play (1) . . . . . music. This type of music uses string instruments such as (2) . . . . . , and wind instrument such as the (3) . . . . . . Singing and drumming is also a key part of this music.



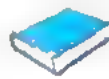
## General Revision on Language

### 1 Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الإشارة

#### Singular المفرد

تستخدم بمعنى هذا / هذه (للإشارة للمفرد القريب)	→	This	is	a red T-shirt.
تستخدم بمعنى ذلك / تلك (للإشارة للمفرد البعيد)	→	That		a camera.

ex. - This is a book.



- That is a book.



#### Plural الجمع

تستخدم بمعنى هؤلاء (للإشارة للجمع القريب)	→	These	are	nice sunglasses.
تستخدم بمعنى أولئك (للإشارة للجمع البعيد)	→	Those		brown jackets.

ex. - These are books.



- Those are books.

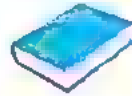


### 2 Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل		Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية	
تستخدم قبل الفعل		تستخدم قبل الاسم المملوك	تستخدم بدلًا من صفات الملكية والمملوك معًا وبنائي بعدها اسم	
I	أنا	my ملكي	mine ملكي	
You	أنت/أنتم/أنتن	your ملكك/ملككم	yours ملكك/ملككم	
He	هو	his ملكه	his ملكه	
She	هي	her ملكها	hers ملكها	
We	نحن	our ملكنا	ours ملكنا	
They	هم	their ملكهم	theirs ملكهم	
It	هو/هي لغير العاقل	its ملكه/ملكها (لغير العاقل)	—	—

☆ تستخدم ضمائر الملكية للتعبير عن ملكية شخص أو أشخاص لشئ معين.

ex. - This book is mine.



هذا الكتاب ملكي.

- This umbrella is hers.



هذه الشمسية ملكها.

☆ ضمائر الملكية غالبًا ما تأتي في نهاية الجملة.

ex. That ice cream is mine! It isn't yours.

هذا الآيس كريم ملكي! إنه ليس ملكك.



☆ لا نستخدم اسم (noun) بعد ضمائر الملكية.

ex. - This is my bag. It's mine.



هذه حقيبتي، إنها ملكي.

- That is his shirt. It's his.



ذلك قميصه، إنه ملكه.

### 3 The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

#### A Verb to (Be) in the Past Simple Tense

الفعل "يكون" في زمن الماضي البسيط

1

Affirmative statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

I / He / she / It + اسم مفرد was

They / you / we / اسم جمع were

Rami was at the Pyramids yesterday.

She was at home two hours ago.

They were at the zoo last week.



2

## Negative statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was not = wasn't

They / you / we / اسم جمع + were not = weren't

They weren't at the hospital.

She wasn't at home.



وتستخدم هذه الكلمات "... ago / yesterday / last ..." للدلالة على زمن الماضي البسيط.

## B The Past Simple Tense with "Regular verbs"

زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة.

### Usage

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وإنتهى في الماضي.

Subject + الفاعل + Inf. مصدر الفعل + (ed / d / ied)

1

## Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

- They listened to stories.



- My mother cooked breakfast.



Most verbs

Add - ed

watch → watched

look → looked

• معظم الأفعال المنتظمة  
يضاف إليها (ed).

Verbs that end in  
vowel + consonantDouble  
consonant + ed

drop → dropped

• الأفعال التي تنتهي بحرف  
ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك  
واحد يضاعف الحرف الساكن  
التأخير ثم يضاف إلى الفعل (ed).

Verbs that  
end in e

Add - d

bake → baked

close → closed

• الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (e)  
يضاف إليها (d) فقط.

Verbs that end in  
consonant + yChange (y) to (i)  
and add - ed

study → studied

• الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (y) قبلها  
حرف ساكن نحذف الـ (y)  
ويضاف إلى الفعل (ied).

Verbs that end in  
vowel + y

Add - ed

play → played

• الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (y) قبلها  
حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u)  
يضاف إليها (ed).

## 🕒 The Past Simple Tense with "Irregular verbs"

زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة.

### Formation

☆ يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل غير المنتظم (يحفظ كما هو).

Meaning	Present	Past	Meaning	Present	Past
يشرب	drink →	drank	يفوز	win →	won
يرى	see →	saw	يشترى	buy →	bought
يأكل	eat →	ate	يذهب	go →	went
يملك/ يتناول	have →	had	يأخذ	take →	took



تكملة الجملة + التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل Subject



They saw a show.

التصريف الثاني للفعل



She look pictures.

التصريف الثاني للفعل

2

Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

I / He / She / It + **did not** + مصدر الفعل (inf.)  
/ They / you / we + **(didn't)**

- ex. - She didn't watch the sunrise.  
- She didn't clean the tent.  
- She didn't see the show.

3

Interrogative

صيغة  
الاستفهام

Did I / he / she / it / you / we / they + مصدر الفعل (inf.) + باقي السؤال ?

Short answers الإجابات المختصرة

Yes, + I / he / she / it / did. عند الإثبات  
No, + you / we / they + didn't. عند النفي

ex. - Did you listen to stories ?

- Yes, I did.

- Did she clean the tent ?

- No, she didn't.

★ لاحظ أن عند السؤال بـ "هل ... ؟" باستخدام (Did) يكون الفعل في المصدر (inf.).

**Key words** من الكلمات الدالة على زمن الماضي البسيط

in the past في الماضي  
(فترة زمنية) + ago منذ  
yesterday أمس

last

→ year السنة الماضية  
→ month الشهر الماضي  
→ week الأسبوع الماضي  
→ Tuesday الثلاثاء الماضي



## General Exercises on Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

### 1 Demonstrative Pronouns

1. .... bottle which is over there is empty.  
a. Those                      b. It                      c. That                      d. These
2. Those kids ..... playing in the garden.  
a. do                      b. is                      c. are                      d. have
3. .... are my pencils.  
a. This                      b. That                      c. The                      d. These
4. My father bought ..... toys for me.  
a. that                      b. those                      c. this                      d. then
5. .... book is expensive.  
a. This                      b. These                      c. It                      d. Those
6. .... cat is small.  
a. There                      b. These                      c. Those                      d. That

### 2 Possessive Pronouns

7. It's your house. It's .....  
a. ours                      b. our                      c. your                      d. yours
8. This is Aliaa's bag. It is .....  
a. her                      b. his                      c. hers                      d. theirs
9. These shoes belong to Mazen. They are .....  
a. his                      b. hers                      c. yours                      d. mine
10. This is my car. It's .....  
a. his                      b. yours                      c. I                      d. mine
11. This is Leen's bag. It's .....  
a. hers                      b. theirs                      c. ours                      d. her

12. These are Adam's shoes. They're .....  
a. theirs                      b. hers                      c. his                      d. he
13. It's Fares and Mustafa's neighborhood. It's .....  
a. yours                      b. their                      c. hers                      d. theirs
14. They're Aya's running shoes. They're .....  
a. their                      b. theirs                      c. her                      d. hers
15. This is my book. It's .....  
a. I                      b. mine                      c. yours                      d. hers
16. This is our sports club. It's .....  
a. ours                      b. yours                      c. our                      d. your
17. Those are Reem's clothes. They're .....  
a. her                      b. hers                      c. she                      d. his

### 3 Past Simple Tense

18. Not everyone in ancient Egypt .. to read and write.  
a. learns                      b. learned                      c. learn                      d. learning
19. Scribes ... with reed brushes and ink in the past.  
a. writing                      b. writes                      c. write                      d. wrote
20. ... she play the piano ? - Yes, she did.  
a. Has                      b. Does                      c. Did                      d. Do
21. She ..... to the zoo yesterday.  
a. go                      b. went                      c. goes                      d. going
22. They ..... hieroglyphs and hieratic scripts in the past.  
a. studied                      b. study                      c. studies                      d. to study
23. People ..... to live near the Nile in 7000 BCE.  
a. starting                      b. started                      c. start                      d. starts
24. He ..... at school yesterday.  
a. is                      b. was                      c. did                      d. were
25. You ..... happy yesterday.  
a. were                      b. was                      c. is                      d. are

# Review on unit 4



## General Revision on Vocabulary

### Lesson 1

city	مدينة كبيرة	pedestrian	مشاة
village	قرية	congestion	ازدحام
densely populated	دائ كثافة سكانية عالية	isolated	مستعز
sparsely populated	دائ كثافة سكانية منخفضة	sparse	مقل / قليل
rural	قروي / ريفي	dense	كثف / كثير
urban	حضرى / مدنى	inhabitants	سكان
population	عدد السكان	close	قرب

### Lesson 2

goose	أورة	woman	سدة
buffalo	حاموسة	child	طفل
sheep	حروف	person	شخص
man	رجل	coal	فحم
onion	بصلة	aluminium	ومسوم
tomato	ثمره طماطم	copper	نحاس
potato	ثمره بطاطس	lucky	مخطط
date	تمرة	interview	مقابلة رسمية
natural resources	المصادر الطبيعية	river	نهر
street	شارع	develop	توسع - يطور

### Lesson 3

warp	خطوط	wool	صوف
yarn	حيط / عزل	carpet	سجادة
spin	يعزل / ينسج	dye	صبغة / يصع
weave	ينسج	artisans	حرفيون

craft	حرفه / مهارة	spun cotton	القطن المسجوح
synthetic	صناعي - مصطنع	machine	ماكينة / آلة
guide	يرشد / مرشد	loom	نول (اسم آلة)
dark colors	ألوان داكنة	geometric patterns	أنماط هندسية
skill	مهارة	traditional	تقليدي
workshop	ورشة عمل	structure	تركيب - أساس

#### Lesson 4

goslings	صغار الأوز	sack	كيس
potter	صانع الخزف - فخاري	loaf	رغيف عيش
pots	أواني	in a group of	في مجموعة مكونة من
work on a project	ينفذ مشروع	movie	فيلم
reading	قراءة	speaking	تحدث
left	ترك - تبقى	produce	نتج

#### Lesson 5

port	ميناء	transportation	وسائل المواصلات (النقل)
neighborhood	حي	location	موقع
industry	صناعة	services	خدمات
apartment	شقة	either	أيضا
model	نموذج	hope	يأمل - يتمنى
conclusion	خاتمة	introduction	مقدمة
wherever	أيما - في أي مكان	several	عديد

#### Lesson 6

smart	ذكي	spaces	مساحات
growth	نمو	enjoy	يستمتع
planners	مخططين	government offices	مكاتب حكومية
plan	يخطط - خطة	public transportation	المواصلات العامة



## Important expressions and prepositions

### Lesson 1

tell about	يخبر عن	be very careful	كن حذر جدًا
a very busy place	مكان مزدحم جدًا	close to	قريب من

### Lesson 2

on the Nile	على شاطئ النيل	half of	منتصف
of course	بالطبع	used to + (inf.)	اعتاد أن
have in common	لديهم نقاط مشتركة	grown up	بالغ - راشد

### Lesson 3

make by hand	يصنع يدويًا	pick out	يختار / يُلَقِّط
the same	مطابق - مماثل	make it into	يصنعوا منه / يحولوا إلى

### Lesson 5

One of my favorite .....	واحد من ..... المفضلة لدى	as you might know	كما قد نعلم
--------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------	-------------

## Conjugation of Verbs

### Regular

Present	Past
develop يتوسع - يطور	developed
decorate يزين	decorated
dry يجفف	dried
boil يغلي	boiled
wonder يتساءل	wondered

### Irregular

Present	Past
grow يزرع	grew
have / has يملك	had
learn يتعلم	learnt
take يأخذ	took
make يصنع	made
sell يبيع	sold



## General Exercises on Vocabulary

★ Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1

inhabitants - isolated - metropolitan - congestion

I live in Greater Cairo. It's a (1) area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million (2), so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also (3). If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

2

buffaloes - village - tomatoes - donkey

My name's Amr. I live in a small (1) on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows (2), potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two (3). There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now.

3

die - learned - wool - dye

My grandma and I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional. So, now I guess you're wondering how they (1) the wool. Well, I (2) that different plants and roots are first grown in a rural village. Then, they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the (3).

4

wherever - favorite - however - services

I like my city. We have a lot of (1). We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go (2) we want. One of my (3) places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family.



## General Revision on Language

### 1 Plural صيغة الجمع

#### 1 Regular plural

أمثلة - صيغة الجمع

Noun الاسم	Plural الجمع	Examples أمثلة
Most nouns معظم الأسماء	يضاف لها (s)	girl → girls cat → cats
Nouns end in (z / ss / x / o / sh / cn)	يضاف لها (es)	fox → foxes tomato → tomatoes
Nouns end in (vowel + o)	هناك أسماء تنتهي بحرف (o) قبله حرف متحرك ويضاف لها (s)	zoo → zoos radio → radios
Nouns end in (consonant + y)	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (y) قبله ساكن، تحذف (y) ويضاف (ies)	city → cities baby → babies family → families
Nouns end in - f	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (f) يضاف لها (ves) وتحذف (f)	shelf → shelves scarf → scarves

#### 2 Irregular plural

الجمع الغير منتظم

★ We don't add -s or -es but we keep them as they are.

- لا نضيف لها (s أو es) ولكنها تحفظ كما هي.

Word	Plural	Word	Plural
a woman	women	a tooth	teeth
a goose	geese	a foot	feet
a man	men	an ox	oxen
a child	children	a mouse	mice
a fish	fish	a person	people
a sheep	sheep		

## 2 The conjunctions الروابط

### 1 After

بعد

ex. - After I get up, I wash my face.

### 2 Before

قبل

ex. - They wash the wool before they can use it.

### 3 So that

لكي

الغرض أو السبب + so that

ex. - Salma studies hard so that she can get high marks.

### 4 Although

على الرغم من

- لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

ex. - Although he is strong, he can't lift the box.

### 5 Even though

رغم أن

- لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

ex. - I think the bright colors are the most beautiful ones even though some people prefer dark colors.

### 6 While

بينما / أثناء

- لربط حدثان في نفس الوقت.

ex. - The guide explained how the artisans make the carpets while we watched them weave.

### 7 Every time

كل مرة

ex. - Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make a carpet.

### 8 As soon as

بمجرد أن

- لربط فكرتين أو حدثين متتاليين.

ex. - As soon as Ahmed returned home, he had his lunch.



## General Exercises on Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

### ① Plural )

1. Sharks have sharp .  
a. tooth                      b. teeth                      c. tail                      d. fin
2. Many ..... like fries.  
a. people                      b. child                      c. adult                      d. person
3. My mother has four .....  
a. daughter                      b. children                      c. child                      d. baby
4. My ..... hurt.  
a. feet                      b. foot                      c. tooth                      d. eye
5. Cats like to catch .....  
a. mice                      b. goose                      c. duck                      d. mouth
6. Three ..... are waiting in line.  
a. woman                      b. women                      c. man                      d. child
7. The farmers have twelve .....  
a. cow                      b. goat                      c. sheep                      d. a sheep

### ② The conjunctions )

8. .... the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.  
a. Before                      b. After                      c. As soon as                      d. So that
9. Malak studies hard ..... she can get high marks.  
a. even though                      b. so that                      c. every time                      d. while
10. .... the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp.  
a. As soon as                      b. Before                      c. While                      d. After
11. I write my lesson ..... the teacher is talking.  
a. so that                      b. after                      c. before                      d. while
12. .... I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make a carpet.  
a. So                      b. But                      c. Even though                      d. Every time



13. I have lunch I get home from school.  
 a. as soon as b. while c. so d. so that
14. I understand what I learned I do my homework.  
 before while so that even though
15. They have to clean, wash and dry the wool they can use it.  
 a. even though b. so c. before d. after
16. She was studying she was sick.  
 while although every time before
17. I went home, I took a shower.  
 a. Before b. So that c. While d. As soon as

نحرص على أفضل

EL-MONASSER كتاب

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للسف 4 الابتدائي

Connect Plus

الفصل الدراسي الثاني



امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

# Review on unit 5



## General Revision on Vocabulary

### Lesson 1

natural resources	مصادر طبيعية	petroleum	بنترول
wood	خشب	water	مياه
soil	تربة زراعية	plastic	بلاستيك
stone	حجر	renewable	متجدد
metal	معادن	non-renewable	غير متجدد
mineral	صلب / معدن	door handle	مقبض الباب
material	مادة خام	desk	مكتب
purpose	غرض	silver	فضة
frame	إطار	common	شائع
bridge	كوبري	window	شباك
forest	غابة	gold	ذهب

### Lesson 2

crude oil well	بئر بنترول خام	create	يولد / ينتج
fossil	حفرة	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
natural gas	غاز طبيعي	climate change	تغير المناخ
coal	فحم	greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحراري
fuel	وقود	fossil fuel	الوقود الحفري
energy	طاقة	heat	حرارة
geologist	عالم جيولوجي	power	طاقة
dinosaur	ديناصور	relax	يسترخي
dishes	أطباق	cry	يبكي - يصرخ
catch	يلحق	kiss	يقبل

### Lesson 3

wave power	طاقة الأمواج	solar power	لحافه الشمسيه
wind power	طاقة الرياح	tidal power	قوة المد والجزر
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	electrical energy	طاقة كهربائية
mechanical energy	طاقة ميكانيكية	wind	رياح
dusty	ملئى بالغبار	trip	رحلة
solar farms	مزارع الطاقة الشمسية	space	مساحة
electricity	كهرباء	workers	عمال
oil	بنترول - زيت	soon	لاحقاً / قريباً
gas	غاز	collect	يجمع
sunny	مشمس	perfect	مثالى
sunshine	أشعة الشمس	rocks	صخور

### Lesson 4

experience	خبرة	promotion	ترقية
talent	موهبة	train	يدرب
skill	مهاراة	interview	مقابلة شخصية
science	علوم	training	التدريب
project	مشروع	practice	الممارسة
nervous	عصبى	knowledge	المعرفة
both	كلاهما	engineer	مهندس
twins	توأم	computer programming	برمجة الحاسب الآلى
ability	القدرة	Ras Ghareb	رأس غارب (مدينة ساحلية)
wind turbine	توربينات رياح	How big ... ?	كم حجم ... ؟
presentation	عرض / تقديم	career	مهنة

### Lesson 5

responsible	مسئول	letter	خطاب
collaborate	يتعاون	formal	رسمى
solve problems	يحل المشكلات	sender	المرسل
communicate	يتواصل	introduction	مقدمة

## Part 1

date	تاريخ	signature	إمضاء / توقيع
application	تطبيق / طلب	reliable	جدير بالثقة
advertisement	إعلان	brainstorm	عصف ذهني
online	عبر الإنترنت	purpose	غرض
sincerely	بخلاص	hiring engineers	توظيف مهندسين
member	عضو	creative	مبدع
success	نجاح	teamwork	فريق عمل
point	نقطة	problem solver	حلل المشكلة
sensitive	حساس	upset	منزعج
polite	مehذب	flexible	مرن

## Important expressions and prepositions

### Lesson 1

for different purposes	لأغراض مختلفة	part of	جزء من
look around	يتجول	at lunch	في وجبة الغداء
made of	مصنوع من (المادة الخام لا تتغير بعد التصنيع)	made from	مصنوع من (المادة الخام تتغير بعد التصنيع)
That's right !	هذا صحيح !	made up of	يتألف من / يتكون من
come from	يأتي من	run out	ينفذ / يستهلك / ينتهي

### Lesson 2

turn into	يتحول إلى	make dinner	يعد وجبة العشاء
wake up for	يستيقظ لأجل	watch a movie	شاهد فيلم
eat breakfast	يتناول وجبة الإفطار	go to bed	يذهب إلى الفراش
brush teeth	ينظف الأسنان بالفرشاة	goodnight	تصبح على خير
go to school	يذهب إلى المدرسة	on Fridays	في أيام الجمعة
catch the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس	drink a lot of water	يشرب الكثير من الماء
go home	يذهب للمنزل	finish exercises	ينهي التدريبات
do homework	يؤدي الواجب المدرسي	raise his hand	يقوم برفع يده

**Lesson 3**

most of the time	معظم الوقت	make electricity	يُصنع كهرباء
ask a question	يسأل سؤال	to learn more about	للتعلم أكثر عن
put hands up	يرفع اليد	the perfect place	المكان المثالي
change from one kind to another	يتغير من نوع إلى آخر	easy to look after	سهل العناية به

**Lesson 4**

do a science project on	يقوم بمشروع علمي عن	get a higher position	يحصل على ترقية / مكانة أعلى
neither of	لا أحد من	do a job	يقوم بوظيفة
each of	كل من	do naturally	يقوم بأداء شيء بشكل طبيعي
at home	بالمنزل	apply to	يقدم طلبًا لـ
at the end of	في نهاية	get a promotion	يحصل على ترقية
all of the different jobs	كل الوظائف المختلفة	train for	يتدرب لمدة

**Lesson 5**

Be responsible !	كن مسئولاً !	get worried about	يصبح قلقاً بشأن
Have a positive attitude.	كن ذو نحاء إيجابي.	agree on the best solution	يوافق على أفضل حل
work on a team	يعمل في فريق	get upset	يئزعج
share ideas with	يشارك الأفكار مع	stay calm	ابق هادئاً
get the best results	يحصل على أفضل النتائج	show respect	يظهر الاحترام
make sure	يتأكد	interested in	مهتم بـ / مستمتع بـ
rely on	يعتمد على	at any time from	في أي وقت من
listen to others' ideas	يستمع إلى أفكار الآخرين	What type of job is it for ?	ما نوع هذه المهنة ؟
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	apply for the job	يقدم بطلب لوظيفة
instead of	بدلاً من	look forward to	يتطلع إلى

**Lesson 6**

It's time for .....	إليه الوقت لـ - حان وقت .....	decide to	يقرر أن
design a vehicle for	يصمم مركبة (وسيلة مواصلات) لـ	run on	يعمل بواسطة
such as	مثل	at least	على الأقل
		transfer of energy	حول الطاقة



## Conjugation of verbs صرفه الفعل

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
construct <span>يبنى / يبنش</span>	constructed	find <span>يجد</span>	found
replace <span>يستبدل</span>	replaced	get <span>يحصل على</span>	got
guess <span>يخمن</span>	guessed	grow <span>يزرع</span>	grew
cry <span>يبكى</span>	cried	fly <span>يطير</span>	flew
relax <span>يسترخى</span>	relaxed	catch <span>يلحق</span>	caught
create <span>يولد / ينتج</span>	created	wake up <span>يستيقظ</span>	woke up
fix <span>يصلح</span>	fixed	do <span>يفعل</span>	did
kiss <span>يقبل</span>	kissed	go <span>يذهب</span>	went
brush <span>ينظف بالفرشاة</span>	brushed	be <span>يكون</span>	was - were
dry <span>يجفف</span>	dried	see <span>يرى</span>	saw
wash <span>يغسل</span>	washed	build <span>يبنى</span>	built
watch <span>يشاهد</span>	watched	draw <span>يرسم</span>	drew
raise <span>يربى</span>	raised	forget <span>ينسى</span>	forgot
turn <span>يحوّل</span>	turned	teach <span>يُدرس</span>	taught
present <span>يقدم</span>	presented	say <span>يقول</span>	said
practice <span>يمارس</span>	practiced	feel <span>يشعر</span>	felt
remember <span>يتذكر</span>	remembered	meet <span>يتقابل</span>	met
share <span>يشارك</span>	shared	become <span>يصبح</span>	became
complete <span>يكمل</span>	completed		
rely on <span>يعتمد / يثق</span>	relied on		
admit <span>يعترف</span>	admitted		
travel <span>يسافر</span>	traveled		
design <span>يصمم</span>	designed		
invent <span>يخترع - يبتكر</span>	invented		
explain <span>يشرح</span>	explained		

## General Exercises on 'Recycling'

★ Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1

Meat - non-renewable - renewable - raise

Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a (1) resource because we can grow more. (2) is also a renewable resource because farmers can (3) more animals for you to eat. Wood is renewable, too.

2

goes - teeth - eats - face

Gameela wakes up for school at 7 o'clock. First, she washes her face and brushes her (1). Then, she (2) breakfast. She (3) to school at 7:30.

3

sunshine - desert - hot - sand

Seleem walks to school every day. The road is next to the desert. It is usually (1), sunny and dusty on the road. Last year, there was nothing in the (2). Sometimes Seleem saw a lizard, but most of the time, he just saw rocks and (3).

4

sunlight - electrical - energy - rocks

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of (1) to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels to collect (2), the solar energy is turned into (3) energy.



## General Revision on Language

1

### The third person present singular verbs.

استخدام الأفعال مع ضمائر الفاعل الغائب المفردة في زمن المضارع.

☆ التصريف الأول للفعل مضافاً له "s" أو "es" أو "ies" :

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s)  
 He /She / It + (inf.) + s →  
 / (All) اسم مفرد مصدر الفعل or  
 أما التي تنتهي بـ (sh, ch ss, x, o, z) يضاف لها (es) →

ex. - Youssef's dad is a mechanic. He fixes cars.

Our cat drinks a lot of water when it's hot out.

ملاحظات :

الفعل المنتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (ies) مع حذف (y) :

ex. - The baby cries when she's hungry.

الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف له (s) :

ex. - He plays volleyball every Friday.

الفعل (have) لا يضاف له s ولكن مع (He - She - It) نستخدم (has).

ex. - He has brown hair.

### Usage الاستخدام

☆ We use present simple to talk about :

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن:

#### 1 Facts

حقائق

ex. - The mechanic fixes cars.

#### 2 Timetables

جداول المواعيد

ex. - School finishes at 2 o'clock.

#### 3 Repeated actions or habits

أحداث متكررة أو عادات

ex. - She visits her grandfather on Fridays.

## 2 Pronouns and antecedents

### 1 Pronouns

الضمائر

Subject Pronouns	Object Pronouns	Possessive Adjectives	Possessive Pronouns
I	me	my	mine
You	you	your	yours
He	him	his	his
She	her	her	hers
It	it	its	-
We	us	our	ours
You	you	your	yours
They	them	their	theirs

### 2 Antecedents

السوابق

Antecedent is the thing represented by a pronoun.

- السابقة هي الشيء الذي يعيد تقديمه الضمير.

The antecedent of a pronoun is a noun.

- السابقة للضمير هي الاسم.

Mona presented her project.



### ★ Rules of using antecedents and pronouns

قواعد استخدام السابقات والضمائر

When the noun is a boy (He)

→ We use (his)

When the noun is a girl (She)

→ We use (her)

When it isn't important, or we don't know if the noun is a boy or a girl (someone / person)

→ We use (their)



## General Exercises on Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

### ① The third person present singular verbs

1. My family . . . . . to visit my grandparents on Fridays.  
a. to go                      b. goes                      c. going                      d. went
2. She . . . . . her mom and dad.  
a. kiss                      b. kissing                      c. kisses                      d. were kissing
3. She . . . . . fruits and vegetables to be healthy.  
a. eat                      b. eats                      c. eating                      d. were eating
4. My father . . . . . to fix the broken vase.  
a. trying                      b. try                      c. have tried                      d. tries
5. Our cat . . . . . a lot of water when it's hot.  
a. am drinking                      b. drinking                      c. drink                      d. drinks
6. Amr . . . . . his hands before eating.  
a. wash                      b. washing  
c. washes                      d. have washed
7. She . . . . . me the book.  
a. passes                      b. passing                      c. are passing                      d. pass
8. The baby . . . . . when she's hungry.  
a. cry                      b. crying                      c. had cried                      d. cries
9. Talia . . . . . her hand when she finishes her exercises.  
a. raise                      b. raises                      c. raising                      d. are raising
10. She . . . . . up for school at 7 o'clock.  
a. waking                      b. wake                      c. wakes                      d. woke
11. His dad is a mechanic. He . . . . . cars.  
a. fix                      b. fixes                      c. fixing                      d. to fix
12. She . . . . . the bus to go home.  
a. catch                      b. catches                      c. catching                      d. are catching



## 2 Pronouns and antecedents

13. Lara did \_\_\_\_\_ science project on global warming.  
a. ours      b. yours      c. her      d. hers
14. You need to see \_\_\_\_\_ dentist twice a year.  
a. your      b. their      c. his      d. her
15. He went to see \_\_\_\_\_ favorite basketball team.  
a. her      b. his      c. you      d. my
16. Sama drank \_\_\_\_\_ coffee.  
a. her      b. hers      c. his      d. its
17. At the end of the presentation, someone raised \_\_\_\_\_ hand to ask a question.  
a. your      b. their      c. our      d. my
18. Neither of the boys has done \_\_\_\_\_ homework.  
a. our      b. your      c. his      d. their
19. One of my uncles has changed \_\_\_\_\_ address.  
a. his      b. mine      c. their      d. your
20. If someone sees a crime, \_\_\_\_\_ should report the police.  
a. he      b. we      c. you      d. I
21. Workers who want to succeed should do all of \_\_\_\_\_ best.  
a. your      b. their      c. its      d. his
22. She presented \_\_\_\_\_ project to the class.  
a. her      b. his      c. our      d. your
23. Sara says that \_\_\_\_\_ likes to read.  
a. them      b. she      c. their      d. your
24. Her friends ask her to bake cakes for \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. it      b. your      c. him      d. them
25. My mother ate \_\_\_\_\_ salad for dinner.  
a. his      b. she      c. her      d. its

# Review on unit 6



## General Revision on Vocabulary

### Lesson 1

airplane	طائرة	taxi	سيارة أجرة
ship	سفينة	bus	أوبوس
boat	قارب	train	قطار
river ferry	عبّارة نهرية	desert town	مدينة صحراوية
road	طريق	government	الحكومة
pipe	ماسورة	ancient Egyptians	العديماء المصريين
electric	كهربي	deep	عميق
rail	قضيب سكة حديد	wide	عريض
air	هواء	fun	مرح / ممتع
the Suez Canal	قناة السويس	travel	يسافر

### Lesson 2

robot	إنسان آلي	Mars	كوكب المريخ
future	مستقبل	vacation	أجازة
flying taxi	الناكسي الطائر	adult	بالغ - راشد
flying car	السيارة الطائرة	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
self-driving car	سيارة ذاتية القيادة	moon	القمر
petroleum	بنترول	flight	رحلة جوية
drive	يقود	pipeline	خط أنابيب
planet	كوكب	humans	لشبر

### Lesson 3

tech = technology	تكنولوجيا	user's excitement	حماس المستخدم
specific	محدد / معين	search engine	محرك البحث
search	بحث / يبحث	option	خيار
designer	مصمم	podcast	سيرة صوتية

diagram	رسم بياني	create	سج - سدع
brainstorm	عصف ذهني	browser	متصفح الإنترنت
positive	إيجابي	ignore	سجاهل
experience	خبرة	ads	إعلانات
real	حقيقي	safe	أمن
autonomous machine	آلة ذاتية التحكم	search box	صندوق البحث
results	نتائج	designer	مصمم
robotic engineer	مهندس أجهزة إلكترونية	VR headset	نظارات الواقع الافتراضي

#### 4 الدرس

password	كلمة مرور	password code	سجعة لكلمة المرور
passphrase	عبارة المرور	infographic passcode	مخطط بياني لسجعة المرور
personal	شخصي	space	مسافة
obvious	ملحوظ	safer	أكبر أمان
series	تسلسلي	stronger	أقوى
characters	رموز - شخصيات	capital letters	حروف كبيرة
the same	نفس الشيء	amazing	مدهش
account	حساب	regular	عادي
idea	فكرة	pet	حيوان أليف
pretend	زائف - يتظاهر	way	طريقة

#### 5 الدرس

container	حاوية	wave	موجة
ship's captain	قبطان السفينة	past	ماضي
the young entrepreneurs	رواد أعمال الشباب	toys	ألعاب أطفال
relaxing	استرخاء	land	أرض يابسة
huge	ضخم	straight	في خط مستقيم - مباشرة
agree	يوافق		

## Important expressions and prepositions

### Lesson 1

get water from	يحصل على المياه من ...	take a river ferry	يسنقل / يركب معدية في النهر
be on a train / bus	يكون على متن القطار / الأتوبيس	travel on an airplane / a ship	يسافر في طائرة / سفينة

### Lesson 2

travel to ..... for .....	يسافر إلى ..... من أجل .....	in the future	في المستقبل
by the window	بجانب النافذة	on Mars	على كوكب المريخ
		high-speed train	قطار سريع

### Lesson 3

short for	اختصار لـ ...	create positive experiences	يبدع / يُكوّن خبرات إيجابية
in the middle	في المنتصف		

### Lesson 4

create strong password	ينشئ كلمة مرور قوية	mean something for you	لديها معنى بالنسبة لك
you like best	أكثر ما تحبه	series of numbers	تسلسل أرقام
first of all	قبل كل شيء		

### Lesson 5

came back onto the land	عاد إلى اليابسة	when it went through ..	عندما مرت من خلال
a relaxing job	وظيفة مريحة	going along ..	على إمتداد ..
for a long time	مدة طويلة		

## Conjugation of Verbs

### Regular

Present	Past
travel يسافر	traveled
use يستخدم	used
cry يبكي - يصرخ	cried
transport ينقل	transported
look ينظر	looked
love يحب	loved
watch يشاهد	watched
like يحب	liked
wait ينتظر	waited
ask يسأل	asked
answer يجيب	answered
laugh يضحك	laughed

### Irregular

Present	Past
be يكون	was/were
take يستقل - يأخذ	took
drive يقود	drove
buy يشتري	bought
come يأتي	came
say يقول	said
go يذهب	went
has-have يمتلك	had

## أعرض على أستاذي



كتاب ELMONSSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للف 4 الابتدائي

Connect Plus

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



## Part 1



### General Exercises on (personnel)

★ Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1

characters - means - learns - numbers

To create a password sentence, use the first letter of each word in the box. Think of a sentence that (1) ..... something for you. Add (2) ..... and (3) ..... you can remember.

2

windy - captain - ship - sunny

Working on a ship is very hard work. The (1) ..... has to drive the huge ship for a long time. The (2) ..... has to be straight. Sometimes it is very difficult when it is (3) .....

3

Canal - ship - laughed - watched

Heba loved watching the ships. She often (1) ..... them with her friends. She liked to think about where the (2) ..... came from. She went with her father to the side of the Suez (3) ..... It was fun.



## General Revision on Language

Making predictions about the future.  
عمل تنبؤات في المستقبل.

1

Affirmative statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

**Subj. + will (+to) + inf.**

- ex. - He **will** travel to Alexandria **next** month.  
- They **will** buy a self-driving car **next** year.

**Note : will = 'll**

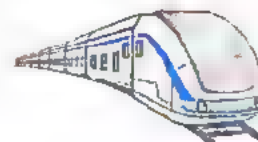
2

Negative statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

**Subj. + will not (won't) + inf.**

- ex. - Robots **won't** drive trains **next** year.  
- He **won't** travel on a train tomorrow.



**Note : will not = won't**

3

Interrogative

صيغة الاستفهام

**A Yes / No question**

- السؤال بـ "هل"

**Will + subj. + inf. ?**

Affirmative short answer : Yes, subj. + will.

Negative short answer : No, subj. + won't.

ex. - Will you travel to the Moon one day?

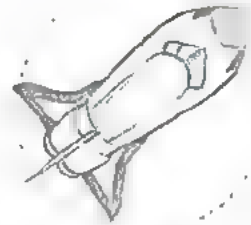
- \* Yes, I will.
- \* No, I won't.

## B Wh- question.

السؤال بكلمة استفهام.

**Wh- word + will + subj. + inf. ?**

- ex. - How will you travel to France ?  
I will travel on an airplane.
- What will you do when you're an adult ?  
I will travel to the Moon.



### Key words

tomorrow	غداً	in the future	في المستقبل
next	التالي	in 2025, 2026, .....	في عام ٢٠٢٥، ٢٠٢٦، .....

## ★ Read and identify these contractions.

اقرأ وتعرف على هذه الاختصارات.

1. I will → I'll	4. We will → We'll
2. He will → He'll	5. They will → They'll
3. She will → She'll	6. You will not → You won't

## Note

تستخدم (How) للسؤال عن وسيلة المواصلات.

- How will you travel to Aswan ? - On a river ferry. / - By train.



## General Exercises on Language

### ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Making predictions about the future

- ..... people live on the Moon one day ?  
a. Won't      b. Will      c. Were      d. Did
- My parents ..... buy a self-driving car next year.  
a. do      b. are      c. won't      d. were

3.            they have flying car in the future ? - Yes, they will.  
a. Have            b. Are            c. Will            d. Do
4. I will ..... a flying taxi to school.  
a. takes            b. took            c. taken            d. take
5. .... astronauts travel to Mars one day ?  
a. Do            b. Will            c. Are            d. Were
6. Will you ..... to the Moon one day ?  
a. travel            b. traveled            c. travels            d. traveling
7. How will you ..... to the school ?  
a. going            b. goes            c. go            d. gone
8. He ..... arrive on time.  
a. has            b. is            c. will            d. does
9. We will ..... what your father says.  
a. see            b. sees            c. to see            d. seeing
10. Will you ..... to the club on Saturday ?  
a. going            b. go            c. went            d. to go
11. .... they use robots in the future ? - Yes, they will.  
a. Do            b. Are            c. Were            d. Will
12. .... will you travel to Luxor ? - By train.  
a. When            b. What            c. How            d. Where
13. People will ..... to Mars in 2052.  
a. travel            b. travels            c. traveled            d. traveling
14. It will ..... tomorrow.  
a. snows            b. snow            c. snowing            d. to snow
15. I ..... travel to Luxor next year.  
a. are            b. was            c. do            d. will
16. He won't ..... trains next year.  
a. drove            b. driving            c. drives            d. drive



① Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- |   |                         |                         |
|---|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Grandpa designs and measures the patterns.                                   | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 2. Grandpa doesn't like his job.  | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 3. Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns best.              | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 4. Zeinab's friend Rasha is good at math.                                       | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 5. Grandpa makes the patterns with five layers of cotton.                       | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 6. Zeinab had an idea that to call her friends so that they learn about sewing. | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 7. Grandpa's eyes are good now.   | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 8. Rasha makes amazing art.   | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 9. Grandpa likes his job.   | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 10. Zeinab likes to learn sewing.   | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 11. Grandpa welcomed people who wanted to learn.                                | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 12. Grandpa was sad when he taught people at Khayameya.                         | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 13. Grandpa wasn't one of the artisans.   | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 14. Zeinab asked her mom to visit her Grandpa.                                  | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |
| 15. Zeinab is good at math.   | <input type="radio"/> T | <input type="radio"/> F |



**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It's difficult for Grandpa to work because of his .....  
 a. hearing      b. taste      c. touch      d. sight
2. Zeinab went to her grandpa by .....  
 a. car      b. bus      c. train      d. plane
3. The Khayameya School travels all the .....  
 a. winter      b. fall      c. summer      d. spring
4. Rasha is ..... at math.  
 a. good      b. bad      c. terrible      d. horrible
5. They make the patterns with three ..... of cotton.  
 a. fiber      b. layers      c. cloth      d. sheets
6. Zeinab had ..... friends.  
 a. tall      b. bad      c. clever      d. terrible
7. The Khayameya design of flowers takes .....  
 a. two weeks      b. four months      c. one year      d. four days
8. Grandpa's design is made of thousands and thousands of small .....  
 a. stitches      b. stickers      c. photos      d. machines
9. When Grandpa was young, he wanted to be a/an .....  
 a. singer      b. engineer      c. doctor      d. pilot
10. Grandpa uses ..... to do his work.  
 a. machines      b. hands      c. animals      d. people
11. Grandpa likes sewing patterns like .....  
 a. foods      b. animals      c. birds      d. reptiles
12. .... said "I wish I could sew and help you".  
 a. Lobna      b. Doha      c. Rasha      d. Zeinab
13. Grandpa was one of the best .....  
 a. teachers      b. artisans      c. doctors      d. dentists
14. Grandpa tells Zeinab that his ..... are not good now.  
 a. ears      b. hands      c. eyes      d. head
15. Zeinab invites her four ..... to join them.  
 a. friends      b. cousins      c. sons      d. uncles

## Model Answer

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1	T	9	T
2	F	10	T
3	T	11	T
4	T	12	F
5	F	13	F
6	T	14	T
7	F	15	F
8	F		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1	d. sight	9	b. engineer
2	c. train	10	b. hands
3	c. summer	11	c. birds
4	a. good	12	d. Zeinab
5	b. layers	13	b. artisans
6	c. clever	14	c. eyes
7	b. four months	15	a. friends
8	a. stitches		

Part

2

# Monthly Assessments

تقييمات شهرية



**1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The biggest animal on land is a ...  
a. bird                      b. mammal                      c. fish                      d. reptile
2. The African elephant is ... than the Asian elephant.  
a. faster                      b. slower                      c. bigger                      d. smaller
3. The blue whale lives in the ...  
a. river                      b. lake                      c. sea                      d. stream
4. The blue whale can be up to ... meters long.  
a. 20                      b. 30                      c. 40                      d. 60

**2** Listen and complete :

1. Braille is a code for people who are ...
2. Braille has different combinations of ...
3. People who have difficulty seeing can use ... to read.
4. Braille was ... by Louis Braille.

**3** Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

types – vertebrates – backbone – liquid

**Nourhan** : How are you, Hamza ?

**Hamza** : Fine. I learned a lot of information from our lesson today.

**Nourhan** : What was it about ?

**Hamza** : It was about (1) .....

**Nourhan** : What are vertebrates ?

**Hamza** : They are animals with a (2) .....

**Nourhan** : How many types are there of vertebrates ?

**Hamza** : There are five different (3) .....

**4** Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to the stomach. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. When we chew, we use our .....  
 a. noses                      b. teeth                      c. heads                      d. lungs
2. The main idea of the text is about .....  
 a. food                                      b. energy  
 c. body systems                      d. special liquid

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What system do we use when we breathe ?  
 .....

4. Where does food go after we swallow it ?  
 .....

**5 The reader**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

- |  |                            |                            |
|--|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Grandpa's eyes are not very good now.           | <input type="checkbox"/> T | <input type="checkbox"/> F |
| 2. Engy is great at math and working out problems. | <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/>   |

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Grandpa likes sewing patterns like .....  
 a. foods                      b. animals                      c. birds                      d. reptiles
2. .... said, "I wish I could sew and help you".  
 a. Lobna                      b. Zeinab                      c. Doha                      d. Rasha



Part 2 \_\_\_\_\_

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She ... in Cairo with her family.  
a. live                      b. lives                      c. living                      d. to live
2. He ..... busy now, but he can help you.  
a. is                      b. was                      c. were                      d. are
3. Turtles are ..... than the lizards.  
a. slowest                      b. slow                      c. slower                      d. slowly
4. This bird sings very .....  
a. soft                      b. softly                      c. softer                      d. softest

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. lounge – to – Mum – wants – the – tidy.  
.....
2. move – spider – Can – the - quickly - very ?  
.....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

"The Paralympic Games"

Guiding elements :

take place – held – champions – take part – Olympics

**1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Your senses are very ..... for you.  
a. sweet                      b. difficult                      c. important                      d. soft
2. You depend on senses .....  
a. early                      b. every day                      c. late                      d. sometimes
3. You taste with your .....  
a. nose                      b. eye                      c. tongue                      d. ear
4. Senses ..... us away from harm ضرر.  
a. keep                      b. give                      c. bring                      d. let

**2** Listen and complete :

1. Peter is American. He is ..... years old.
2. Peter's school is ..... now.
3. Peter now studies at his ..... .
4. Peter usually gets good ..... in his tests.

**3** Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

activities – live – club – museum

**Nabil** : Good morning, Mourad. Where do you (1) ..... ?

**Mourad** : Good morning, Nabil. I live in Cairo.

**Nabil** : Who do you live with ?

**Mourad** : I live with my family.

**Nabil** : What are the (2) ..... you can do at the city ?

**Mourad** : I can go to the sports (3) ..... .

**Nabil** : Great ! Let's play football together.

**Mourad** : It's a good idea.

**4** Read the following text and answer the questions below :

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. A community is a mixture of people, places, and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit. You can also have a community there. For me, I am a part of the community at my sports club, too.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The main idea of the text is about .....  
 a. sport      b. neighborhood      c. community      d. citizenship
2. Our community includes our family, ..... and school.  
 a. weather      b. friends      c. clothes      d. games

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What is a community ?

.....

4. Can we have a community in the library ?

.....

**5 The reader**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

1. Lobna invents things all the time.
2. Grandpa wanted to be a vet.

<b>T</b>	<b>F</b>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Zeinab loves the big picture with all the .....  
 a. flowers      b. paper      c. trees      d. birds
2. .... can teach Zeinab how to sew.  
 a. Grandpa      b. Grandma      c. Father      d. Mother

**6** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ancient Egyptians \_\_\_\_\_ papyrus for writing.  
a. uses                      b. using                      c. used                      d. use
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ read a story for his little sister yesterday.  
a. doesn't                      b. didn't                      c. don't                      d. wasn't
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ were swimming in the small lake.  
a. goose                      b. duck                      c. swan                      d. geese
4. She cleaned her room \_\_\_\_\_ she was busy yesterday.  
a. as soon as                      b. although                      c. while                      d. after

**7** Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. mountains – to – a river – high – next – There are.  
.....
2. made – a carpet – How – is ?  
.....

**8** Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

**"Scribes"**

Guiding elements :

write down – in hieroglyphics – tombs – on stones – papyrus reeds

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My house has ..... bedrooms.  
a. five                      b. two                      c. three                      d. four
2. There is a ..... in the living room.  
a. video                      b. cupboard                      c. couch                      d. TV
3. I like to read in my .....  
a. garden                      b. bedroom                      c. living room                      d. library
4. My bedroom is .....  
a. tidy                      b. big                      c. high                      d. boring

**2** Listen and complete :

1. Milk is good for our ..... and teeth.
2. My ..... buys fresh milk every day.
3. Milk is the source of ..... for young mammals.
4. Milk helps our body become ..... and healthy.

**3** Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

worried – Share – complete - successful

Teamwork is a very important skill for the success of any team. Here are some points to help you. (1) ..... your ideas and feelings with the other team members. Remember to (2) ..... your part of a project well. Your team members are relying on you to do your part. Instead of getting (3) ..... about problems, be a problem solver.



**4** Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Wood is renewable, too. Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, metals, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The main idea of the text is about .....  
 a. resources      b. wood      c. metals      d. the sun
2. "Run out" means to .....  
 a. start      b. finish      c. use      d. have

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What is the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources ?  
 .....  
 .....
4. What renewable resources can you find at your home ?  
 .....  
 .....

**The reader**

**5**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

1. Grandpa designs and measures the patterns.
2. Grandpa's mother taught him to sew.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Zeinab and her mother traveled by .....  
 a. plane      b. train      c. car      d. bus
2. Zeinab's friends want to ..... about Khayameya.  
 a. watch      b. learn      c. see      d. lose

**6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Osama sometimes ..... the museum with his friends.  
a. visiting      b. visits      c. visit      d. visited
2. .... Mazen and Ramez are clever students.  
a. Both      b. Although      c. As soon as      d. For
3. He helped ..... dad clean the garden.  
a. him      b. his      c. their      d. hers
4. Have you ..... to Aswan before ?  
a. travel      b. travels      c. traveled      d. traveling

**7 Order the words to make correct sentences :**

1. fossil – your family – fuels – does – Why – use ?

2. school – Seleem – every – walks – day – to.

**8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :**

To your friend Omar about transportation. Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is omar20@gmail.com.

**Guiding elements :**

train – rail – road – river ferry – move

To :

From :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. There are ..... people in Dina's family.  
a. six                      b. five                      c. two                      d. three
2. Dina's dad is a/an .....  
a. engineer              b. teacher              c. dentist              d. doctor
3. Dina's mother works in a/an .....  
a. hospital              b. restaurant              c. office              d. school
4. Dina's ..... is two.  
a. aunt                      b. cousin                      c. sister                      d. brother

**2 Listen and complete :**

1. Whales are ..... animals.
2. Whales live in ..... and seas.
3. Whales ..... milk for their babies.
4. Whales make sounds to ..... to each other.

**3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :**

park – friends – statues – Museum

**Mona :** Where did you go yesterday ?

**Heba :** I went to visit the Egyptian (1) .....

**Mona :** Who went with you ?

**Heba :** I went with my (2) .....

**Mona :** What did you see there ?

**Heba :** We saw a lot of (3) ..... and monuments.

**Mona :** Did you enjoy your time ?

**Heba :** Yes, we enjoyed it so much.

 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Mona likes watching animals programs. She watched a video about dolphins. She learned that the dolphins are mammals. They breathe through a blowhole on the top of their head. Dolphins are intelligent animals that are easy to train by humans. The dolphins are very friendly and playful. They live in groups called pods. They swim and hunt together. They communicate using sounds.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The text is about .....  
 a. reptiles      b. insects      c. amphibians      d. dolphins
2. Dolphins can breathe through a .....  
 a. blowhole      b. nose      c. head      d. mouth

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. How can dolphins communicate ?

.....

4. How are dolphins intelligent ?

.....

### The reader

**5**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

1. Grandpa wasn't one of the Tent Makers.

☒ T    ☒ F

☐    ☐

2. Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers patterns.

☐    ☐

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Grandpa designs and measures the .....

a. models      b. roads      c. patterns      d. flowers

2. Grandpa makes everything by his .....

a. hand      b. computer      c. pen      d. tools

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The                      bird is the ostrich.  
a. bigger than    b. big                      c. biggest                      d. bigger
2. She                      to the zoo yesterday.  
a. going                      b. went                      c. goes                      d. go
3. This is                      book. It's mine.  
a. your                      b. my                      c. his                      d. her
4. Fatma                      go to the museum on Mondays.  
a. don't                      b. doesn't                      c. aren't                      d. weren't

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. in – There – 27 – are – governorates – Egypt.

2. colors – do – Why – fish – bright - have ?

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

"Animals' habitats"

Guiding elements :

forest / desert / grass / live / oceans



Part

3

# (10) Sample Tests

عشرة اختبارات على المصحح بالكامل  
من اختبارات المحافظات



# Sample Test 1

اختبار مجمع من المحادثات المختلفة



نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can ..... energy from one kind to another.  
a. destroy      b. change      c. collect      d. plant
2. We use ..... to collect sunlight.  
a. boards      b. sets  
c. solar panels      d. time machines
3. When we use electrical energy for a television, it's now ..... energy.  
a. electronic      b. mechanical      c. chemical      d. nuclear
4. We can't ..... energy.  
a. use      b. change      c. have      d. destroy

## 2 Listen and complete :

(القاهرة ٢٢. ٢٠)

1. There are many ..... of transportation.
2. You can go by ..... if there are roads available.
3. You can travel by water if you live on an ..... .
4. Transportation allows us to ..... from one place to another.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

(البحر الأحمر ٢٢. ٢٠)

.....  
nutrients - esophagus - lungs - digestive  
.....

The food you eat takes an incredible journey through your body. We use our (1) ..... system when we eat and drink. The main organs that make up the digestive system are the mouth, (2) ....., stomach, small intestine and large intestine. Digestion is important because your body needs (3) ..... from the food you eat and the liquids you drink in order to stay healthy and work properly.

#### 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Using their wings, most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bones. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

##### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The text is about .....  
a. birds                      b. mammals                      c. reptiles                      d. fish
- Birds lay eggs which are .....  
a. hot                      b. hard                      c. soft                      d. warm

##### B. Answer the following questions :

3. Can all birds fly ?

4. Why are birds' beaks different ?

#### 5

##### The reader

##### A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

- Grandpa was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street.
- Zeinab doesn't want to visit her grandparents.

##### B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Grandpa likes sewing Khayameya design with .....  
a. clothes                      b. lotus flowers                      c. socks                      d. grass
- ..... wanted to be an engineer in the past.  
a. Grandpa                      b. Zeinab                      c. Rasha                      d. Lobna

**6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Some crabs can move ..... in water than on land. (الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)
  - a. fastest
  - b. fast
  - c. faster
  - d. the fastest
2. This is my cousins' house. It's ..... (كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)
  - a. ours
  - b. hers
  - c. theirs
  - d. mine
3. Have you ever ..... on a plane ? (القليوبية ٢٠٢٢)
  - a. being
  - b. been
  - c. be
  - d. to be
4. Omar always ..... his hand before eating. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
  - a. washes
  - b. washing
  - c. washed
  - d. wash

**7 Order the words to make correct sentences :** (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

1. are – Some – driving – workers – trucks.

.....

2. you – do – Where – live ?

.....

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :** (الراعي الجديد ٢٠٢٢)

**"Our respiratory system"**

**Guiding elements :**

breathe – lungs – oxygen – heart – pass

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Sample Test 2

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Egypt has a very ..... history.  
a. short                      b. boring                      c. long                      d. small
2. People started to live near the ... .. about 9,000 years ago.  
a. Nile                      b. Tower                      c. Pyramids                      d. Red Sea
3. Upper Egypt was in the .....  
a. south                      b. north                      c. east                      d. west
4. At first, Egypt had ..... separate areas.  
a. three                      b. ten                      c. two                      d. four

## 2 Listen and complete :

(البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

1. .... resources can be replaced when they run out.
2. .... are renewable resources because we can grow more.
3. Plastic is a ..... resource.
4. Farmers can ..... more animals for you to eat.

## 3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(الإلكترونية ٢٠٢٢)

fun - have - go - hard

**Younis** : Good morning, Amr. Have you ever been on a train ?

**Amr** : Good morning, Younis. Yes , I (1) .....

**Younis** : Where did you (2) ..... ?

**Amr** : I went to Luxor with my friends.

**Younis** : Was it (3) ..... ?

**Amr** : Yes, it was fun.

**Younis** : What was the train like ?

**Amr** : It was very big.



**4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :**

(المرحلة ٢٢)

Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The passage is talking about  
 a. rivers                      b. turtles                      c. reptiles                      d. scales
2. The word "keep" in the passage means  
 a. spend                      b. stay                      c. come                      d. lay

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. Can we find turtles' eggs on the land ?
4. Why do reptiles have to spend time in the sun ?

**5 The reader**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

(المرحلة ٢٢)

1. Grandpa's favorite design is lotus flowers.
2. Zeinab doesn't like sewing.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

(المرحلة ٢٢)

1. Grandpa liked sewing lotus flowers and geometric  
 a. problems                      b. layers                      c. patterns                      d. stitches
2. Grandpa's                      taught him to sew.  
 a. father                      b. mother                      c. brother                      d. sister

### Part 3

#### 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We ..... to eat a good diet to stay healthy. (٢٠٢٢ ل٢)  
 a. needs                      b. needing                      c. need                      d. needed
2. How ..... types of animals lay eggs ? (٢٠٢٢ ل٢)  
 a. much                      b. often                      c. long                      d. many
3. Hatem ..... at home yesterday. He traveled to Luxor last week. (٢٠٢٢ ل٢)  
 a. weren't                      b. wasn't                      c. isn't                      d. haven't
4. I washed the dishes ..... mum was sweeping the floor. (٢٠٢٢ ل٢)  
 a. while                      b. although                      c. for                      d. where

#### 7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. a – big – shark – How – is – whale ?  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....
2. folk – lots of – traditional – Egypt – music – has.  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

#### 8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

To your friend Tamer about amphibians. Your name is Tarek and your email address is tarek@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tamer@yahoo.com.

##### Guiding elements :

live – land – water – survive – reptiles

To :

From :

Subject :

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

# Sample Test 3

الامتحان العينة رقم ٣



نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... lives in Alexandria.  
a. Khalaf                      b. Kareem                      c. Khalid                      d. Khalil
2. Alexandria is the ..... largest city in Egypt.  
a. first                      b. second                      c. third                      d. fourth
3. .... is in Alexandria.  
a. The Tower                      b. Montaza Palace  
c. Lake Naser                      d. The Red Pyramid
4. How many people live in Alexandria ? .....  
a. 5,000                      b. 50,000                      c. 5,000,000                      d. 500,000

## 2 Listen and complete :

(سوراج ٢٠٢٢)

1. The Paralympic Games is an international .....
2. The Paralympic Games takes place every ..... years.
3. It is held in a ..... country each time.
4. Egypt has many ..... who take part in these competitions.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

(كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)

tongue - working - skin - eyes

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our (1) ..... to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our (2) ....., and we can feel with our skin. Think about where you are now. What can you see ? What can you hear ? Our senses are (3) ..... all the time and they take in a lot of information.

#### 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below : (الترجمة ٢٠٢٢)

The Egyptian civilization is very famous. Egypt has a long history. People started to live near the Nile. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. One pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

##### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The text is about the .....  
 a. natural resources                      b. history of Egypt  
 c. invertebrates                          d. Egyptian crafts
- The underlined word "started" means .....  
 a. bought              b. made              c. began              d. finished

##### B. Answer the following questions :

3. Who joined the two parts in Egypt ?

4. How can people travel through the Nile ?

#### 5

#### The reader

##### A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(المطروح ٢٠٢٢)

- Zeinab and her mother went to grandparents by bus.
- All people wanted to learn about Khayameya.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

##### B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(الغلبية ٢٠٢٢)

- ..... can help Grandpa show them all how to sew.  
 a. Lobna              b. Doha              c. Engy              d. Rasha
- Zeinab and her grandfather visited the .....  
 a. museum              b. school              c. park              d. shop

**6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Insects live in the rainforests because they can find food

(القاهرة ٢٢-٢٠)

- a. easy      b. easier      c. easily      d. easiest

2. This is      new math teacher, Mr Hany.

(مطروح ٢٢-٢٠)

- a. my      b. mine      c. me      d. yours

3. The birds' beaks have different shapes  
different food.

they eat

(الوادى الجديد ٢٢-٢٠)

- a. because      b. but      c. however      d. on one hand

4. Did he      his lost key yesterday ?

(الدقهلية ٢٢-٢٠)

- a. found      b. finding      c. find      d. finds

**7 Order the words to make correct sentences :**

(الاسوط ٢٢-٢٠)

1. Games – is – The Paralympic – an – competition – international.

2. travel to – one – Will – the Moon – you – day ?

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following  
guiding elements :**

(البحر الاحمر ٢٢-٢٠)

**"Folk music"**

**Guiding elements :**

saidi music – string instruments – oboe – drumming – Nubian music

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Sample Test 4

اختبار نموذجي من المحافظات المختلفة



نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There are lots of ..... things to see under the sea.  
a. boring      b. scary      c. hard      d. interesting
2. Some fish are very ..... colored.  
a. slowly      b. dark      c. light      d. brightly
3. The bright corals can help fish ..... from a bigger one.  
a. hide      b. attack      c. find      d. see
4. Many predators don't eat ..... that's brightly colored.  
a. plant      b. animal      c. fish      d. prey

## 2 Listen and complete :

(الغربية ٢٠٢٢)

1. Fruits and vegetables have a lot of fiber, ..... and minerals.
2. We need minerals and vitamins for healthy skin, ..... bones and teeth.
3. Fish, cheese and eggs have ..... that helps us grow.
4. We need ..... for a healthy nervous system.

## 3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(لنا ٢٠٢٢)

Where - port - airport - visit

**Basma** : Hi, Walaa.

**Walaa** : Welcome to Cairo. Is it your first (1)..... to Cairo ?

**Basma** : Yes, it is.

**Walaa** : (2)..... do you live ?

**Basma** : I live in Alexandria.

**Walaa** : What natural features does it have ?

**Basma** : Lots of ships go in and out of the (3).....

**Walaa** : Great ! I wish you would enjoy your visit in Cairo.

**4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :**

(البجيرة ٢٠٢٢)

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for ruling dynasties. Important dynasties controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

Ancient Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- The main idea of the text is about ..... in ancient Egypt.  
a. rulers                      b. scribes                      c. pharaohs                      d. symbols
- "....." are important families who ruled the country.  
a. Scribes                      b. Hieroglyphs                      c. Dynasties                      d. Tombs

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. Why were scribes important in ancient Egypt ?

4. what is hieroglyphs ?

**5 The reader**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

(النبا ٢٠٢٢)

- Zeinab loved the big picture with all the flowers.
- Zeinab went to her grandparents in winter.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

(مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

- Who invents things all the time ?  
a. Rasha                      b. Lobna                      c. Zeinab                      d. Doha
- Zeinab's grandparents were very ..... to see her.  
a. pleased                      b. angry                      c. excited                      d. tired

**6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Our heart ..... the blood around our body. (ج ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. pumping      b. pumps      c. pump      d. pumped (المختارة ٢٠٢٢)
2. Ants are much ..... humans.  
 a. the strongest      b. stronger than  
 c. strong      d. strongest
3. He is very ..... His father bought a new bike for him. (الدينية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. happy      b. happily      c. happier      d. happiest
4. There ..... a big party in my school last week. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. was      b. were      c. have      d. has

**7 Order the words to make correct sentences :**

1. was – in – Egypt – Music – important – ancient.
2. natural – What – resources – are ?

**8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :**

To your friend Hend about your city. Your name is Sara and your email address is sara@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is hend 22@yahoo.com.

**Guiding elements :**

metropolitan - densely populated - pedestrian - congestion

To :

From :

Subject :

# Sample Test 5

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Aya Ayman Abbas is a ..... champion.  
a. basketball    b. karate    c. tennis    d. swimming
2. Aya won the Egypt Cup ..... times.  
a. two    b. three    c. four    d. six
3. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in .....  
a. Tokyo    b. London    c. Rio    d. Brazil
4. She won lots of ..... medals.  
a. silver    b. gold    c. bronze    d. a, b & c

**2 Listen and complete :**

(الجزء ٢٠٢٢)

1. There are ..... halves in our brain.
2. The left hemisphere controls the ..... side of the body.
3. The right hemisphere is used in ..... and music.
4. The brain is an important ..... in our bodies.

**3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :**

(الجزء ٢٠٢٢)

digestive - drink - lesson - breathe

**Hana :** Good morning, Sama.

**Sama :** Good morning, Hana. It's our first school day in grade four.

**Hana :** Yes, I read the first English (1) .....

**Sama :** What is it about ?

**Hana :** It's about our (2) ..... system.

**Sama :** What does that system do ?

**Hana :** We use our digestive system when we eat and (3) .....

**Sama :** Great !

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are renewable resources because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat.

1. The main idea of the text is about .....

2. When renewable resources run out, they can be .....  
a. placed                      b. replaced                      c. grown                      d. rebuilt

3. If farmers raise more animals, what happens?

- #### 4. Why are the potatoes renewable resources ?

## The reader

(سرفاچہ ۲۰۲۲)

1. Zeinab wanted to learn about Khayameya.
2. Grandpa is an artisan.

<b>T</b>	<b>F</b>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

(۲۰۲۲)

- 1.** Zeinab got off the ..... . There were her grandfather and grandmother.  
a. bus                  b. train                  c. car                  d. airplane
- 2.** The big picture is made of thousands and thousands of small .....  
a. leaves                  b. paper                  c. flowers                  d. stitches



**6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is Leen's sister. I met her before with Leen. (القبول ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. Those                      b. These                      c. This                      d. They
2. People .. ... to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. starting                      b. starts                      c. start                      d. started
3. She speaks very .. ... . I can't understand her. (ابني سوف ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. quick                      b. loud                      c. fast                      d. quiet
4. Tigers have sharp .. ... . (الذئبية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. tooth                      b. teeth                      c. claw                      d. jaw

**7 Order the words to make correct sentences :** (سوداج ٢٠٢٢)

1. to learn – I want – about – Egyptian – traditional – crafts.  
 .....
2. populated – is – sparsely – your city – densely – or ?  
 .....

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :** (كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)

**"How to be a good team member"**

**Guiding elements :**

communicate – collaborate – have a positive attitude –  
 be responsible – solve problems

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Sample Test 6

اختبار العينات مع الإجابة المفتوحة



نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Vertebrates have ....  
a. feathers      b. backbones      c. beaks      d. wings
2. The bee hummingbird is the ..... bird.  
a. smallest      b. fastest      c. shortest      d. biggest
3. The bee hummingbird lives in .....  
a. America      b. Brazil      c. Cuba      d. Africa
4. Ostriches can't ..  
a. run      b. fly      c. lay eggs      d. hear well

## 2 Listen and complete :

(الترنية ٢٠٢٢)

1. Deaf people can use ..... language.
2. People who can't see or hear have different ways to ..... with others.
3. Braille is a ..... which people can use to read.
4. Blind people can ..... the dots to find out what they mean.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

(شيء صيف ٢٠٢٢)

computer - Sitting - develop - snacks

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. (1) ..... still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy (2) ..... when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to (3) ..... unhealthy habits.

**4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :** (كثير الشخ ٢٠٢٢)

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce. Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can make green, orange, purple, and all the shades in between.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .**

- We make secondary colors by ..... the three primary colors.  
a. fixing      b. mixing      c. making      d. doing
- The word "types" in the text means .....  
a. shades      b. levels      c. kinds      d. shapes

**B. Answer the following questions :**

- Is green primary or secondary color ?  
.....
- Why are the bright flowers important for plants ?  
.....

**5 The reader**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

(النجوم ٢٠٢٢)

- Grandpa always wanted to be an artisan.
- Rasha makes amazing art.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

(نفا ٢٠٢٢)

- Khayameya School is traveling all .....  
a. spring      b. summer      c. fall      d. winter
- Zeinab has ..... friends.  
a. sad      b. happy      c. angry      d. clever

**6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He ..... meet his grandparents last Friday. (الاسكتندرية ٢٠٢٢)  
a. doesn't      b. isn't      c. didn't      d. wasn't
2. .... the artisans weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)  
a. Before      b. So      c. While      d. Even though
3. My school ..... at 2:30 except on Thursdays. (الغربية ٢٠٢٢)  
a. finish      b. finishes      c. finishing      d. finished
4. If you're positive, you'll help ..... and the others. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)  
a. myself      b. herself      c. themselves      d. yourself

**7 Order the words to make correct sentences :**

(المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

1. live – on land – on water – Amphibians – and – can.

2. uses – language – Who – sign ?

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :**

(المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

**“Natural resources”**

**Guide elements :**

materials / renewable resources / non-renewable resources /  
oil / fossil fuels

# Sample Test 7

أخبار مجمع من المحادثات المقلمة



المدرس:  
الدستور:  
المادة:  
الصف:

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Fareeda ..... in Greater Cairo.  
a. works      b. learns      c. lives      d. reads
- Greater Cairo is a ..... populated.  
a. densely      b. sparsely      c. lightly      d. easily
- There are more than ..... inhabitants in Cairo.  
a. 20,000      b. 20,000,000      c. 7,000,000      d. 2,000,000
- When you walk in Cairo, you should be .....  
a. fast      b. hard      c. careful      d. slow

## 2 Listen and complete :

(السا ٢٢، ٢٠)

- Ancient Egyptians used scribes to ..... down everything that happened.
- Scribes were very ..... people in Ancient Egypt.
- Children learnt to become a scribe at .....
- Scribes wrote on paper made from ..... reeds.

## 3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(السا ٢٢، ٢٠)

nose - breathe - respiratory - esophagus

**Hamza** : Reham, do you know what our lesson will be today ?

**Reham** : Yes, I know, Hamza. It's about the (1) ..... system.

**Hamza** : When do we use our respiratory system ?

**Reham** : When we (2) ..... , we use our respiratory system.

**Hamza** : How do we breathe ?

**Reham** : We breathe in air through our (3) .....

**Hamza** : Where does the air we breathe go ?

**Reham** : It goes to our lungs.



#### 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below : (الجزء ٢٢-٢٣)

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting.

Dancers wear special costumes. These can be dark and plain, or bright-colored and patterned. In the cities alongside the Suez Canal, there are international types of music and dance. Musicians play the simsimeya, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "simsimeya" is a/an .....  
a. tool                      b. equipment    c. instrument    d. toy
- The text is about.....  
a. folk patterns    b. folk dancing    c. folk cities    d. special costumes

#### B. Answer the following questions :

- Does the folk dancing depend on the place ?
- Why does the Tahtib look like fighting ?

### 5

#### The reader

#### A Read and write T (True) or F (False) : (القاهرة ٢٢-٢٣)

- To make Khayameya, you need a pattern with 3 layers of cotton. (T) (F)
- Grandpa is sad because he can't hear well now.

#### B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (٢٣-٢٤)

- Grandpa wanted to be a/an ..... or a teacher when he was a child.  
a. architect                      b. doctor                      c. vet                      d. engineer
- Grandpa likes sewing ..... flowers best.  
a. sunflower                      b. lotus                      c. red                      d. white

**6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. These are ..... cousins; Omar and Ali. (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)  
a. ours                      b. yours                      c. mine                      d. our
2. .... the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)  
a. So that                      b. Even though                      c. As soon as                      d. But
3. .... we live on the Moon one day ? - No, we won't. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)  
a. Did                      b. Do                      c. Have                      d. Will
4. Have you ever ..... snails before ? (السيوط ٢٠٢٢)  
a. try                      b. tried                      c. tries                      d. trying

**7 Order the words to make corret sentences :** (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. growth – is – What – smart ?

2. our – seeing – for – eyes – We – use.

**8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :** (الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

To your friend Marwan about a visit to Alexandria. Your name is Sleem. Your email address is sleem@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is marwan@yahoo.com.

**Guiding elements :**

Mediterranean Sea / port / apartment / services / Montaza Palace

To :

From :

Subject :

..... ,

.....

.....

.....

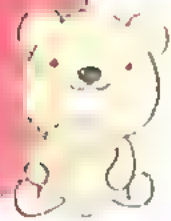
.....

.....

.....

# Sample Test 8

الكتاب مدمج من الملاحظات المختارة



لصوص  
الدسماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Waleed lives in a small .....  
a. country      b. city      c. town      d. village
2. His dad ..... tomatoes and onions.  
a. grows      b. raises      c. lives      d. brings
3. His dad is a/an .....  
a. engineer      b. farmer      c. doctor      d. vet
4. There are ..... people in Waleed's family.  
a. six      b. seven      c. eight      d. five

## 2 Listen and complete :

(أبني صريف ٢٢-٢٠)

1. Fish take in oxygen through their .....
2. Fish are ..... and they lay eggs.
3. There are thousands of different ..... of fish.
4. Fish use ..... to move.

## 3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(المطروح ٢٢-٢٠)

sea – road – bus – transportation

**Mrs Dalia :** Hey everyone. Ahmed, can you tell me how we get from one place to another place ?

**Ahmed :** Yes. That is what transportation does.

**Mrs Dalia :** Yes, that's good. What kinds of (1) ..... do you usually take ?

**Ahmed :** I usually take a bus to school.

**Mrs Dalia :** Where does the (2) ..... go on ?

**Ahmed :** The bus goes on the (3) .....

**Mrs Dalia :** Great! Thank you, Ahmed!

**Ahmed :** You are welcome.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(٢٠٢٢ سويف)

The Paralympic Games is an international competition. It's for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Being a Paralympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work.

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner who takes part in 100-metre, 200 metre and 400-metre races. He joined the national team in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won many medals, including gold in the World Championship in New Zealand.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about .....
  - a. Olympic Games
  - b. Paralympic Games
  - c. World Cup
  - d. swimming competitions
2. "Takes place" means .....
  - a. connects
  - b. happens
  - c. supports
  - d. protects

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Which races does Mostafa take part in ?  
.....
4. Is the Olympics different from the Paralympics ?  
.....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(٢٠٢٢ الجيزة)

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

1. The Khayameya School is going to Aswan and Port Said.
2. Zeinab likes the Khayameya design with flowers best.

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(٢٠٢٢ الدقهية)

1. They make the patterns of Khayameya with three layers of .....
  - a. wood
  - b. silk
  - c. cotton
  - d. fiber
2. Rasha is great at ..... and working out problems.
  - a. social studies
  - b. math
  - c. science
  - d. English

**6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I ..... to the club every day.

- a. went                      b. going                      c. goes

d. go

(مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

2. A blue whale is bigger .. .. a shark.

- a. the                      b. then                      c. that

d. than

(دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

3. Adam presented ..... project to the class.

- a. her                      b. his                      c. their

d. hers

(الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)

4. .... he play football yesterday ?

- a. Was                      b. Does                      c. Did

d. Is

(أسيوط ٢٠٢٢)

**7 Order the words to make correct sentences :**

(البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. shark – whale - a - big – How – is ?

2. organs – protects – Our – skeleton – our.

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :**

(الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

**"Birds"**

**Guiding elements :**

warm-blooded / feathers / wings / beaks / bones

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Sample Test 9

اختبار مجمع من الملاحظات المختلفة



نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We use our eyes to .....  
a. taste                      b. touch                      c. hear                      d. see
2. We hear with our .....  
a. ears                      b. arms                      c. legs                      d. brain
3. We can feel with our .....  
a. mouth                      b. skin                      c. nose                      d. stomach
4. Our senses are working all the .....  
a. pattern                      b. time                      c. world                      d. sides

## 2 Listen and complete :

(القائمة ٢٢. ٢٠)

1. .... is very important for the success of a project.
2. .... your ideas with other team members.
3. If you find your role ....., ask for help.
4. You should listen to other's .....

## 3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(مطروح ٢٢. ٢٠)

system – stomach – drink – breathe

**Amr** : Hello, Essmat.

**Essmat** : Hello, Amr.

**Amr** : What is the system that we use when we eat and  
(1) ..... ?

**Essmat** : We use our digestive (2) .....

**Amr** : Where does food go after we swallow it ?

**Essmat** : It goes to our (3) .....

**Amr** : Yes, in the stomach, a special liquid changes the food  
into energy that we need in our body.

**Essmat** : That's great.

#### 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below : (الفهمية ٢٠٢٢)

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy. But what is a good diet ? A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink. Our brain is about 75% water and it needs water to work well. We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they are full of vitamins and have a lot of fiber and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow.

##### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The main idea of the text is about .....  
 a. the mammal                      b. a good diet  
 c. competitions                      d. transportation
- Fruit and vegetables have a lot of .....  
 a. protein      b. fiber      c. calcium      d. plastic

##### B. Answer the following questions :

3. What does a good diet include ?

.....

4. What foods are high in fiber ?

.....

#### 5

#### The reader

##### A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(الفهمية ٢٠٢٢)

- Zeinab has weak friends.
- Khayameya School is traveling all summer.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

##### B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(الفهم ٢٠٢٢)

- Zeinab goes to her grandparents by .....  
 a. bus                      b. train                      c. car                      d. airplane
- ..... makes amazing art.  
 a. Zeinab                      b. Engy                      c. Doha                      d. Rasha

**6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Amira . . . . . go to the club on Sundays.  
a. hasn't                      b. didn't                      c. isn't                      d. doesn't (ق ٢٠٢٢)
2. Will you . . . . . to the Zoo next week ?  
a. goes                      b. going                      c. go                      d. to go (كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)
3. These pens belong to Moaz. They are . . . . .  
a. his                      b. hers                      c. her                      d. mine (البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)
4. Ancient Egyptians . . . . . in hieroglyphs.  
a. write                      b. wrote                      c. writes                      d. writing (الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

**7 Order the words to make correct sentences :** (الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

1. city – are – services - What – in – your ?  
.....
2. dancing – a long – Folk – history – has – in Egypt.  
.....

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :** (البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

**“Our senses”**

**Guiding elements :**

1. What are our five senses ?
2. How do we use each one of them ?
3. What is sign language ?
4. What is Braille ?
5. Who invented Braille ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Sample Test 10

اختبار مجتموع من المحافظات المختلفة



نصائح  
الاستماع  
في كتاب  
لكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 1. We can use the ..... to go wherever we want.  
a. ferry                      b. bus                      c. airplane                      d. train
- 2. There are beautiful ..... that I sometimes visit with my family.  
a. shops                      b. parks                      c. gardens                      d. markets
- 3. We can buy anything we need from the .....  
a. offices                      b. hospitals                      c. schools                      d. shops
- 4. We have a lot of ..... in my city.  
a. services                      b. cars                      c. buses                      d. trains

2 Listen and complete :

(النواحي الحضرية ٢٠٢٢)

- 1. The Nile ..... through the deserts of Africa.  
..... Egypt was in the north.
- 2. Upper Egypt was in the .....
- 3. Mena joined Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt to ..... the country.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(الطرح ٢٠٢٢)

services - Where - free - densely

Ali : Hello, Younis. (1) ..... do you live ?

Younis : I live in Greater Cairo.

Ali : Is it sparsely or (2) ..... populated ?

Younis : It's a metropolitan area and densely populated.

Ali : What services are there ?

Younis : We have a lot of ..... like shops, hospitals and schools.

Ali : It sounds a nice place.

Younis : Yes. I like my city.

**4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :**

(٢٠٢٢)

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Wood is renewable, too.

Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, metal, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about .....  
a. natural resources    b. farmers    c. earth    d. animals
2. The underlined word "grow" means .....  
a. put    b. stick    c. plant    d. hide

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What are renewable resources ?

4. Why is meat a renewable resource ?

**5**

**The reader**

**A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

(البحر الاحمر ٢٠٢٢)

1. Zeinab became a Khayameya artisan.
2. Zeinab's friends don't want to learn about Khayameya.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

(الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

1. Grandpa likes sewing ..... flowers patterns best.  
a. lily    b. lotus    c. daisy    d. rose
2. Rasha is great at ..... and working out problems.  
a. math    b. art    c. music    d. science



### Part 3

#### 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Our heart . . . . . the blood around our body. (الرازي الجديد ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. pumping      b. pumps      c. pump      d. was pumping  
 (البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)
2. A frog is . . . . . smallest vertebrate.  
 a. the      b. than      c. that      d. as
3. Scribes . . . . . very important people in ancient Egypt. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. are      b. were      c. was      d. is
4. . . . . there be flying cars in the future ? - Yes, there will. (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. Does      b. Will      c. Has      d. Have

#### 7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. do – live – Where – you ?

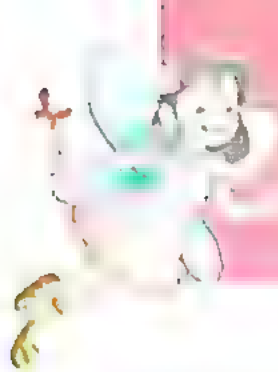
airplanes – fly – will – 2064 – in - Robots.

#### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

##### "Your village life"

##### Guiding elements :

1. Where do you live ?
2. What is your father's job ?
3. What does your mother do ?
4. What services are there in your village ?
5. Is your village sparsely or densely populated ?



# Listening Texts

## Listening Text of Monthly Assessments

### Sample Test 1 on Units 1 & 2

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant. The biggest Sea animal in the world is also a mammal. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

- Listen and complete :

Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use to read. It has different combinations of dots. They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Braille was invented by Louis Braille.

### Sample Test 2 on Units 3 & 4

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Your senses are very important for you. You depend on them every day. Your senses are sight, hearing, touch, smell and taste. Your senses work every day. Your sight let you read this book. Your tongue helps you taste food. Your senses also help keep you away from harm.

- Listen and complete :

Peter is 12 years old and he's American. Peter is a good student and

he usually gets good marks in the tests and exams, but now he doesn't go to school. The school is closed. All the schools are closed because of the pandemic coronavirus. Peter studies his lessons at home on the computer.

### Sample Test 3 on Units 5 & 6

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

My family lives in a house. Our house has two bedrooms. We cook and eat meals in the kitchen. We watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is my bedroom. It is small, but tidy. I like to read books and do my homework in my bedroom. Our house is nice.

- Listen and complete :

Milk products are types of food produced from the milk of mammals. It is the source of nutrition for young mammals. My mother buys fresh milk every day. I drink milk in the morning. It's good for our bones and teeth. Milk helps our body become strong and healthy.

### Sample Test 4 on Units 1, 2 & 3

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Dina loves her family. There are five people in her family. She has one brother and one sister. Dina's brother is seven and her sister is two. Her mom and dad make the rules for the family. Dina's dad is a dentist. He works in a famous clinic. Her mom is a doctor. She works in a big hospital. Dina's family is always happy.

● **Listen and complete :**

Whales are large animals. They are not fish. They are mammals. They breathe in air and produce milk for their babies. They can swim fast. Whales live in oceans and seas. They can't breathe underwater. They must come up to the surface of the water to get air. They make sounds to talk to each other.

## Listening Texts of Sample Tests

### Sample Test 1

● **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy for a television, it is now mechanical energy.

● **Listen and complete :**

There are many kinds of transportation that allow us to move from one place of the world to another. Depending on the place you're going to, you can choose the means of transportation. For example, you can go by land if there are roads and highways available; or maybe by air if the distance is too long; or even by water if you live on an island.

### Sample Test 2

● **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

I live in Egypt. I'm Egyptian. Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. In about 3100

BCE, one pharaoh joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.

● **Listen and complete :**

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

### Sample Test 3

● **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

I'm Khalid. I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of 5 million people. It has an important port and there are a lot of industries here too. There are many beautiful places you can visit here, like Qaitbay Citadel and Montaza Palace.

● **Listen and complete :**

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Paraspports is an important area in sport, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

### Sample Test 4

● **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea ! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger

fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prey that is brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

• **Listen and complete :**

We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow. Food with protein includes fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts and meat. We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these include nuts, oily fish, oil and butter.

**Sample Test 5**

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion who has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of gold, silver and bronze medals in many different countries.

• **Listen and complete :**

The brain is an important organ in our bodies. There are two halves in our brain : the left hemisphere and the right hemisphere. The left hemisphere controls the right side of the body. The right hemisphere controls the left side of the body. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.

**Sample Test 6**

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Birds are vertebrates. Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. Birds are warm-blooded. There are different sizes of birds on the Earth. The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird, which is about

5.5 cm long. It lives in Cuba. The biggest bird is the ostrich. Ostriches can run faster than leopards, but they can't fly.

• **Listen and complete :**

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can use sign language. It is a complete language, like English or Arabic. Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use it to read. The person can touch the dots to find out what they mean.

**Sample Test 7**

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. When you walk in Cairo, you have to be very careful.

• **Listen and complete :**

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties. They wrote in hieroglyphs. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds.

**Sample Test 8**

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad is



a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals, too. My family lives in a traditional home. There are seven people living in it.

● **Listen and complete :**

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. On their bodies, they have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats.

**Sample Test 9**

● **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin. Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

● **Listen and complete :**

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. You should be polite too. You should listen to other's ideas. If you find your role difficult, ask for help.

**Sample Test 10**

● **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family.

● **Listen and complete :**

Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. In about 3100 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.



# CONNECT

Plus

Answers Notebook

By a group of supervisors

الصف الرابع الابتدائي  
للمدارس الرسمية لغات والخاصة  
الفصل الدراسي الأول



GPS



AL TALAH BOOKSTONE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 81

E-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com

www.elmoasserbooks.com

15014

4<sup>th</sup> Primary  
2023  
FIRST TERM

# The Main Book (4<sup>th</sup> Primary Connect Plus)

إجابات كتاب الشرح المعاصر للصف الرابع الابتدائي  
للمدرسة الرسمية لغات والخاصة

## Unit (1)

### General Exercises on Lesson 1

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.  
1. a. eat      2. b. stomach  
3. a. changes      4. c. bodies
- 2 Listen and complete.  
1. skeleton      2. Muscles  
3. bones      4. strong
- 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. We breathe in air through our nose.  
2. Where is the oxygen passed to the blood ?
- 4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.  
1. stomach      2. nose  
3. oxygen
- 5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.  
(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :  
1. a. drink      2. d. changes  
(B) Answer the following questions :  
3. We use our respiratory system.  
4. It goes to the stomach.
- 6 Punctuate the following sentence.  
We breathe in air through our nose.

### General Exercises on Lesson 2

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.  
1. d. see      2. a. ears  
3. b. skin
- 2 Listen and complete.  
1. deaf      2. different  
3. faces      4. sight
- 3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.  
1. five      2. sense  
3. eyes
- 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.  
(A) Choose the correct answer.  
1. d. see      2. d. complete  
(B) Answer the following questions :  
3. People who are blind or have difficulty seeing.  
4. It's a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish.
- 5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.  
Student's own answer.

### General Exercises on Lesson 3

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.  
1. b. lounge      2. d. run  
3. a. creative
- 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.  
1. b. has      2. a. is  
3. b. controls      4. a. go
- 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. What are we doing today ?  
2. I would like to draw a picture.
- 4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.  
1. hemispheres  
2. left      3. art
- 5 Write a paragraph.  
Student's own answer.

### General Exercises on Lesson 4

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.  
1. c. Games      2. d. four  
3. c. country      4. b. athletes
- 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.  
1. Paralympics  
2. team  
3. competitions

- 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.  
1. He plays sitting volleyball.  
2. He has won many medals.
- 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.  
1. b. likes      2. d. train  
3. c. have      4. d. doesn't
- 5 Write a paragraph.  
Student's own answer.

### General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

- 1 Listen and complete.  
1. video      2. health  
3. habits      4. snacks
- 2 Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. How long is the summer camp ?  
2. Starting an exercise routine is hard.
- 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.  
1. vitamins      2. eat  
3. water
- 4 Read the following text, and answer the questions.  
(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.  
1. b. shouldn't  
2. c. unhealthy

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. We should drink lots of water.
4. Yes, it is.

5 Write a paragraph.

Student's own answer

### Test 1 on Unit 1

#### A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. protect
2. c. skeleton
3. b. Muscles
4. a. lift

2 Listen and complete.

1. nervous      2. energy
3. diet            4. good

#### B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. lesson      2. system
3. digestive

4 Read the text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. international
2. a. Championship

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. He is a runner.
4. He took part in 100-metre , 200-metre and 400-metre races.

#### The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. T                  2. F

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. c. artisans      2. d. tent

#### C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. d. gives          2. c. Does
3. a. goes          4. a. like

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. What do we have to do to protect our organs ?
2. Youssef speaks Arabic and English.

8 Write a text.

Student's own answer

### Test 2 on Unit 1

(اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات)

#### A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. drink          2. d. changes

3. d. respiratory
4. b. stomach

2 Listen and complete.

1. learn            2. complete
3. versions
4. communicate

#### B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

1. digestive      2. stomach
3. liquid

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. how to keep our bodies healthy.
2. c. vegetables

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. No, it isn't.
4. We need vitamins for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth.

#### The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. F                  2. T

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. tent makers
2. d. sew

#### C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. d. don't          2. b. is
3. c. Do            4. b. has

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. She plays volleyball on Mondays.
2. Does our heart pump the blood ?

8 Write a text.

Student's own answer.



### General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. vertebrates
2. backbone      3. types

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. reptiles
2. a. skin

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. They can live on land and on water.
4. They need water or a moist habitat to survive.



3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Vertebrates are animals with a backbone.
2. Mammals have hair on their bodies.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. many      2. b. live
3. d. don't      4. b. in

5 Write a text.

Student's own answer

### General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. Scientists
2. c. smallest
3. b. Chameleon
4. d. frog

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. The whale shark is the biggest fish.
2. Can an ostrich fly?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. a. than      2. c. bigger
3. a. biggest      4. c. faster

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. a. blue whale
2. c. sea

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. The African elephant.
4. It talks about enormous animals.

5 Write a text.

Student's own answer

### General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. a. cold      2. d. land
3. a. Crabs      4. d. soft

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Crabs have hard shells for protection.
2. Dragonflies can fly very fast.

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. invertebrates
2. cold - blooded
3. dragonflies

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. easily      2. a. fast
3. a. hard      4. a. badly

5 Write a text.

Student's own answer

### General Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. a. plants      2. b. attract
3. d. Insects      4. c. flowers

2 Listen and complete.

1. under      2. predators
3. bright      4. prey

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Red and yellow make orange.
2. The bright flowers attract insects.

4 Read and complete the following dialogue from the words in the box.

1. attract
2. pollen
3. reproduce

5 Write a text.

Student's own answer

### General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. d. land      2. a. sea
3. a. caves      4. b. at night

2 Listen and complete.

1. scientific      2. wild
3. wrong      4. life

3 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.

1. flat      2. flowers
3. roots

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Some plants grow in water.
2. Why are bats unusual?
3. Most plants grow in soil.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. spread
2. b. long

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. It reaches down to the bottom of the lake.
4. It grows in water.

### Test 3 on Unit 2

#### A. Listening

- ① Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. cold      2. a. sun  
3. b. lay      4. b. scales

- ② Listen and complete.

1. warm      2. birth  
3. lay      4. hair

#### B. Reading

- ③ Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. doing      2. animals  
3. What

- ④ Read the text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. a. hide      2. c. bright

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. Because having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators.

4. Because bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

#### The reader

- ⑤ (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. F      2. T

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. grandfather  
2. b. lotus flower

#### C. Writing

- ⑥ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. stronger  
2. a. longer  
3. c. hottest  
4. d. tallest

- ⑦ Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Amphibians always lay their eggs in water.  
2. How do you make green darker ?

- ⑧ Write a text.

Student's own answer

### Test 4 on Unit 2

(اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات)

#### A. Listening

- ① Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. d. gills      2. b. scales  
3. c. habitats      4. b. fins

- ② Listen and complete.

1. land      2. blue  
3. fish      4. 12

#### B. Reading

- ③ Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

1. writing      2. land  
3. hummingbird

- ④ Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. d. amphibians  
2. d. skin and lungs

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. They need water or a moist habitat.  
4. No, they can't.

#### The reader

- ⑤ (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. F      2. T

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. four months  
2. a. stitches

#### C. Writing

- ⑥ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. biggest      2. b. quietly  
3. c. than      4. b. fast

- ⑦ Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.  
2. Which vertebrates lay eggs ?

- ⑧ Write a text.

Student's own answer.

### Unit (3)

#### General Exercises on Lesson 1

- ① Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. community  
2. a. friends  
3. c. citizenship  
4. a. polite

- ② Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. live      2. city  
3. sports club

- ③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. d. mine      2. a. her  
3. b. These      4. c. are



- 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. A community is a mixture of people.  
2. I am part of the community at my sports club.

- 5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.  
Student's own answer

### General Exercises on Lesson 2

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. b. scribes 2. a. dynasties  
3. c. hieroglyphs  
4. d. school

- 2 Listen and complete.  
1. history 2. Nile  
3. north 4. south

- 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. Where was Lower Egypt?  
2. Scribes were very important people.

- 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

- (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. b. south  
2. d. sail

- (B) Answer the following questions :  
3. It was in the north.  
4. Mena united the two parts of Egypt.

- 5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.  
Student's own answer

### General Exercises on Lesson 3

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. b. Aswan 2. b. Upper  
3. c. Engineers  
4. a. Aswan

- 2 Listen and complete.  
1. population  
2. capital 3. oasis  
4. Governorate

- 3 Read and complete the following dialogue from the words in the box.  
1. Cairo 2. Where  
3. important

- 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. I live in Aswan Governorate.  
2. How many people live in Egypt?  
3. Where do you live?

- 5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

- (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. beach  
2. a. ships

- (B) Answer the following questions :  
3. It's famous for scuba diving and water sports.  
4. Because lots of ships sail in and out of the port.

### General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. Scribes 2. b. pyramids  
3. a. Ancient 4. d. Musicians

- 2 Listen and complete.  
1. traditional 2. Tent makers  
3. patterns 4. Khayameya

- 3 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.  
1. quickly 2. patterns  
3. wool

- 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful.  
2. Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt.

3. What kind of music do you like?

- 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. d. happily 2. b. clearly  
3. a. careful 4. c. quickly

- 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.  
Student's own answer

### Test 5 on Unit 3

#### A. Listening

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. b. craft 2. b. wool  
3. c. years 4. a. quickly

- 2 Listen and complete.  
1. Alexandria 2. north  
3. ships 4. capital

#### B. Reading

- 3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.  
1. Where 2. governorate  
3. arms

- 4 Read the text and answer the questions below.

- (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. d. tombs  
2. c. wrote down

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. Dynasties are important families who ruled the country.
4. Because a scribe wrote everything that happened and he worked for ruling dynasties.

#### The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. T
2. F

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. c. geometric patterns
2. b. engineer

#### C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. hers
2. a. his
3. d. carefully
4. b. yours

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. What is in a governorate ?
2. It is a very large area.

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.  
Student's own answer

### Test 6 on Unit 3

(اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات)

#### A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. dots
2. a. letters and numbers
3. b. blind
4. a. touch

2 Listen and complete.

1. Upper
2. violins
3. south
4. Bedouin

#### B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

1. eat
2. fish
3. coffee

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. Egyptian craft
2. d. craft

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. It was made to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions.
4. Because it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet.

#### The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. T
2. F

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. lotus flower
2. a. Grandpa

#### C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. yours
2. c. his
3. d. saw
4. b. were

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. These shoes belong to Mazen.
2. How do you make green darker ?

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.  
Student's own answer

#### General Exercises on Units 1, 2 & 3

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. hear
2. a. feel
3. d. are
4. d. popular
5. b. stronger than
6. a. the
7. b. community

8. c. quickly
9. c. Location
10. c. visited
11. c. 27
12. b. have



#### General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. village
2. b. traditional
3. a. desert
4. b. home

2 Listen and complete.

1. Greater
2. densely
3. inhabitants
4. pedestrian

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. village
2. sparsely
3. workshops

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. lives
2. c. busy

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. There are more than 20 million inhabitants.
4. Because there are a lot of cars.

**5 Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1. My village is a very traditional place.
2. The oldest city in Egypt is Fayoum.
3. Is it sparsely or densely populated?

**General Exercises on Lesson 2**

**1 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.**

1. sheep
2. goods
3. Irrigation

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. b. mice
2. d. people
3. b. women
4. a. Geese

**3 Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1. People get food from the water.
2. You can see cats in the street.
3. I live in a small village on the Nile.

**4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

**(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. c. river
2. d. goslings

**(B) Answer the following questions :**

3. Waleed is the youngest child.

4. He grows a lot of dates, onions and some potatoes.

**5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.**

Student's own answer

**General Exercises on Lesson 3**

**1 Listen and complete.**

1. carpet
2. weave
3. hand
4. yarn

**2 Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1. The artisans collect wool from the sheep.
2. They can use yarn to weave a carpet.

**3 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.**

1. artisans
2. wool
3. carpet

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. b. as soon as
2. a. while
3. d. so that
4. c. before

**5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

**(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. a. color
2. a. artisans

**(B) Answer the following questions :**

3. As they are more traditional.
4. To make beautiful dyes to color the wool.

**General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6**

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. d. Alexandria
2. b. city
3. b. second
4. a. port

**2 Listen and complete.**

1. Smart
2. environment
3. public
4. spaces

**3 Read and complete the following dialogue from the words in the box.**

1. Alexandria
2. Mediterranean
3. services

**4 Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1. There are six people in my family.
2. People can walk to work or school.
3. There's good transportation in my village.

**5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

**(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. d. shops
2. b. bus

**(B) Answer the following questions :**

3. There are six people in Hossam's family.
4. He lives with his family.

**Test 7 on Unit 4**

**A. Listening**

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. c. family
2. c. 11
3. c. Montaza Palace
4. a. month

**2 Listen and complete.**

1. artisans
2. wool
3. dyes
4. yarn

**B. Reading**

**3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.**

1. sparsely
2. city
3. services



**4** Read the text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. a. a city where Fareeda lives.
2. b. dense

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. You should be very careful.
4. Cairo is densely populated.

#### The reader

**5** (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. T
2. F

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. good
2. a. teach

#### C. Writing

**6** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. a. mice
2. c. so that
3. d. Although
4. d. people

**7** Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. I understand the lesson so that I do my homework.
2. Do you have any brothers ?

**8** Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Student's own answer

#### Test 8 on Unit 4

(اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحاضرات)

#### A. Listening

**1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. big
2. a. urban
3. d. easy
4. b. densely

**2** Listen and complete.

1. transportation
2. water
3. important
4. birds

#### B. Reading

**3** Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. artisans
2. wool
3. yarn

**4** Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. a. Alexandria
2. c. urban

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. Montaza Palace.
4. Because they have a lot of services.

#### The reader

**5** (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. T
2. F

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. tent markers
2. b. grandparents

#### C. Writing

**6** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. geese
2. c. so that
3. b. before
4. c. They

**7** Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Farmers grow tomatoes and onions.
2. They use plants to make beautiful dyes.

**8** Write a text.

Student's own answer

#### Unit (5)

#### General Exercises on Lesson 1

**1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. nature
2. b. stone
3. d. forests
4. a. Gold

**2** Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

1. renewable
2. Meat
3. raise

**3** Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. What are natural resources ?
2. Soil is a natural resource.
3. We use stone to construct buildings.

**4** Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. natural resources
2. d. stone

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. It is made from petroleum.
4. Stone and wood.

**5** Write a text.

Student's own answer

#### General Exercises on Lesson 2

**1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. d. school
2. b. bus
3. d. brother
4. c. dinner

- ② Listen and complete.  
1. non-renewable  
2. petroleum 3. before  
4. serious

- ③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. c. rains 2. a. washes  
3. d. drives 4. a. eat

- ④ Read and complete the following dialogue from the words in the box.  
1. fossil fuels 2. natural gas  
3. animals

- ⑤ Write a text.  
Student's own answer

### General Exercises on Lesson 3

- ① Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. c. waves 2. b. Wind  
3. d. sun 4. c. electricity

- ② Listen and complete.  
1. expensive 2. rainy  
3. space 4. easy

- ③ Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.  
1. sunlight 2. electrical  
3. mechanical

- ④ Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. We can make electricity from renewable resources.

2. Solar farms need a very big space.

### General Exercises on Lesson 4

- ① Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. d. engineering  
2. b. wind 3. c. calm  
4. c. Kenya

- ② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. b. his 2. b. their  
3. d. her 4. d. their  
5. a. his 6. b. their

- ③ Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. They presented their project to the class.  
2. Mariam will train for one month.  
3. Where is the Ras Ghareb wind farm?

### General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

- ① Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. d. friends 2. c. upset  
3. a. listening 4. b. company

- ② Listen and complete.  
1. responsible  
2. collaborate  
3. positive 4. members

- ③ Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. You should be too polite.  
2. Stay calm and don't get upset.  
3. What type of job is it for?

- ④ Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.  
1. Share 2. complete  
3. worried

- ⑤ Write a text.  
Student's own answer

### Test 9 on Unit 5

#### A. Listening

- ① Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. a. replaced 2. a. grow  
3. d. Meat 4. c. raise

- ② Listen and complete.  
1. panels 2. farm  
3. trucks 4. perfect

#### B. Reading

- ③ Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box.  
1. non-renewable  
2. petroleum  
3. renewable

- ④ Read the text and answer the questions below.

- (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. d. Nancy's day  
2. d. bus

- (B) Answer the following questions:  
3. She wakes up for school at 7 o'clock.  
4. Nancy kisses her mom and dad saying good night.

#### The reader

- ⑤ (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. F 2. T

- (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. layers 2. a. art

#### C. Writing

- ⑥ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. their 2. b. wakes  
3. a. his 4. c. goes

- ⑦ Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. She presented her project to the class.  
2. What are natural resources?



**8 Write a text.**

Student's own answer

**Test 10 on Unit 5**

(الختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات)

**A. Listening**

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. b. success 2. c. share  
3. b. difficult 4. c. ideas

**2 Listen and complete.**

1. destroy 2. change  
3. solar panels  
4. electrical

**B. Reading**

**3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.**

1. solar 2. electricity  
3. perfect

**4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

(A) Choose the correct answer.

1. b. company  
2. d. difficult

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. He often gets upset when things are difficult at work.  
4. No, he isn't.

**The reader**

**5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. F 2. T

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. summer 2. d. eyes

**C. Writing**

**6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. b. wake 2. a. his  
3. b. goes 4. c. their

**7 Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1. We use stone to construct buildings.  
2. How can we make electricity ?

**8 Write a text.**

Student's own answer

**Unit (6)**

**General Exercises on Lesson 1**

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. c. river 2. b. ships  
3. a. ship 4. b. land

**2 Listen and complete.**

1. temples 2. van  
3. dinner 4. archaeology

**3 Read and complete the text from the words in the box.**

1. train  
2. government  
3. fast

**4 Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1. I don't often travel by train.  
2. Have you ever been on a bus ?

**5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. b. by 2. c. been  
3. b. Has 4. b. gone

**6 Write a text.**

Student's own answer

**General Exercises on Lesson 2**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. d. will help 2. b. send  
3. a. will get 4. d. make  
5. b. come 6. d. Will  
7. a. clean 8. b. will

**2 Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1. I will travel on an airplane.  
2. Will they take a train to Aswan ?

**General Exercises on Lesson 3**

**1 Listen and complete.**

1. design  
2. robots  
3. automobiles  
4. agriculture

**2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.**

1. safe search  
2. specific  
3. ads

**3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. VR headset  
2. d. use

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. Museums.  
4. User Experience Designers.

**4 Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1. Choose the best option in the search box.  
2. Welcome to the podcast.

### General Exercises on Lesson 4

- 1 Listen and complete.  
1. personal 2. obvious  
3. characters 4. tell
- 2 Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. Use some capital letters for passwords.  
2. Add numbers you can remember.
- 3 Write a text.  
Student's own answer.

### General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

- 1 Listen and complete.  
1. ships 2. watched  
3. Canal 4. huge
- 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.  
(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. a. city 2. c. Pipelines  
(B) Answer the following questions:  
3. Yes, because airplanes are faster than ships.  
4. We can transport goods by water and by air.

- 3 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.  
1. captain 2. ship  
3. windy
- 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. Where is the ship going?  
2. She looked out of the window.
- 5 Write a text.  
Student's own answer.

### Test 11 on Unit 6

#### A. Listening

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. c. window  
2. b. family's house  
3. b. big 4. b. friends

#### B. Reading

- 2 Listen and complete.  
1. personal 2. accounts  
3. characters 4. obvious
- 3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box.  
1. traveled  
2. went  
3. comfortable

### Test 12 on Unit 6

(اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات)

#### A. Listening

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. b. transport  
2. c. slowly  
3. d. Ships 4. c. faster
- 2 Listen and complete.  
1. lives 2. capital  
3. far away 4. airplane

#### B. Reading

- 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.  
1. travel  
2. transportation  
3. goods
- 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.  
(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:  
1. c. eyes 2. c. Museums  
(B) Answer the following questions:  
1. You have to wear a special VR headset.  
2. It's short for Virtual Reality.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions below.

- (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. d. video games  
2. a. game
- (B) Answer the following questions:  
3. It takes years.  
4. They use computer program.

#### The reader

- 5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).  
1. F 2. T  
(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:  
1. b. learn 2. b. school

#### C. Writing

- 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.  
1. c. will travel  
2. c. won't  
3. a. do 4. b. Will
- 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.  
1. Will you travel to the Moon one day?  
2. I'll study languages.
- 8 Write a text.  
Student's own answer



**The reader**

- 6 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. F                  2. T

- (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. stitches    2. c. Lotus

**C. Writing**

- 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. snow        2. a. Have

3. b. won't       4. c. travel

- 7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. It is the new electric train.  
2. How will she pass the exam?

- 8 Write a text.

Student's own answer

**NOTES**

